



HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES



HISTORY
OF THE
UNITED STATES,
FOR
SCHOOLS AND ACADEMIES.

BY
✓
JOSEPH T. DERRY,
PROFESSOR OF ANCIENT AND MODERN LANGUAGES IN WESLEYAN FEMALE
COLLEGE, MACON, GEORGIA.

NEW EDITION.

WITH MAPS AND ILLUSTRATIONS.



PHILADELPHIA:
J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.
1882.

53 102
13674-1

Copyright, 1879, by J. B. LIPPINCOTT & Co.

Eng
2911A

PREFACE.

THIS work is designed as a history for schools and academies. Great pains have been taken to state accurately and impartially all the leading events in the history of our country. The authorities consulted in the preparation of this work are Stephens's "History of the United States," "Memoirs of the War in the Southern Department of the United States," by General Henry Lee, John Esten Cooke's "Life of R. E. Lee," McCabe's "Life of Lee." "Johnston's Narrative," "Sherman's Narrative," Greeley's "American Conflict," "Draper's "History of the Civil War," Swinton's series of histories, Barnes's school histories, and Quackenbos's school histories.

JOSEPH T. DERRY.

CONTENTS.

PART FIRST.

FROM THE DISCOVERY OF AMERICA TO THE CLOSE OF THE FRENCH
AND INDIAN WAR.

CHAPTER I.

	PAGE
Discovery of America	13

CHAPTER II.

Explorations of the Spaniards and French	19
--	----

CHAPTER III.

English Explorations.—Settlement of Virginia	23
--	----

CHAPTER IV.

Settlement of New York by the Dutch.—It becomes a British Colony	32
--	----

CHAPTER V.

The Colony of Massachusetts*	34
--	----

CHAPTER VI.

Settlement of New Hampshire and Connecticut	38
---	----

CHAPTER VII.

Settlement of Rhode Island	40
--------------------------------------	----

CHAPTER VIII.

The War with the Pequods.—New England Confederation	42
---	----

CHAPTER IX.

Settlement of Maryland	45
----------------------------------	----

	PAGE
CHAPTER X.	
Settlement of New Jersey and Delaware	47
CHAPTER XI.	
Settlement of Pennsylvania	50
CHAPTER XII.	
Settlement of North Carolina	52
CHAPTER XIII.	
Settlement of South Carolina	55
CHAPTER XIV.	
Affairs in Several Colonies	57
CHAPTER XV.	
Settlement of Georgia	66
CHAPTER XVI.	
The French Wars in America	72
TOPICAL REVIEW OF PART FIRST	91

PART SECOND.

FROM THE CLOSE OF THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR TO THE
BEGINNING OF WASHINGTON'S ADMINISTRATION.

CHAPTER I.	
Disputes with the Mother-Country	98
CHAPTER II.	
Commencement of the War of the Revolution	104
CHAPTER III.	
Campaigns of 1776.—Declaration of Independence	110

CONTENTS.

9

CHAPTER IV.

PAGE

Campaigns of 1777 120

CHAPTER V.

The Alliance with France and other Events of 1778 128

CHAPTER VI.

Events of 1779 132

CHAPTER VII.

Events of 1780 139

CHAPTER VIII.

Events of 1781 146

CHAPTER IX.

The Formation of the Federal Constitution.—The Election of Washington as President 157

TOPICAL REVIEW OF PART SECOND 163

PART THIRD.

FROM THE BEGINNING OF WASHINGTON'S ADMINISTRATION TO THE
CLOSE OF THE ADMINISTRATION OF FRANKLIN PIERCE.

CHAPTER I.

Administration of Washington 166

CHAPTER II.

Administration of John Adams 175

CHAPTER III.

Administration of Thomas Jefferson 178

CHAPTER IV.

Administration of James Madison.—Second War with Great Britain . . . 183

CHAPTER V.

Madison's Administration (Continued).—War with Great Britain (Continued).—Campaign of 1813 189

CHAPTER VI.

Madison's Administration (Concluded).—End of the War with Great Britain 193

CHAPTER VII.

Administration of James Monroe 200

CHAPTER VIII.

Administration of John Quincy Adams 206

CHAPTER IX.

Administration of Andrew Jackson 208

CHAPTER X.

Administration of Martin Van Buren 214

CHAPTER XI.

Administrations of Harrison and Tyler 217

CHAPTER XII.

Administration of James K. Polk.—War with Mexico 223

CHAPTER XIII.

Administrations of Zachary Taylor and Millard Fillmore 233

CHAPTER XIV.

Administration of Franklin Pierce 238

TOPICAL REVIEW OF PART THIRD 241

PART FOURTH.

FROM THE BEGINNING OF BUCHANAN'S ADMINISTRATION TO THE
PRESENT TIME.

CHAPTER I.

	PAGE
Administration of James Buchanan	249

CHAPTER II.

Inauguration of Abraham Lincoln.—Beginning of the War between the States	258
---	-----

CHAPTER III.

Lincoln's Administration (Continued).—Second Year of the War between the States	272
--	-----

CHAPTER IV.

Lincoln's Administration (Continued).—Third Year of the War between the States	290
---	-----

CHAPTER V.

Lincoln's Administration (Continued).—Fourth Year of the War between the States	305
--	-----

CHAPTER VI.

End of the War.—Close of Lincoln's Administration	324
---	-----

CHAPTER VII.

Administration of Andrew Johnson	330
--	-----

CHAPTER VIII.

Administration of Ulysses S. Grant	334
--	-----

CHAPTER IX.

Administrations of Rutherford B. Hayes and James A. Garfield	341
TOPICAL REVIEW OF PART FOURTH	346
DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE OF THE UNITED STATES	353
CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA	357

HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES.

PART FIRST.

FROM THE DISCOVERY OF AMERICA TO THE CLOSE OF THE
FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR.

CHAPTER I.

DISCOVERY OF AMERICA.

1. PREVIOUS to the year of our Lord 1492 what is now known as the Western Continent was unknown to the people of Europe. It is true that towards the close of the tenth century some Icelanders and Norwegians had discovered Greenland and the neighboring coasts of North America, and are supposed by some to have sailed along the coast as far south as Massachusetts and Rhode Island. The Norsemen, as these bold navigators were called, gave to the lands which they visited the name of Vinland. Their discoveries were, however, known to but few, and were soon forgotten, so that before the discovery of America by Columbus even the learned men of Europe had no knowledge of any such land.

2. The fifteenth century was distinguished by great maritime enterprises, for then the practical application of the mariner's

1. What of the Western Continent previous to 1492? What did some Icelanders and Norwegians do towards the close of the tenth century? What is said of their discoveries?

2. By what was the fifteenth century distinguished? What was the chief

compass first led to distant sea-voyages. The chief purpose of these voyages was to find the shortest route to the East Indies. Prince Henry, of Portugal, took the lead in these enterprises, and especially directed his attention to the discovery of a passage to India around the southern extremity of Africa. After his death, his grand-nephew, King John, continued the efforts to discover the passage to India.

3. Christopher Columbus, a native of Genoa, in Italy, together with other learned men of Europe, had come to the conclusion that the earth was round, and that India could be most speedily reached by sailing due west. Fully imbued with this idea, he applied to the government of Genoa, his native city, for aid in the prosecution of his enterprise; but the authorities did not look with favor upon his scheme, and refused the necessary assistance. He next applied to King John, of Portugal, but meeting with no better success, he sent his brother to Henry VII., King of England, to solicit aid. Here he was again disappointed.

4. Columbus now resolved to apply to Ferdinand and Isabella, King and Queen of Spain. The kingdom of Spain was just beginning to take a high stand among the nations of Europe. Ferdinand and Isabella were engaged in the campaign which wrested from the Moors their last stronghold in Spain, when Columbus appeared before them asking their aid in his grand enterprise, which, he assured them, would make their nation the greatest kingdom in Europe. Queen Isabella especially was favorably impressed with his plan, and on the plain of Granada, three days after the surrender of this last Moorish stronghold, the formal

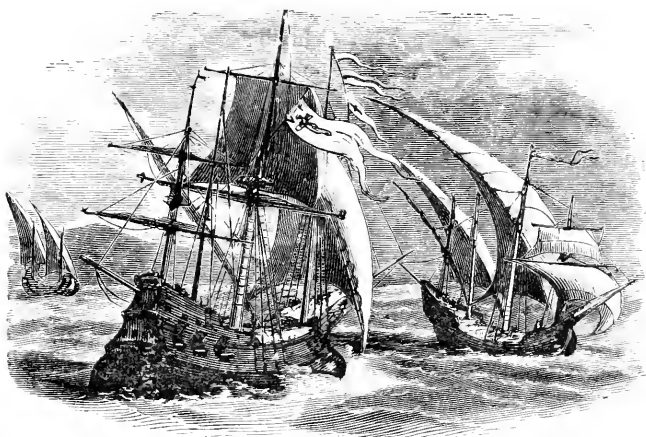
purpose of the voyages made then? Who took the lead in these enterprises? To what did he especially direct his attention? Who continued these efforts after Prince Henry's death?

3. What conclusion had Columbus and other learned men of Europe reached? Give an account of his efforts to get aid.

4. To whom did Columbus next apply? In what were Ferdinand and Isabella engaged at this time? How was Queen Isabella impressed with his plan? Where was the final arrangement made between Columbus and the sovereigns of Spain?

arrangement was made between Columbus and the sovereigns of Spain.

5. Columbus was furnished with three vessels, the *Santa Maria*, the *Pinta*, and the *Nina*. These vessels were manned by ninety mariners, and were supplied with provisions for twelve months. The cost of the expedition was about twenty thousand dollars. On Friday, the 3d of August, 1492, the little fleet set sail from the port of Palos. Columbus himself sailed in the



THE FLEET OF COLUMBUS.

Santa Maria, which was the largest of his three ships. On the 6th of August they reached the Canary Islands, where they were detained several weeks on account of injuries received by the *Pinta*. On the 6th of September the fleet again set sail, and for more than a month sailed westward before signs of land appeared. The sailors became alarmed and threatened to turn back; but

5. With what was Columbus furnished by the King and Queen of Spain? What were their names? How were they manned and supplied? What was the cost of the expedition? When did the fleet set sail from Palos? In what vessel did Columbus himself sail? What land did they reach on the 6th of

Columbus endeavored to allay their fears, and prevailed on them to press forward, and on the morning of the 12th of October the weary sailors were gladdened by the cry of "Land! land!" uttered by the watchman on the deck of the *Pinta*.

6. The land thus discovered was one of the Bahama Islands, called by the natives Gu-an-a-han-i, but Columbus named it San Salvador, which means Holy Saviour. On this same voyage Columbus discovered the island of Cuba, which he thought was Japan, and the island of Hayti, which he named Hispaniola, or Little Spain.

7. On his return to Spain Columbus was received with the greatest honors. He now found no trouble in fitting out a second expedition, and was soon sailing across the ocean again. On his second voyage he discovered Dominica, Porto Rico, and other islands. On a third voyage he reached the island of Trinidad and the mouth of the Orinoco River, in South America. The size of this river indicated that he had reached a continent, which he supposed to be Asia. In fact, Columbus never knew that he had discovered a new world.

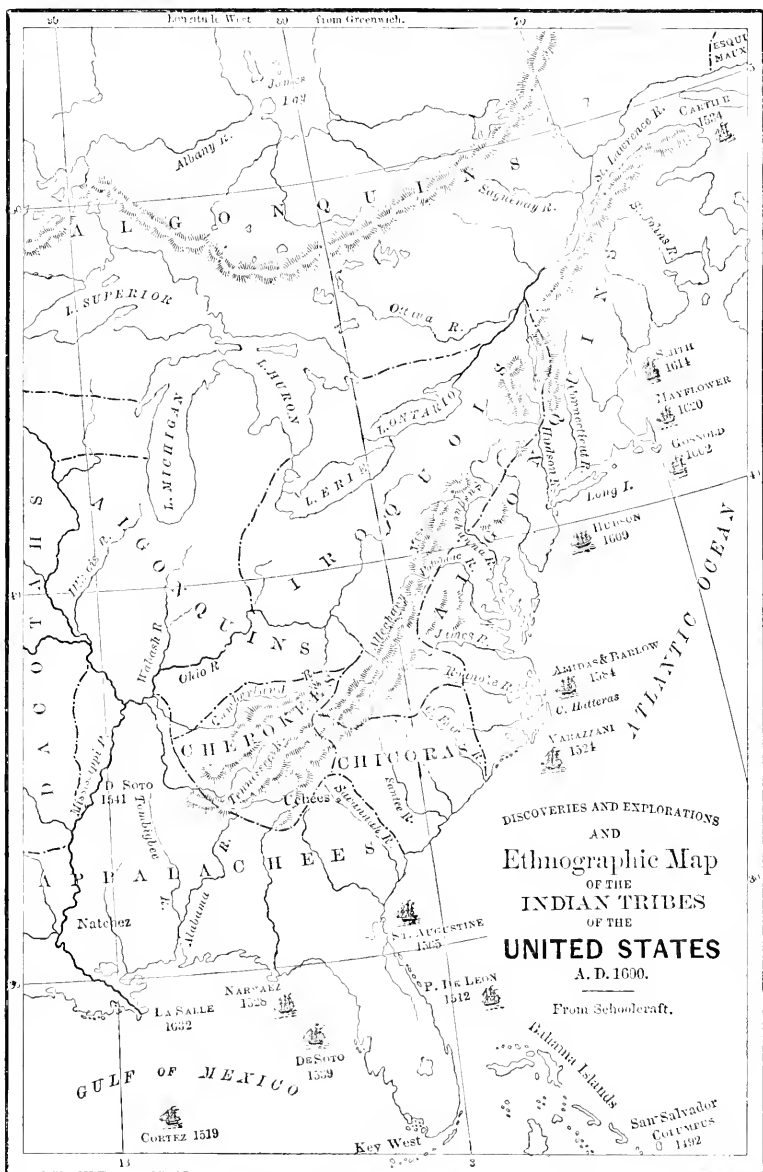
8. Although Columbus had by his discoveries conferred such glory on the sovereigns of Spain, and had added vast possessions to their dominion, he was, in the latter years of his life, treated with injustice and cruel neglect. In the year 1500, after having spent two years in the government of the Spanish settlements in the West Indies, he was arrested and sent home in chains. True, he

August? What caused delay? When did the fleet leave the Canaries? How long was it before signs of land appeared? When was land discovered?

6. What was the land thus discovered? What was it called by the natives? What did Columbus call it? What does San Salvador mean? What other islands did Columbus discover on this voyage?

7. How was Columbus received on his return to Spain? What islands did he discover on his second voyage? What island and what river did he reach on his third voyage? Where is the Orinoco River? What did the size of this river indicate? What did he suppose this continent to be? Did Columbus ever know that he had discovered a new world?

8. How was Columbus treated in the latter years of his life? What happened to him in the year 1500? What happened when he reached Spain?



was released on reaching Spain, by order of the king and queen, but he was never restored to his former honors and dignities. He died in obscurity and poverty at Valladolid, on the 20th of May, 1506.

9. America, which should have been called after Columbus, received its name from Americus Vesputius, a Florentine navigator, who visited the New World, and in 1499 published a map of the coast, and gave some very interesting descriptions of the lands which he had visited.

10. To the inhabitants of the islands which he visited Columbus gave the name of Indians. His reason for this was, that he supposed those islands to be parts of India. Hence they were called West Indies, and their inhabitants Indians.

Of the origin of the Indians nothing is known with certainty. The most civilized Indian nations were found in Mexico, in Central America, and in the countries of Peru and Chili, in South America. Those who lived in the present limits of the United States were savages, whose chief employment was hunting and fishing.

Was he ever restored to his former honors and dignities? How, where, and when did he die?

9. After whom was America called?

10. What name did Columbus give to the inhabitants of the islands which he visited? What was the reason for this? What is known of the origin of the Indians? In what countries were the most civilized Indian nations found? What is said of those who lived in the present limits of the United States?

CHAPTER II.

EXPLORATIONS OF THE SPANIARDS AND FRENCH.

Spanish Explorations and Conquests.

1. IMMEDIATELY after the discovery of America the Spaniards began to make conquests and settlements. Their first colony was that of St. Domingo, founded by Bartholomew Columbus, in 1496. The hope of gold stimulated explorations, and grandees, warriors, and adventurers of every class flocked to the New World. Ponce de Leon, who had, in 1508, made the conquest of Porto Rico, when deprived of his government, in 1512, sailed to seek the wonderful "Fountain of Youth," of which he had been told. He reached the coast opposite the Bahamas, and named the country Florida, either on account of the abundance of its flowers, or because he had landed on Palm-Sunday, which the Spaniards call Pascua Florida. After sailing along the coast and landing here and there, he was obliged to give up the search for the Youth-bestowing Fountain, and return to his home to die like other mortals.

2. In 1513, Balboa, another bold adventurer, crossed the Isthmus of Darien, and from the summit of the Andes beheld spread out before his enraptured gaze the wide-extended waters of the mighty Pacific. This discovery first proved that America was a separate continent from Asia. Filled with enthusiasm, Balboa waded into the water, and, holding in one hand his naked sword and in the other the flag of his country, he solemnly proclaimed that this ocean and all shores laved by it belonged forever to the crown of Spain.

1. What of the Spaniards immediately after the discovery of America? What was their first colony, by whom founded, and when? Give an account of the adventures of Ponce de Leon.

2. What of Balboa's explorations?

3. De Narvaez attempted, in 1528, the conquest of Florida, but his expedition was a total failure. He perished, together with his followers, with the exception of four, who, six years afterwards, reached the Spanish settlements on the Pacific coast. Ferdinand De Soto, undeterred by these failures, undertook the conquest of Florida. With six hundred chosen men he traversed Florida, Georgia, Alabama, and Mississippi, searching everywhere for gold. In 1541 they reached the Mississippi River, and on its banks, in 1542, De Soto died, and was buried by his followers in its turbid waters. Melendez, another Spaniard, in 1565, laid the foundation of a colony at St. Augustine, in Florida. This is the oldest town in the United States.

4. Fernando Cortez, another Spanish soldier, of noble birth, and endowed with great talents and courage, in three brilliant campaigns, from 1519 to 1521, subjected the empire of the Montezumas and all Mexico to the Spanish crown.

In 1529, Pizarro and Almagro overthrew the empire of the Incas and added Peru and its dependencies to the dominions of Spain. In the sixteenth century all the region to the northwest of Mexico was called California, a name which is said to have originated from a romance concerning a certain queen of the Amazons, whose name was California. The first voyage along the Pacific coast was made by Cabrillo, who sailed as far north as Oregon, in 1542. New Mexico was explored and named by Espejo, who, in 1582, founded Santa Fé, the second oldest town in the United States. Before the close of the sixteenth century Spain had possession of the West Indies, Central America, Mexico, and Florida, in North America, and of a large part of South America. Spanish explorers had traversed the greater part of the present Southern

3. What of the attempt of De Narvaez, in 1528, to conquer Florida? Who next undertook the conquest of Florida? Describe his wanderings. What did Melendez do in 1565? What can you say of St. Augustine?

4. Tell what is said of the conquest of Mexico by Cortez. What did Pizarro and Almagro do in 1529? Tell what is said of California. Who made the first voyage on the Pacific coast? By whom was New Mexico explored and named? What town did he found? What of this town? Name all the coun-

States of the American Union, and the Pacific coast, and therefore Spain claimed all this vast territory by right of discovery.

French Explorations and Settlements.

5. In 1524, John Verazzani (ve-rat-sah-ne), a Florentine, in the service of Francis I., King of France, sailed along the coasts of North Carolina, passed the mouth of Chesapeake Bay, entered the harbor of New York, and coasted along New England and Nova Scotia. Ten years later Jacques Cartier began his explorations in the New World. He ascended the river St. Lawrence to the Indian village of Hochelaga (ho-she-la-ga), situated at the foot of a lofty hill, which he named Mont Réal, or Regal Mountain. He took possession of the country for France, and then sailed home. Four years later he attempted a settlement, but failed utterly, and it was fifty years before the French crown made another attempt at colonization.

6. Religious zeal prompted Admiral Coligny (Co-leen-ye) to take up the task abandoned by the kings of France. He obtained leave to found in America a refuge for French Protestants. John Ribault (re-bo) commanded the immigrants. He planted a colony at Port Royal Harbor, in South Carolina, in 1562, and built a fort, which he named Fort Carolina, in honor of Charles IX., King of France. Ribault sailed back to France, and the settlement was abandoned in his absence. Two years later Laudonniere (Lo-don-yare) established a settlement on the river St. John, in Florida, and built a second Fort Carolina. The Spaniards, however, claimed the country, and in 1565, Melendez, who had

tries possessed and explored by Spain in North and South America before the close of the sixteenth century. What did Spain claim?

5. In whose service was John Verazzani? What did he do in 1524? What Frenchman began explorations ten years later? Give an account of his explorations. How many years was it before the French made another attempt at colonization?

6. Give an account of the colony of Coligny and Ribault. Of that of Laudonniere. What did Melendez do in 1565?

just founded the settlement of St. Augustine, captured Fort Carolina and butchered the settlers, saying that he treated them thus "not as Frenchmen, but as Huguenots."

7. This atrocity was avenged, in 1568, by Dominic de Gourgues (goorg), a Frenchman, of the province of Gascony, who took two Spanish forts and retook Fort Carolina. He hanged his prisoners, "not as Spaniards, but as traitors, robbers, and murderers."

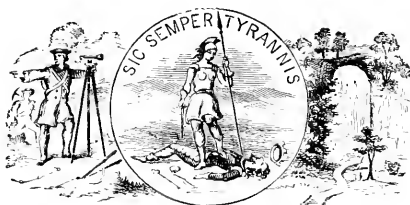
8. French colonization in America was resumed in 1596, under a commission from Henry IV. to the Marquis de la Roche (rōsh). The attempt of La Roche was a failure. Samuel Champlain (sham-plane), in 1603, in the employ of some merchants of Rouen (roo-ong), crossed the Atlantic in two small vessels. De Monts (mong), a Huguenot, received a grant of all the territory between the present sites of Philadelphia and Montreal. All this territory was named Acadia. In company with Champlain he made the first permanent French settlement in America at Port Royal, in Nova Scotia, in 1605. In 1608, Champlain established a trading-post at Quebec, and this was the first permanent French settlement in Canada. In fifty years after the death of Champlain, the Jesuit missionaries—among whom the most distinguished were Marquette (mar-két) and La Salle—had penetrated the wilderness to the west, discovered the great lakes, and descending the Mississippi to its mouth, had acquired for France the vast territory of Louisiana.

7. How was this atrocity avenged?

8. When was French colonization in America resumed? By whom? What of the attempt of De la Roche? When and where did Champlain and De Monts establish the first permanent French settlement in America? When did Champlain establish a trading-post at Quebec? What can you say of it? What had the French Jesuit missionaries done in fifty years after the death of Champlain?

CHAPTER III.

ENGLISH EXPLORATIONS.—SETTLEMENT OF VIRGINIA.



SEAL OF VIRGINIA.

1. ENGLAND claimed the exclusive right to plant colonies in North America, on the ground that John Cabot, a Venetian in the service of Henry VII., King of England, discovered the mainland of North America in 1497, fourteen months before Columbus landed on the mainland of South America. During the greater part of the sixteenth century this claim was neglected, and Spain and France had each secured a strong foothold before England planted her first colony. The Dutch and Swedes also attempted settlements, and the rival claims of all these various European nations led to frequent wars. The most troublesome competitors of the English were the Spaniards and French. Of these two nations the French were the most formidable, and, as we shall see hereafter, their wars with the English were long and bloody.

1. On what ground did England claim the exclusive right to plant colonies in North America? What of this claim during the greater part of the sixteenth century? Who had secured strongholds in America before England planted her first colony? What of the Dutch and Swedes? To what did the rival claims of these various European nations lead? Who were the most troublesome competitors of the English?

2. Elizabeth had been nearly twenty years upon the throne of England before any serious effort was made to make good the English claim to North America. Then Martin Frobisher sailed in search of a northwest passage to India in 1576, and in two other voyages attempted to find gold and also to plant an English colony, but succeeded in neither attempt.

3. Sir Humphrey Gilbert made efforts to plant colonies, but failed, losing his own life at sea. His half-brother, Sir Walter Raleigh, being high in the favor of Queen Elizabeth, obtained from her the grant to an extensive country between the parallels of 33° and 45° north latitude. To this large tract of country, extending from Maine to the southern coast of North Carolina, was given the name of Virginia, in honor of Elizabeth, the Virgin Queen. Raleigh's first attempt to plant a colony was on Roanoke Island, in 1585; but after suffering many hardships the settlers were taken on board an English ship by Sir Francis Drake, who happened to stop there on one of his exploring tours. Sir Francis Drake was a great navigator, and was the first Englishman who sailed a ship on the Pacific Ocean. The settlers thus carried home by Drake had been long enough among the Indians to learn the use of tobacco, and had also noticed the culture by the Indians of Indian corn and potatoes.

4. After the departure of the settlers Sir Richard Grenville, who had first conducted them to Roanoke Island, came back, and left fifteen men to retain possession of the soil. These perished; in what manner is not known. In 1587, Raleigh made another attempt, and on the northern shore of Roanoke Island was com-

2. How long had Elizabeth been on the throne before any attempt was made to make good the English claim? What of Martin Frobisher?

3. What of Sir Humphrey Gilbert's efforts to plant colonies? To what did Sir Walter Raleigh obtain a grant? What name was given to the country? Where did Raleigh first attempt to plant a colony? What of this colony?

4. After the departure of the settlers what did Sir Richard Grenville do? Where did Raleigh make another attempt in 1587? What city was commenced? What did Lane, the governor, do? Whom did he leave at the new settlement? What did he find when he returned to America?

menced the city of Raleigh. Provisions were scarce and the Indians unfriendly. Lane, the governor, went to England for supplies and reinforcements, leaving behind eighty-nine men, seventeen women, and eleven children, including his granddaughter, Virginia Dare, ten days old, the first English child born in America. Lane on returning to England found the attention of the country too much absorbed by the threatened invasion of the Spanish Armada to give him the needed assistance. When, three years later, he returned to America the colony and city of Raleigh were no more.

5. Raleigh transferred his patent to a company, but on the accession of James I., in 1603, it reverted to the crown. The new sovereign granted the territory of Virginia, as it was called, to two companies,—the London and the Plymouth. The Atlantic coast between 34° and 45° north latitude was divided between these two companies. The territory of the London Company was called South Virginia, that of the Plymouth Company, North Virginia. Both were under the control of the “Council of Virginia.” All the members of this council were appointed by the king, and resided in England.

6. In 1607 one hundred and five emigrants, all unmarried men, were sent out by the London Company, under the direction of Captain Newport. On the James River, in the present State of Virginia, they commenced a settlement, which they named Jamestown. This was the first permanent English settlement in America.

7. The officers of the colony were seven members of council.

5. To whom did Raleigh transfer his patent? What happened on the accession of James I. in 1603? To whom did the king grant the territory of Virginia? What was divided between these two companies? What was the territory of the London Company called? What was that of the Plymouth Company called? Under whose control were both? By whom were the members of this council appointed?

6. What happened in 1607? Where did they commence a settlement? What did they call their settlement? What can you say of this settlement?

7. Who were the officers of the colony? Who was made governor or pres-

They were Bartholomew Gosnold, Captain John Smith, Edward Wingfield, Christopher Newport, John Ratcliff, and George Kendall. Edward Wingfield was made president or governor of the colony. The season after their arrival proved very unhealthy, and more than half their number died before winter. Among those who died was Bartholomew Gosnold, one of the ablest members of the council.

8. Captain Newport, the commander of the vessels which had brought the settlers over, after staying a short while, sailed for England, leaving the colonists in a very destitute condition. The Indians in the neighborhood of Jamestown were numerous, and sometimes hostile. In addition to their other troubles the settlers quarrelled among themselves. They excluded Captain Smith from the council, deposed Mr. Wingfield, and put Mr. Ratcliff in his place. As their condition continued to grow worse, they finally gave the management of affairs to Captain Smith, who, by his skill and courage, soon restored order and placed the colony on the road to prosperity.

9. Captain John Smith was a man who had met with many adventures. He had served in the armies of Holland and Austria, had been a prisoner among the Turks, and had travelled through most of the principal countries of Europe. After all his travels he returned to England—his native country—just in time to join the companies which were forming for the settlement of Virginia. One of his first steps after taking charge of the affairs of the colony was to make treaties with the Indians, and thus quiet the fears of the settlers. As soon as the colony became tranquil he went with a party of men on an exploration up the Chickahominy, a branch of the James. When they had pro-

ident? What of the season after their arrival? How many died before winter? Which one of the members of council died?

8. Give an account of the troubles of the settlers. To whom did they finally give the management of affairs? What did Smith do?

9. Mention the adventures of Captain John Smith. What did he do after all these travels? What was one of his first steps after taking charge of the

ceeded about thirty miles above the junction of these rivers they were attacked by Indians; Smith's companions were slain, and he was himself captured and carried before Powhatan, the Indian king, who determined to put him to death. Smith's arms were tied behind his back, his head was placed upon a log, and Powhatan, seizing his club, was about to slay the prisoner himself, when his daughter Pocahontas, a girl of about twelve years, sprang forward and, throwing her arms around the prisoner's neck, begged her father to spare his life. Powhatan, moved by his daughter's tears and entreaties, spared his prisoner's life. He also made a treaty with Smith, and allowed him to return to his friends at Jamestown, which place Smith reached after an absence of about seven weeks.

10. Soon after this, Powhatan again became angry with the whites, and laid a plot to destroy them, but, through information given by Pocahontas, the plot was discovered and the colony saved. Through the influence of Captain Smith peace was once more made.

11. In the year 1609 a new charter was obtained by the London Company, and Virginia was declared to extend from the Atlantic to the Pacific, and to embrace all the islands within one hundred miles of either shore. The authority was vested in a governor instead of a local council. Lord Delaware was elected governor. On the 2d of June, 1609, nine vessels sailed from Plymouth with five hundred emigrants on board. One of the vessels was sunk in a storm, another was stranded on the Bermudas. The other seven arrived at Jamestown with a loss of most of their supplies. During this same year Smith was seri-

affairs of the colony? Give an account of his explorations up the Chickahominy. Relate his adventure with Powhatan. How long was Smith absent from Jamestown?

10. What did Powhatan do soon after this? How was the plot made known to the whites? Through whose influence was peace once more made?

11. What were declared to be the limits of Virginia by the charter obtained in 1609? In whom was the authority vested? Who was made governor? What happened in 1609? How many vessels reached Jamestown? During

ously injured by the explosion of a bag of powder, and was obliged to return to England for medical aid. He never again returned to Jamestown. In the year 1614 he explored and made a map of the coast from Penobscot Bay to Cape Cod. He called the country thus explored by him New England, by which name it has been called ever since. Captain Smith died in London, in the year 1631, at the age of fifty-two.

12. After Smith's departure from Jamestown the Indians became hostile, provisions were scarce, and many died of starvation. In six months they were reduced from four hundred and ninety to sixty. This was known as the starving-time. In the midst of their despair a vessel with crew and passengers, who had wintered in the West Indies, appeared at Jamestown. The settlers went on board with the determination of abandoning the settlement, and had actually set sail, when the arrival of Lord Delaware with a supply of provisions and more immigrants caused them to change their purpose and return to Jamestown.

13. Under Delaware's administration the colony began to flourish; but his health gave way, and he returned to England. He died at sea, when returning to Virginia, in 1617, near the bay which now bears his name. In May, 1611, Sir Thomas Dale was appointed governor, and in September of the same year Sir Thomas Gates came out as governor. He brought over with him six ships, three hundred immigrants, a large amount of provisions,

the same year, what happened to Smith? What was he obliged to do? Did he ever return to Jamestown? What did he do in 1614? What did he call the country thus explored by him? Where and when did Captain Smith die? At what age?

12. What of the Indians after Smith's departure from Jamestown? Give an account of the starving-time. What happened in the midst of their despair? What did the settlers do? What caused them to change their purpose?

13. What of the colony under Delaware's administration? Why did he return to England? When and where did Lord Delaware die? Who was appointed governor in May, 1611? Who became governor in September? Mention all that he brought with him. What was done by the charter of 1612?

and a number of cows, goats, and swine, the first introduced into the New World. In 1612 a third charter was granted the colony, by which the council in London was abolished, and the stockholders were given power to regulate affairs themselves.

14. In 1613, Pocahontas was stolen by a party of white men led by Captain Argall, and a large sum was demanded for her ransom. This Powhatan refused to pay, and the colony was threatened with an Indian war. But hostilities were prevented by a marriage. A young Englishman by the name of Rolfe fell in love with Pocahontas and proposed to marry her. Powhatan consented. She embraced the Christian religion, was baptized, and soon after married. She accompanied her husband on a visit to England, where she died at the age of twenty-two, leaving one son, named Thomas.

15. In 1614, Sir Thomas Dale was again appointed governor, and continued in office for two years. In the same year that Dale was appointed *Tobacco* began to be extensively planted by the colonists. We have seen that Sir Walter Raleigh and his companions had first carried the knowledge of this plant to England. Long before him, however, Columbus had noticed its use among the natives of Cuba. The plant is said to have received its name from the island of Tobago, one of the West Indies. The Virginia colonists found its cultivation very profitable, and began to raise great quantities of it. King James, of England, opposed its use; but, in spite of his opposition, it soon became a regular article of commerce.

16. In 1616, Mr. George Yeardley became governor, but at the end of a year was succeeded by Captain Argall, whose rule was so oppressive that the colonists requested his removal. This was

14. What happened in 1613? Would Powhatan pay the ransom demanded? How was war prevented? Who married Pocahontas? What else can you tell of Pocahontas?

15. Who was appointed governor in 1614? Relate what is said about tobacco.

16. What is said of Yeardley and Argall? What did Yeardley do June 28, 1619? What can you say of this assembly and the laws enacted by them?

the same Captain Argall who had stolen Pocahontas from her father, and who destroyed the French settlements in Nova Scotia, by way of asserting the English claim to the whole of North America. The request of the colonists for his removal from the office of governor was granted, and Yeardley was appointed his successor. He believed that the colonists ought to have a hand in their own government, and accordingly, June 28, 1619, he called a colonial assembly to meet at Jamestown. This was the first legislative body composed of deputies elected by the people that ever assembled in America. These deputies were called Burgesses, and were chosen from the various plantations or boroughs. The laws enacted by them had to receive the sanction of the company in England, but in turn the orders from London had to be ratified by the assembly before they were binding on the colonists. These privileges were in 1621 embodied in a written constitution.

17. During Yeardley's administration the colony prospered greatly. Both banks of the James River were lined with settlements for one hundred and forty miles. For the sake of forming domestic ties young women of good character were sent over by the London Company as wives for the settlers. Each man, however, had to pay for his wife the price of her passage, which was at first one hundred pounds of tobacco, but afterwards went up to one hundred and fifty pounds. The colonists having family ties now became attached to their homes, and began to take pride in the name of Virginian.

18. In the year 1620 some Dutch traders brought twenty negroes to Jamestown and sold them to the colonists. As their labor was found profitable more were brought over, and thus negro slavery was first introduced into America. The population of the colony was now upwards of two thousand.

17. What of the colony during Yeardley's administration? Give an account of the forming of domestic ties.

18. When was negro slavery first introduced into America? By whom? What was the population of Virginia at this time?

19. In 1621, Sir Francis Wyatt became governor. There were now in Virginia about eighty settlements, and the colony was flourishing greatly, when a sudden and unexpected disaster befell the settlers. In 1622 the Indians, incited by their chief O-pe-chan-can-ough, the brother and successor of Powhatan, treacherously fell upon the whites, and slew three hundred of them in a single hour. It was their design to exterminate the colony, but the plot was revealed to the English by a friendly Indian, and a majority of the settlers were enabled to find refuge in Jamestown. The whites now lost all confidence in the Indians, and almost exterminated the tribe in the neighborhood of Jamestown.

20. In 1626, Sir George Yeardley again became governor, but died the following year, and the council elected Francis West governor in his place. He was soon succeeded by Sir John Harvey, who, although exceedingly unpopular, was continued in office by the king until 1642, when Sir William Berkeley was appointed in his place. In 1644 the Indians, who had partly recovered from their overthrow after the great massacre of 1622, again fell upon the frontier settlements, and killed about three hundred of the inhabitants before they were repulsed. After a war of about two years their power was completely broken. Their aged chief Opechancanough was taken prisoner and died in captivity. The Indians were compelled to give up their lands and retire farther into the wilderness. After the restoration of peace the colony "flourished greatly, its trade increased, and more than thirty ships found employment in exporting its products." By 1648 the population of Virginia was twenty thousand.

19. Who became governor of Virginia in 1621? Give an account of the Indian war of 1622.

20. Give an account of changes in the office of governor. Tell about the Indian war of 1644. What became of Opechancanough their chief? What were the Indians compelled to do? What of the condition of the colony after the restoration of peace?

CHAPTER IV.

SETTLEMENT OF NEW YORK BY THE DUTCH.—IT BECOMES
A BRITISH COLONY.

SEAL OF NEW YORK.

1. In the year 1609, Henry Hudson, an Englishman, who was in the service of the Dutch East India Company, discovered and ascended the river which now bears his name. In consequence of his discoveries the Dutch laid claim to the country, and in 1610 erected a fort near where the city of Albany now stands. They also built a few huts on Manhattan Island, between 1610 and 1613, and some time afterwards called the town thus commenced New Amsterdam. To the country which they claimed they gave the name of New Netherlands.

2. The English also claimed this region as a part of North Virginia, partly on the ground of the discovery of North America by Cabot, and also for the reason that Hudson was himself an Englishman. Accordingly, in 1613 they sent against the Dutch an expedition under Captain Argall, who subdued New Amster-

1. What did Henry Hudson do in 1609? In consequence of his discoveries what did the Dutch do? Where did they erect a fort in 1610? What did they do between 1610 and 1613? What did they call the country?

2. Why did the English claim this region? What did they do in 1613? What happened soon after?

dam and made the Dutch governor promise to pay tribute. The governor, however, threw off the English yoke the next year, and the Dutch remained undisturbed by the English for the next fifty years.

3. The progress of the Dutch was not rapid, but their settlements were gradually extended from the Connecticut River to the Delaware. They had frequent disputes with their English neighbors, but sometimes received assistance from them in their contests with the Indians.

4. Along the Delaware they had to contend against the claims of both the Swedes and the English. In 1651, Peter Stuyvesant, the Dutch governor, subdued the Swedish settlers on the Delaware and took possession of their settlements.

5. In 1664, Robert Nichols, the deputy of the Duke of York, to whom the territory lying between the Delaware and Connecticut Rivers had been granted by his brother, Charles II., took possession of New Amsterdam and the Dutch province of New Netherlands in the name of the Duke of York, afterwards James II., of England. The English gave to the country the name of New York, which name they also gave to New Amsterdam.

3. What can you say of the progress of the Dutch?

4. Against what did they have to contend along the Delaware? What did the Dutch governor, Peter Stuyvesant, do in 1651?

5. What did Robert Nichols do in 1664? What name did the English give to the country and city?

CHAPTER V.

THE COLONY OF MASSACHUSETTS.



LANDING OF THE PILGRIMS.

1. THE first attempt at settlement in the territory granted to the Plymouth Company was in the year 1607, near the mouth of the Kennebec River, in Maine, by forty-five persons, but resulted in complete failure, as did other attempts that were made after the publication of Captain John Smith's Map of New England, as he styled that part of North Virginia which he explored in 1614.

2. The first colony successfully planted in New England was by the permission rather than by the active assistance of the Plymouth Company. This was in 1620, at Plymouth, in the limits of the present State of Massachusetts, by a religious sect

1. When was the first attempt made to settle in the territory granted to the Plymouth Company, and with what result?

2. When and where was the first colony planted in Massachusetts? By whom? Why was this name given to them? Why were they also called Pilgrims? What did they seek on the bleak coast of New England?

styled Puritans. This name was given to them in derision, on account of their rigid observance at all times of the forms of their religion. They were also called Pilgrims, because of the fact that they had so often been obliged by religious persecution to change their homes. They sought on the wild, bleak coast of New England what they prized above all things else,—freedom to worship God according to the dictates of their own conscience.

3. They procured two vessels, the *Speedwell* and *Mayflower*, and set sail on the 22d of July, 1620, but the *Speedwell* was soon found not to be seaworthy, and they were obliged to put back for repairs. On the 5th of August they again set sail, but a second time were compelled to return to land. Finally, on the 6th of September, the *Mayflower* sailed from Plymouth with one hundred and one persons on board. Their destination was the mouth of the Hudson, but the captain of their vessel, whether ignorantly or on purpose, conducted them to a much colder and more dreary region north of that river. After a voyage of sixty-three days they came in sight of land off Cape Cod, and on the 10th of November they cast anchor. Before landing they drew up in writing a purely democratic form of government, and elected John Carver governor for one year. Several days were spent in searching for a suitable place to land. At last, on the 22d of December, they all came ashore amid a storm of snow and sleet. The rock on which they first stepped ashore has been ever since called "Forefathers' Rock." They named their settlement Plymouth, in honor of the place from which they had set sail.

3. How many vessels did they procure? Give an account of their efforts to set sail. From what place did they sail on the 6th of September, 1620? With how many persons? What was their destination? Where did the captain of their vessel conduct them? How long was their voyage? Where did they come in sight of land? What did they do before landing? How were several days spent? When did they go ashore? What has the rock on which they first stepped ashore been ever since called? What did they name their settlement?

4. The Puritans were industrious and spent no time in idleness. They immediately went to work felling trees, and on the third day they began to build. The winter was very severe and their sufferings were great. They were smitten down by disease, and by the 1st of April all but forty-six of the devoted band were dead. Among the dead were Governor Carver, his wife and son. Still they had no thought of abandoning their settlement. Religious freedom on that desolate shore was dearer to them than luxury in England without that freedom.

5. It was well that in their feeble condition they were unmolested by the Indians. The tribe formerly inhabiting the place where they had landed had been destroyed by a pestilence. Early in the spring, a short time before the death of Governor Carver, they were startled by the appearance in their midst of a solitary Indian, who saluted them in broken English with, "Welcome, Englishmen!" This Indian was Samoset, one of the leading men of the Wam-pan-o-ags, the nearest tribe to the Puritan settlement. He had somewhere previously met with the English, and had learned their language. On a subsequent visit he was accompanied by Mas-sa-soit, his chief, who made a treaty of friendship with the English, which lasted for more than fifty years. Massasoit taught the settlers how to cultivate maize or Indian corn, the first of which was planted in the month of May.

6. After the death of Carver, William Bradford was elected governor, and gave such great satisfaction that he was continued in the office during the greater part of forty years. In November, 1621, a ship arrived with thirty-five immigrants. During

4. What was the character of the Puritans? What is said of the winter? To what number were they reduced by the 1st of April? What prominent persons were among the dead? Did they have any desire to abandon their settlement? What was dearer to them than everything else?

5. What is said of the Indian tribe formerly inhabiting the place where they had settled? By what were they startled one day early in the spring? Who was this Indian? By whom was he accompanied on a subsequent visit? Relate what is said of Massasoit.

6. Who was elected governor after the death of Carver? What can you say

this year other Indian chiefs followed the example of Massasoit, and made friends with the English, but Ca-non-i-cus, the chief of the Narragansets, sent as a declaration of war a bundle of arrows tied in the skin of a snake. Governor Bradford, in reply, sent the skin filled with powder and ball, and Canonicus concluded that he had better be quiet.

7. In 1623 the Puritans became involved in an Indian war through the conduct of another small English colony which had been established at Weymouth, near Boston Harbor, and who had treated the Indians with so much harshness that a plot was formed for the extermination of the whites. The plot was revealed to the English by Massasoit the friendly chief, and Captain Standish, taking with him eight men, fell upon the Indians unexpectedly and slew the principal instigators of the plot. The settlement at Weymouth was soon after abandoned.

8. In 1624 other immigrants arrived, bringing with them cattle, swine, poultry, and provisions. The progress of the Plymouth Colony was slow. At the end of ten years the number of the settlers was only three hundred.

9. In the year 1628, John Endicott with about one hundred colonists settled at Salem, and in the following year a charter was granted for the colony of Massachusetts. Soon after three hundred settlers embarked for the new colony, and new settlements were made at Charlestown, Dorchester, Watertown, Lynn, Roxbury, and Boston. John Winthrop was elected the first governor of Massachusetts, and the government was at first a pure democracy. The colony of Massachusetts was separate and distinct

of him? What happened in November, 1621? What did other Indian chiefs do during this year? What of Canonicus, chief of the Narragansets?

7. Give an account of Indian troubles.

8. What did the immigrants who came over in 1624 bring with them? What of the progress of the Plymouth Colony? What was the number of the settlers at the end of ten years?

9. Give an account of other settlements. Who was first governor of Massachusetts? What was the government at first? Was it many years before Plymouth and Massachusetts became one colony?

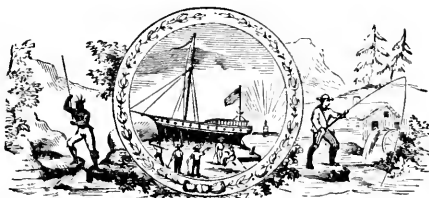
from that of Plymouth, and it was several years before the two colonies became one, under the name of Massachusetts.



SEAL OF MASSACHUSETTS.

CHAPTER VI.

SETTLEMENT OF NEW HAMPSHIRE AND CONNECTICUT.



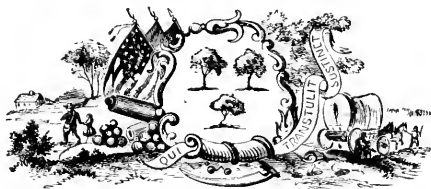
SEAL OF NEW HAMPSHIRE.

1. THOUGH it is claimed that New Hampshire was founded in 1622, yet the first permanent settlements were made in November, 1629, one of them near the site of Portsmouth, and the other at the present town of Dover. After the death of Captain John Mason, the founder of New Hampshire, the colony languished, but in 1638 a new settlement was made at Exeter, by John

1. When is it claimed that New Hampshire was founded? When were the first permanent settlements made? Where? What of the colony after the

Wheelwright and some followers from Massachusetts, and in 1640 another settlement was made at Hampton.

2. Connecticut was first settled in 1633, near Hartford, by the Dutch, who laid claim to the Connecticut Valley. Shortly after, John Holmes and some traders from Plymouth sailed up the Connecticut River past Hartford, where the Dutch had planted some cannon and threatened to fire on them. The English, however, defied them, and keeping boldly on, established a post at Windsor. In 1635, John Winthrop, the son of the governor of Massachusetts, erected a fort at the mouth of the Connecticut and called it Saybrook. The Dutch now yielded all claim to any part of Connecticut.



SEAL OF CONNECTICUT.

3. About one hundred emigrants came from Massachusetts into Connecticut in 1636. Some settled at Hartford, some founded Springfield, and others formed a settlement at Weathersfield. In 1638 the colony and city of New Haven were founded by Theophilus Eaton, who was elected governor, and continued in office for more than twenty years.

death of Captain John Mason, the founder? Where was a new settlement made in 1638? By whom? What happened in 1640?

2. When, where, and by whom was Connecticut first settled? What did John Holmes and some traders do? What did John Winthrop do in 1635? What did the Dutch now do?

3. What happened in 1636? What places did they settle? When were the colony and city of New Haven founded? By whom? How long did Eaton continue in office?

4. There were at this time in the territory now known as the State of Connecticut three separate political communities. These were Saybrook, the Connecticut Colony, and the colony of New Haven.

CHAPTER VII.

SETTLEMENT OF RHODE ISLAND.



SEAL OF RHODE ISLAND.

1. THE colony of Rhode Island was founded in 1636, by Roger Williams, a native of Wales, and a minister of the Baptist denomination. When he first came to America he settled at Salem, in Massachusetts, but on account of his religious opinions he was banished by the Puritans, who had themselves come to America that they might enjoy freedom of conscience. Their reason for not wanting people of different views from their own to live among them was, that they feared there could be no peace in the colony unless all the settlers were of the same religious belief. This fear rendered them as intolerant as their bitterest persecutors in old England.

4. How many political communities were there at this time in the territory now known as the State of Connecticut? Name them.

1. When and by whom was the colony of Rhode Island founded? Who was Roger Williams? Where did he settle when he first came to America? Why was he banished from Salem? Why did not the Puritans wish people

2. For fourteen weeks did Roger Williams roam about in the wilderness seeking a suitable place for a settlement, receiving shelter and protection from the Indians, who loved him because he had taken pains to learn their language, customs, and manners, so that he might be the better able to preach to them the gospel of Christ. At last Williams selected a place for a settlement on the Pawtucket River, now called the Seekonk. This place lay within the territory of Ou-sam-e-quin, an Indian chief, who readily granted Williams permission to settle there. He immediately went to work and built him a house with his own hands. Here also a few friends joined him. But even here they were not allowed to rest in peace. They were ordered away by Governor Winslow, of the Plymouth Colony, and again set out in search of a resting-place.

3. The resting-place was at last found in the territory of Canonieus, the Narraganset chief, who through kindness and good will alone made to Williams a grant of land for a settlement near the mouth of the Moshassuck River. They were not again molested, and to his new settlement Williams gave the name of Providence, in gratitude for God's merciful providence over him in his distress.

4. The population of the settlement was soon increased by emigrants from Massachusetts and from England. In 1638 some persons who had been banished from Massachusetts on account of their religious opinions obtained from the Indians, through the influence of Roger Williams, permission to settle at Newport, on the island of Rhode Island.

of different religious views from their own to live among them? What did this fear render them?

2. Why did the Indians love Williams? What can you tell of his first settlement?

3. Where did Williams at last find a resting-place? What prompted the chief to give Williams a grant of land for a settlement? What did Williams name his new settlement?

4. How was the population soon increased? What happened in 1638?

5. In 1643, Williams went to England, and obtained a charter setting forth the boundaries of Rhode Island as they in the main still exist. On his return the people met, elected their officers, and in 1647 agreed on a set of laws granting perfect religious freedom to everybody, "the first legal declaration of liberty of conscience ever adopted in Europe or America." In 1663, Williams obtained a charter from Charles II. for all the settlements within the limits of Rhode Island, under the name of "The English Colony of Rhode Island and Providence Plantations in New England." This charter remained the foundation of the government of Rhode Island for nearly two hundred years.

CHAPTER VIII.

THE WAR WITH THE PEQUODS.—NEW ENGLAND CONFEDERATION.

1. IN 1637 the colonies of Connecticut and Massachusetts became involved in a war with the Pequods, a very powerful tribe of Indians. Cassacus, the sachem or chief of this tribe, formed the design of exterminating the English, and endeavored to secure the alliance of the chiefs of the Mohegan and Narraganset Indians. Roger Williams hearing of this, and forgetting all his wrongs, went in his canoe on a stormy night to see Canonicens, and though the messengers of Cassacus were present, he succeeded in persuading the Narraganset chief to remain quiet.

5. What did Williams do in 1643? What did the people do on his return? On what did they agree in 1647? What can you say of these laws? What did Williams do in 1663? How long did this government remain the foundation of the government of Rhode Island?

1. In what war did the colonies of Massachusetts become involved in 1637? Give an account of the plot of Cassacus. What did Roger Williams do? How did the Pequods commence hostilities?

The Pequods were thus compelled to fight alone. They commenced hostilities by murdering about thirty colonists.

2. The united forces of Massachusetts and Connecticut, numbering between eighty and ninety English, and about seventy Mohegans under their chief Uncas, were placed under the command of Captain Mason, of Connecticut. They were also joined by some of the Narraganset Indians. On the 20th of May, 1637, the English and their Indian allies attacked the Pequods in their stronghold on the Mystic River, and after a desperate battle utterly defeated them, destroying their fort and burning their wigwams. Seven hundred of the Pequods were slain, and two hundred were captured. The captives were women and children. The loss of the English was only two killed and sixteen wounded. The captives were sold into slavery. Thus was the tribe of the Pequods exterminated, and their lands were divided among the conquerors. Cassacus, their chief, fled to the Mo-hawks, and was assassinated either by them or by one of his own men.

3. The first American slave-ship was built at Marblehead, in Massachusetts, in 1636, and named the *Desire*. This ship brought the first cargo of slaves into Massachusetts in May, 1638. During the same year a college was founded at Cambridge, in Massachusetts, which now bears the name of Harvard University.

4. In 1643 a confederation was formed between the colonies of Massachusetts Bay, Plymouth, Connecticut, and New Haven, under the title of "The United Colonies of New England." Rhode Island was excluded on account of its religion.

2. Under whose command were the united forces of Massachusetts and Connecticut placed? Give an account of the fight at the Pequod fort. What was done with the Pequods and their lands?

3. Where and when was the first American slave-ship built, and when did it bring its first cargo? What college was founded at Cambridge, in Massachusetts, during the same year?

4. What confederation was formed in 1643? Why was Rhode Island excluded?

5. Under the articles of confederation the management of Indian affairs was given to a board of commissioners; and it was not long before a very important duty devolved upon them. Uncas, the chief of the Mohegans, became involved in a war with Mi-an-to-no-mah, a chief of the Narragansets, and nephew of Canonicus. Miantonomah was defeated and taken prisoner, and his fate was referred to the commissioners. They decided that Uncas could do with his prisoner as he pleased, provided he did not torture him. Just as soon as Uncas had his victim beyond the border he struck a tomahawk into his head, and before life was entirely gone he tore a piece of flesh from the shoulder of his prostrate foe and ate it, "declaring that it made his heart strong, and was the sweetest morsel he ever ate."

6. In 1662 the colonies of New Haven and Connecticut were united, under the name of Connecticut. The entire population of the New England Confederation was at this time something more than one hundred thousand.

5. To whom was the management of Indian affairs given under the Confederation? Give an account of the quarrel between Uncas and Miantonomah. What did the commissioners decide? What did Uncas do with his prisoner?

6. What happened in 1662? What was the entire population of the New England Confederation at this time?

CHAPTER IX.

SETTLEMENT OF MARYLAND.



SEAL OF MARYLAND.

1. TRADING-POSTS were first established in the limits of Maryland, in 1621, by Virginia settlers. William Clayborne, the agent of a company formed in England, tried to monopolize this trade, and obtained a license, under which for many years afterwards he claimed rights.

2. In 1628, Sir George Calvert, whose title was Lord Baltimore, visited Virginia with the design of founding a colony somewhere within its limits; but he abandoned this project, because he found that the government of Virginia was intolerant towards the religion of the Roman Catholic Church, of which he was a member. In 1629 he explored the country along the Chesapeake Bay, and afterwards went to England and applied for a charter, which was finally obtained. He was, however, prevented from carrying out his purpose by death.

1. When and by whom were trading-posts first established in the limits of Maryland? Who tried to monopolize this trade?

2. Who visited Virginia in 1628 with the design of establishing a colony somewhere in its limits? Why did he abandon the project? What did he do in 1629? What did he do afterwards? How was he prevented from carrying out his purpose?

3. His son and heir, Cecil Calvert, whose title was also Lord Baltimore, carried out the purpose for which the charter was obtained. The charter of Maryland was the most liberal of all the original grants by the crown to the founders of settlements in America. It secured to the colonists all the essential rights of self-government, and contained a guarantee against taxation by England. One of the leading objects of Lord Baltimore in establishing this colony was to furnish an asylum for the persecuted of all Christian churches. He called his colony Maryland, in honor of Henrietta Maria, the wife of Charles I., King of England.

4. In November, 1633, Leonard Calvert, the brother of Cecil, came over with about two hundred immigrants, consisting mostly of Roman Catholic gentlemen and their servants. They called their settlement St. Mary's. Towards the natives the settlers pursued a kind and liberal course, supplying them with clothes, hoes, axes, and knives. The Indian women taught the wives of the settlers how to make corn bread, and the warriors taught the men the forest sports.

5. In 1635, William Clayborne, whose license to trade with the Indians had been made void by Lord Baltimore's charter, raised a rebellion. Clayborne was defeated and his men captured, but he himself managed to escape to Virginia. In 1642 he returned to Maryland and endeavored to incite the Indians to hostilities, but this trouble was soon suppressed. The next year he succeeded in raising a more formidable rebellion, which kept the

3. Who carried out the purpose for which the charter was obtained? Tell all that is said of the charter of Maryland. What was one of the leading objects of Lord Baltimore in establishing this colony? What did he name the country? In whose honor?

4. How many immigrants came over with Leonard Calvert in 1633? Who were they? What did they call their settlement? What course did they pursue towards the natives? What did the Indian women teach the wives of the settlers?

5. Give an account of the troubles with Clayborne. What was the governor of Maryland forced to do? What became of the public records? When was

colony in a state of confusion for three years. The governor was forced to flee to Virginia for protection, and the public records were either lost or destroyed. In 1646 the lawful government was restored. An act of amnesty was passed, and all offenders were freely pardoned. In 1649 the Assembly of Maryland passed a Toleration Act, securing to all Christians the liberty of worshipping God according to the dictates of their own conscience.

CHAPTER X.

SETTLEMENT OF NEW JERSEY AND DELAWARE.



SEAL OF NEW JERSEY.

1. **NEW JERSEY** was first settled by the Danes in 1622, along the Delaware River, and also at Bergen. The next year the Dutch built a fort on the east side of the Delaware, to which they gave the name of Nassau. In 1640 the English attempted colonization, but they were opposed by both the Swedes and the Dutch, and their settlement was broken up.

2. In 1664, Charles II., King of England, acquired the Dutch colony of New Netherlands, and made a grant of it to his brother,

the lawful government restored? What act was passed? What can you say of the Toleration Act?

1. Give an account of early attempts to settle New Jersey.
2. When Charles II., King of England, acquired the Dutch colony of New

the Duke of York. This grant embraced all the country lying between the Connecticut River and the Delaware. That part of it which now constitutes the State of New Jersey was granted by the Duke of York to Lord Berkeley and Sir George Carteret. It was called New Jersey as a compliment to Sir George Carteret, who had bravely defended the island of Jersey during the civil war in England. Settlements had already been made at Elizabeth and one or two other places, under licenses from the governor of New York. The first governor was Philip Carteret, brother of Sir George, and he was succeeded, in 1672, by a son of Sir George Carteret.

3. In 1673 the Dutch recovered New York and New Jersey, but soon after restored them to the English. The Duke of York then had both provinces united into one, and appointed as governor Sir Edmund Andros, who was hated by the people as a tyrant. In 1674, Lord Berkeley sold his share of New Jersey to Edward Byllinge, an English Quaker, who transferred his claim to William Penn, between whom and Carteret New Jersey was divided, under the names of West Jersey and East Jersey. Burlington was settled in 1677, by four hundred English Quakers. In 1702 East and West Jersey were reunited and placed under one government with New York. New Jersey did not become a separate colony again until 1738, when Lewis Morris was appointed governor. In 1746 Princeton College was founded.

4. Delaware derived its name from the river and bay which form its eastern boundary, and these, as has been before mentioned, were named in honor of Lord Delaware, one of the early

Netherlands in 1664, what did he do with it? What did this grant embrace? To whom was that part granted which now constitutes the State of New Jersey? Why called New Jersey? Where had settlements already been made? Who was the first governor? By whom was he succeeded in 1672?

3. What of the Dutch? What did the Duke of York do? Who was appointed governor? What of him? Relate events from 1674 to 1702. What happened in 1702? When did New Jersey become a separate colony again? Who was appointed governor? What college was founded in 1746?

4. From what did Delaware derive its name? After whom were Delaware

governors of Virginia.* The Dutch made the first attempt to settle this section of country in 1632, near where Lewistown now stands, but a quarrel arose between the settlers and the Indians, and the little colony was exterminated. The first permanent European settlement in Delaware was made by the Swedes and Finns in 1638, at a place near the present city of Wilmington,



SEAL OF DELAWARE.

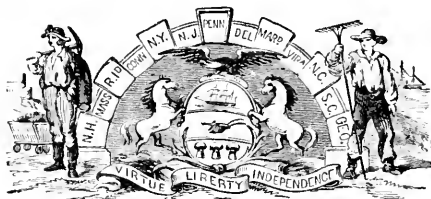
which they named Christiana, in honor of the infant queen of Sweden. To the colony itself they gave the name of New Sweden. In 1655 New Sweden fell under the dominion of the Dutch, and in 1664 it was seized by the English when they took possession of New Netherlands. In 1682 it was granted to William Penn, who called it "The Lower Counties of Delaware." These Swedish settlements remained a part of Pennsylvania until 1690, when the delegates from these "Lower Counties" to the Legislature of Pennsylvania formed a separate legislature for themselves, and Delaware, with the approval of William Penn, became a separate colony.

* See Chapter III., thirteenth paragraph.

River and Bay named? What of the first attempt to settle this region of country? By whom was the first permanent colony in Delaware made? What name did the Swedes give to the colony? Under whose dominion did New Sweden fall in 1655? By whom was it seized in 1664? To whom was it granted in 1682? What happened in 1690?

CHAPTER XI.

SETTLEMENT OF PENNSYLVANIA.



SEAL OF PENNSYLVANIA.

1. THE first European settlements in Pennsylvania were made along the Upper Delaware, by the Swedes and Finns, in 1638. These settlements fell under the dominion of the Dutch in 1655, and were seized by the English Duke of York in 1664. In the year 1681, Charles II., King of England, made a grant of all the country now known as Pennsylvania to William Penn. This grant was made to pay a debt which the English government had owed to Penn's father, who was an admiral in the British navy. Penn proposed to call the country thus granted to him "Sylvania," but the king called it Pennsylvania, which means Penn's Woodland.

2. William Penn belonged to a sect of Christians styled by themselves Friends, but called by the world Quakers. This sect

1. Where, by whom, and when were the first European settlements made in Pennsylvania? Under whose dominion did they fall in 1655? By whom were they seized in 1664? What did Charles II. do in 1681? For what purpose was this grant made? What did Penn propose to call the country? What did the king call it?

2. To what sect of Christians did William Penn belong? To what was this sect subject in England? What was Penn's desire? When did the first im-

was subject to many annoyances and petty persecutions in England, and it was Penn's desire to found in America a place of refuge for his brethren. The first immigrants arrived in 1681, and Penn himself came over in 1682. Soon after his arrival he made a treaty with the Indians, and promised to treat them kindly. He kept his word, and as long as Quaker rule continued in Pennsylvania, which was seventy years, the peace was unbroken between the whites and Indians. Penn was dearly loved by the red men, who called him "Onas," and thought that the best compliment they could pay a white man was to say that he was like Onas.

3. In the latter part of 1682, Penn began to build a city on a tract of land lying between the Schuylkill and the Delaware Rivers. This place he called Philadelphia, or the City of Brotherly Love. It grew very rapidly, and in three years had more than six hundred houses, while the colony had a population of eight or nine thousand. After Penn's death, in 1718, his sons ruled the colony through deputy-governors. This proprietary government lasted down to the Revolution, when the Commonwealth bought the claims of Penn's sons for \$580,000.

migrants arrive? When did Penn himself come over? What did he do soon after his arrival? How long did Quaker rule continue in Pennsylvania? What of the peace between the whites and Indians during that time? What did the Indians call Penn? What was the best thing they could say of a white man?

3. What did Penn begin to do in the latter part of 1682? What did he call his city? What does Philadelphia mean? What of its progress? What was the population of the colony in three years? How did Penn's sons rule the colony after his death? How long did this government last?

CHAPTER XII.

SETTLEMENT OF NORTH CAROLINA.



SEAL OF NORTH CAROLINA.

1. THE coast of the Carolinas was first explored by the French in 1563. They called the country Carolina, in honor of Charles IX., King of France. There is very little resemblance in sound between Charles and Carolina; but Carolus is the Latin name for Charles, and it is from Carolus that Carolina is derived. The French settlements in Carolina were soon abandoned.

2. We have already seen that Sir Walter Raleigh made an attempt to found a colony near the mouth of the Roanoke River in 1585; but this first attempt of the English to settle within the present limits of the United States was a failure, and it was many years before another attempt was made to colonize this region.

3. Between the years 1640 and 1643 numbers of persons from Virginia settled the neighboring portions of North Carolina.

1. By whom and when was the coast of the Carolinas first explored? What did they call the country? What of the French settlements in Carolina?

2. What can you say of Sir Walter Raleigh's attempt to make a settlement near the mouth of the Roanoke River in 1585?

3. What happened between the years 1640 and 1643? Who claimed jurisdiction over the settlements? Whom did he appoint governor? What did he call the colony?

Governor Berkeley, of Virginia, claimed jurisdiction over these settlements, and appointed William Drummond governor. He called the colony Albemarle, in honor of the Duke of Albemarle.

4. In 1663, Charles II., King of England, conveyed the whole country between the thirtieth and thirty-sixth degrees of north latitude to eight noblemen, who were joint proprietors, with power to settle and govern. Under this charter a colony was planted near the mouth of the Cape Fear River, to which the name of Clarendon was given, and Sir John Yeamans was appointed governor. There were thus established in the limits of



SETTLERS FLEEING FROM THE INDIANS.

North Carolina two separate colonies, Albemarle and Clarendon, each having its own governor. This arrangement occasioned trouble, and the two colonies were, in 1670, united under one government, with the name of North Carolina.

5. From 1670 to 1695 the progress of the colony was slow,

4. What did King Charles II., of England, do in 1663? What was done under this charter? When were the two colonies united, and under what name?

5. What of the state of affairs between 1670 and 1695? When John Arch-

owing to bad government and frequent revolts. In 1695, John Archdale, a Quaker, became governor, and succeeded in restoring comparative quiet. In 1705, Thomas Carey was appointed governor, but soon after Edward Hyde was appointed in his place, whereupon Carey incited a rebellion, which was not entirely suppressed until 1711.

6. In 1712 the Tuscarora and Coree Indians, having formed a conspiracy to destroy the whites, took the settlers by surprise, and killed a great number of men, women, and children. The militia of the country assembled as soon as possible, and kept the Indians in check until assistance could be obtained from South Carolina, when the savages were completely defeated.

7. The progress of North Carolina was so slow that for forty-one years the increase in population amounted to only six hundred. At length, the advantages of the soil and climate having become known, immigrants from other countries rapidly poured in, and by 1775 the population of the colony was one hundred and eighty-five thousand.

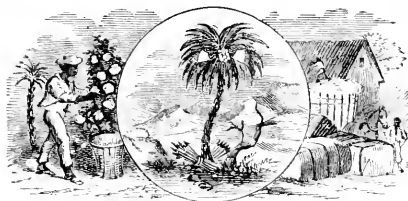
dale was appointed governor, in 1695, what did he succeed in doing? Who was appointed governor in 1705? When Edward Hyde was appointed in his place, what did Carey do?

6. Give an account of the Indian war.

7. Describe the progress of North Carolina.

CHAPTER XIII.

SETTLEMENT OF SOUTH CAROLINA.



SEAL OF SOUTH CAROLINA.

1. THE first English settlement in South Carolina was made at Port Royal, in 1670, but the next year the settlers removed to the western bank of the Ashley River, and commenced building a town. Finding that the site was not well chosen they removed to Oyster Point, formed by the junction of the Ashley and Cooper Rivers, and there laid the foundations of the city of Charleston. This was in 1680.

2. The first governor of South Carolina was William Sayle, who came over with the first settlers in 1670, but died soon after his arrival, and was succeeded by Joseph West. Negro slavery was introduced into South Carolina by Sir John Yeamans, who came, in 1671, from Barbadoes with fifty families and nearly two hundred slaves. Soon after his arrival he succeeded Joseph West, and continued to act as governor until 1674, when Joseph West again became governor, and held the office for eight years. It

1. Mention the first English settlements in South Carolina. When were the foundations of the city of Charleston laid?

2. Who were the first governors? By whom was negro slavery introduced into South Carolina? During whose administration was Charleston founded?

was during West's second term as governor that the city of Charleston was founded.

3. Between the years 1682 and 1686 there were no less than five governors over South Carolina. In 1686 the Spaniards laid waste the settlements of Port Royal. Joseph Martin, who was at that time governor, determined to retaliate by attacking the Spanish settlement of St. Augustine, in Florida, but was prevented from carrying out his plan by the proprietors, who, under the grant from Charles II., had control of both North and South Carolina. During the year 1686 large numbers of Protestant refugees from France settled in South Carolina.

4. Between 1686 and 1695 the government of South Carolina was subject to frequent change, and for a part of the time the colony was in a very disturbed state. In 1695, John Archdale, a Quaker, was appointed governor. He was at the same time governor of North Carolina. The following year he was succeeded by Joseph Blake.

5. In 1702 war broke out between England and Spain, and the English settlers of Carolina became involved in hostilities with the Spaniards of Florida. James Moore, who was then governor of South Carolina, fitted out an expedition of twelve hundred colonists and friendly Indians, and sailed against St. Augustine, but was unable to take the fort at that place, and was obliged to raise the siege. In 1705, Governor Moore made an expedition against the Appalachee Indians beyond the Savannah, burned their towns and villages, killed several hundred of them, and obliged the others to submit to the English government. The next year a fleet of French and Spanish vessels appeared before Charleston, but they were easily repulsed.

3. How many governors were there between 1682 and 1686? Give an account of troubles with Spain. Who settled in South Carolina in 1686?

4. What can you say of the condition of things between 1686 and 1695? Who became governor in 1695? Who succeeded him?

5. What war broke out in 1702? Give an account of Governor Moore's expedition against the Spaniards in Florida. Give an account of his expedi-

6. In 1712 South Carolina became involved in a war with the Tuscarora and Coree Indians, who, as was mentioned in the last chapter, had made an attack upon the settlers of North Carolina. Charles Craven, at that time governor of South Carolina, sent to the assistance of the North Carolinians a force of six hundred militia and nearly four hundred friendly Indians, under the command of Colonel Barnwell. After a fatiguing march of two hundred miles through the wilderness Barnwell's command came up with the Indians, and inflicted upon them a bloody defeat, driving them to their breastworks, where the Indians were again defeated with great slaughter. The loss of the Tuscaroras was estimated at nearly one thousand, while the loss in Barnwell's command was five white men killed and several wounded, besides thirty-six friendly Indians killed and between sixty and seventy wounded. The Tuscaroras were forced to submit for a while, but soon after renewed the war. They were again terribly defeated by Colonel James Moore, after which the survivors abandoned their country, and, going to the North, joined the confederacy of the Five Nations.

CHAPTER XIV.

AFFAIRS IN SEVERAL COLONIES.

Virginia.

1. DURING the whole period of the civil war which broke out in England in 1642, between the king, Charles I., and the Parliament, Virginia sided with the king, and after the execution of Charles, in 1649, the Virginians acknowledged his young son as

tion against the Appalachee Indians. What was the result of an attack on Charleston by the French and Spanish fleets?

6. What war broke out in 1712? Give an account of Barnwell's expedition. What else of the Tuscaroras?

1. During the civil war in England between King Charles I. and his Par-

their sovereign. Commissioners were sent by the Parliament to reduce the colony to submission. Governor Berkeley proposed resistance, but was not sustained by his council. The colony submitted to the government of Cromwell on the condition that the Virginians should enjoy such "freedoms and privileges as belong to the free-born people of England." The commissioners, Bennet, Clayborne, and Curtis, in concert with the House of Burgesses, or Virginia Assembly, organized a provisional government for the colony. Bennet, a Puritan merchant, was elected governor. The right of election to all offices was declared to be in the House of Burgesses, and after the death of Cromwell they exercised this right by replacing Sir William Berkeley as governor in 1660. Charles, who was then in exile, was invited to come over and be king of Virginia. From this incident in her history Virginia received the name of "The Old Dominion." Soon after this Charles II. was restored to the throne of England.

2. In 1660 certain laws called "Navigation Acts" were passed by the English Parliament. The object of these laws was to give England complete control of the trade of the colonies. The colonies were not allowed to send their products anywhere but to England, or buy goods anywhere but in England, or transport any merchandise in anything but English vessels. By way of compensation for these severe restrictions the colonies were allowed the exclusive privilege of supplying England with tobacco, but this privilege did not compensate for the burdens imposed by the

liament, which broke out in 1642, what did the Virginians do? What did they do after the execution of the king? What was done by the Parliament? On what condition did the colony submit? What did the commissioners do in concert with the House of Burgesses? Who was elected governor? Where was the right of election to all offices declared to be? How did the House of Burgesses exercise this right after the death of Cromwell? What invitation was extended to Charles II.? What name did Virginia receive on account of her loyalty?

2. What laws were passed by the English Parliament in 1660? What was the object of these laws? Give a full account of these laws. Was Virginia's petition for relief granted?

Navigation Acts, and the discontent of the people was general. Virginia petitioned for relief, but in vain.

3. The discontent was increased by grants of land made by the king to his favorites, which infringed on the rights of the Virginians. A war which broke out with the Susquehanna Indians in 1675 added to the distress and increased the discontent of the people. Sir William Berkeley, the governor, who had hitherto been quite popular with all classes, was accused of "wanting honesty to resist the aggression of the mother-country, and courage to repel the Indians." These charges were chiefly made by Nathaniel Bacon, an intelligent and ambitious young lawyer, who had emigrated to Virginia in 1673. Bacon was chosen their leader by the people, who, in a tumultuous assembly, elected him general. Bacon therefore applied to the governor for a commission, and being refused, raised a rebellion, during the course of which Jamestown was burned, and many depredations were committed. The governor's forces were defeated or dispersed, and troops were sent out from England to his assistance. But the rebellion was suddenly ended by the death of Bacon. Most of his followers were captured, and twenty were executed. Berkeley was denounced for his severity, and returned to England to answer charges against him. He died soon after his arrival without seeing the king. "The old fool," said the king, "has taken away more lives in that naked country than I for the murder of my father."

4. During the reign of William and Mary in England Virginia prospered greatly. Under the administration of Francis Nicholson a college was founded, which was named the College of William and Mary. Nicholson transferred the seat of government to Williamsburg, which he laid out in the shape of the letter W.

3. How was the discontent increased? What added to the distress? Of what was Sir William Berkeley accused? Give an account of Bacon's rebellion. How many of his followers were executed? What of Berkeley in England? What did the king say of him?

4. What of affairs in Virginia during the reign of William and Mary?

5. In 1714, under the leadership of Governor Spottswood, the mountains of Virginia were crossed, and the beautiful valleys beyond were made known. On his return, Governor Spottswood presented each of the companions of his journey with a golden horseshoe as a memento of the expedition.

Maryland.

6. At the close of the civil war in England, which has already been mentioned in the first paragraph of this chapter, discord reigned in Maryland on account of the contests between the Puritans and Catholics. These were brought about in the following manner: Bennet and Clayborne, as commissioners of the Parliament, altered the government, and intrusted it to a board of ten. Many Puritans had immigrated to the province, and when, in 1654, they got control of the new Assembly, they disfranchised the Catholics. This led to civil war, which lasted until 1658, when a compromise was effected, and Fendall, the proprietary governor, was acknowledged. After the death of Cromwell the representatives of Maryland asserted the supreme authority of the people and the allegiance of their colony to King Charles II. On the re-establishment of royal authority in England the rights of Lord Baltimore were confirmed. In 1662 Charles Calvert was sent out as governor by his father, and under his wise rule the colony flourished.

7. Maryland was made a royal province in 1691, during the reign of William and Mary, and the rights of Lord Baltimore

5. Give an account of Governor Spottswood's expedition in 1714. What did he do on his return?

6. What caused discord in Maryland just after the close of the civil war in England? How were these brought about? How long did the civil war in Maryland last? What did the representatives of Maryland do after the death of Cromwell? What happened on the re-establishment of the royal authority in England? What of the rule of Charles Calvert?

7. When was Maryland made a royal province? When was the proprietary government restored? How long did it continue?

were annulled. These rights were restored to the fourth Lord Baltimore in 1715, and the proprietary government continued until the Revolution.

New England Colonies and New York.

8. In 1675 the New England colonies became involved in a war with the Indians. This war is known as King Philip's War. Philip was son and successor of Massasoit, who had been the life-long friend of the English, but Philip did not share his father's friendly feelings. He was jealous of the increasing power of the whites, and was also actuated by a desire to avenge the death of his brother and others of his tribe, who had been executed by the English for the murder of a Christian Indian who had told the colonists that Philip was conspiring against them.

9. Philip succeeded in uniting the Narragansets and the Nipmucks with his own tribe, the Wampanoags, in a conspiracy for the extermination of all the New England settlements. The war began by an attack upon Swanzy, in Plymouth. Many of the towns were surprised and burned and their inhabitants slaughtered. The town of Hadley, surprised while the inhabitants were at church, was saved by the sudden appearance of a venerable stranger, who rallied the whites and led them to victory. Immediately after the fight he disappeared. At first the people thought he was an angel who had been sent for their deliverance, but it was afterwards ascertained that he was General Goffe, one of the judges who had condemned Charles I., and had fled from England on the restoration of his son, Charles II., to the throne.

10. After spreading terror through the towns and villages of New England, Philip was defeated in a furious attack on Hatfield,

8. In what war did the New England colonies become involved in 1675? Who was Philip? What was the cause of his hostility to the whites?

9. What tribes did Philip succeed in uniting against the whites? How did the war begin? Give an account of the attack on the town of Hadley and of the stranger who came to its rescue.

10. What did Philip do after his defeat at Hatfield? Give an account of

and fled into Rhode Island to the Narragansets, who gave him shelter. In December, 1675, fifteen hundred men invaded the territory of the Narragansets. The Indians had a fort in an almost inaccessible swamp, and had collected there three thousand warriors. Here the whites attacked them, and after a desperate battle the Indians were utterly defeated, with the loss of one thousand men. This was a crushing blow to the Indians, for in addition to the great number slain, all their wigwams and their winter's supply of provisions were destroyed. Canonechet, the chief of the Narragansets, was captured, and soon after put to death because he refused to make peace. Philip, however, escaped, and in the spring the war was renewed by him, and desolation carried to within twenty miles of Boston.

11. But all Philip's desperate efforts were of no avail. At last, defeated and hunted from place to place, he fled to his old haunts, near Mount Hope, in Rhode Island. To add to his distress, his wife and son were captured. A few days after (August, 1676), he was surprised by his enemies in a swamp, to which he had fled for refuge, and was shot by a faithless follower who had deserted to the whites. His head was cut off and sent to Plymouth, and there exposed on a gibbet. Philip's son, who was only nine years of age, was taken to Boston, where he was condemned by the authorities to be sold as a slave in the Bermudas. This was an act of great barbarity, and was an exhibition of the grossest ingratitude; for though Philip had done the colonists much harm, yet Massasoit, the grandfather of the boy, had befriended and sheltered the settlers at Plymouth when they were few and feeble.

12. During this war six hundred of the inhabitants had been

the battle at the Indian fort. What can you say of this blow? What can you say of Canonechet? What of Philip?

11. To what place did Philip flee after several defeats? What added to his distress? Give an account of his death. What was done with Philip's son? What do you think of this act?

12. Mention the loss to life and property during King Philip's War. What of the New England Indians? How long did peace last?

slain, twelve or thirteen towns had been destroyed, a heavy debt had been contracted, and the wealth of New England had been greatly diminished. But the New England Indians were completely subdued. From the close of King Philip's War in 1676 until 1688 the New England colonies enjoyed repose. In 1688 began the first of a series of wars between England and France, in which their respective colonies in America became involved. But we will treat of these wars in a subsequent chapter.

13. In 1684, Colonel Dongan, governor of New York, in conjunction with Lord Effingham, governor of Virginia, made a treaty with the powerful Indian confederacy known as the Five Nations. This treaty embraced all the English settlements and all the Indian tribes in alliance with the Five Nations. It was long and faithfully adhered to, and was of great advantage to the English, for the friendship of the Five Nations and their allies proved a barrier against the encroachments of the French.

14. In 1684 the New England Confederation, which had been formed in 1643, ceased to exist, for Charles II. annulled the charters of all the New England colonies. James II., who came to the throne of England in 1685, appointed Joseph Dudley to take charge of the government of Massachusetts, Maine, Plymouth, Rhode Island, and Connecticut. He was superseded in 1686 by Sir Edmund Andros, and New York and New Jersey were added to the jurisdiction of the New England colonies. Andros was an infamous tyrant and was universally detested. He broke up the governments of the various New England colonies, beginning with Massachusetts and Rhode Island.

15. In 1687, he went to Hartford, where the Assembly was

13. What happened in New York in 1684? What did this treaty embrace? How was it of advantage to the English?

14. What of the New England Confederation in 1684? Who was appointed by James II., in 1685, to take charge of the government of Massachusetts, Maine, Plymouth, Rhode Island, and Connecticut? What happened in 1686? What of Andros? What governments did he break up?

15. Give an account of the preservation of the charter of Connecticut. When were their charters restored to the New England colonies?

in session, and demanded the charter of Connecticut. The demand was evaded until night. After the candles were lighted, the charter was brought in and laid upon the table. Before Andros could take it up the lights were suddenly put out, and when the candles were relighted the charter was gone. One of the patriots had carried it off. It was concealed for a time in the hollow of an oak, which for more than a century was pointed out as the Charter Oak. After the expulsion of James II. from the throne of England and the accession of William and Mary Andros was removed from power, and their charters were restored to the New England colonies.

16. By a new charter granted in 1691 the colonies of Plymouth and Massachusetts were made one, under the name of Massachusetts. The district of Maine was at the same time added to the jurisdiction of Massachusetts.

17. In 1692 there broke out in Salem, Massachusetts, a wonderful delusion called the Salem Witchcraft. After much innocent blood had been shed the people awoke to reason, and many who were under sentence were liberated.

South Carolina.

18. In 1715 South Carolina became involved in a war with the Yemassee, a strong and warlike tribe on the southwestern border of the colony, next to the Savannah River. They were jealous of the whites, and determined to destroy them. They succeeded in uniting with them in this purpose all the tribes of Indians from Cape Fear, in North Carolina, to Florida.

19. Hostilities commenced by an attack upon Pocotaligo, in which ninety persons were killed. The people of Port Royal

16. When were the colonies of Plymouth and Massachusetts united? What district was added to the jurisdiction of Massachusetts?

17. Give an account of the Salem Witchcraft delusion.

18. In what war did South Carolina become involved in 1715? What reason prompted the Yemassee to begin the war? What did they succeed in doing?

19. How did hostilities commence? How did the people of Port Royal

were warned in time, and made their escape to Charleston by means of a vessel that happened to be in the harbor. Several persons living in the country who were not in time to embark were either killed or captured. The war was waged even towards the borders of North Carolina, and fears were entertained for the safety of Charleston itself. Governor Craven ordered out every man under arms, and even armed some of the most trusty of the slaves. Craven himself marched directly against the enemy, at the head of two hundred and forty men, and ordered Colonel Mackey to raise as large a force as possible and proceed by water to meet him at Yemassee town. The intended junction of forces did not take place, but the governor encountered the enemy, numbering five hundred, on the Combahee River, and defeated them, while Mackey captured an Indian town and also a fort, and inflicted much damage on the savages.

20. Though the Indians were checked in these two battles, they met with some successes on the northern borders of the colony. They succeeded in leading Captain Thomas Barker, at the head of ninety men, into an ambush, where he and several of his men were slain. They also attacked a force of seventy white men and forty negroes, who had thrown up a breastwork on one of the plantations and resolved to defend themselves. After failing in several assaults on this small field-work, the savages pretended to treat for peace, and when the garrison were thus thrown off their guard, made a sudden and unexpected attack, captured the breastwork, and put most of its defenders to death. Shortly after, Captain Chicken, of the Goose Creek militia, attacked the Indians, and in a desperate fight, in which he proved himself to be true game, defeated and drove them back, thus making the province secure on the north.

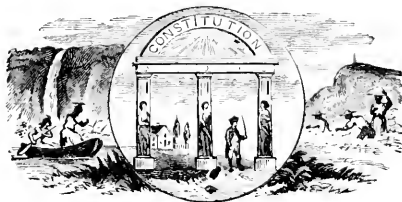
escape? What became of several persons living in the country? What was the extent of the war? What did Governor Craven do? What of the battle between his forces and the enemy? What did Colonel Mackey accomplish?

20. Where did the Indians meet with some success? Give an account of the attack on Captain Barker, and on the party who had thrown up fortifications on one of the plantations. What did Captain Chicken do shortly after?

21. Meanwhile, the whole country was deserted to within twenty miles of Charleston, and many feared the destruction of the province, for the enemy numbered between eight and ten thousand warriors, while South Carolina was able to bring into the field only about twelve hundred men capable of bearing arms. In this emergency Governor Craven sent an agent to New England to purchase arms, and applied to Virginia for aid. At the same time he invaded the enemy's country. Lieutenant-General James Moore and Colonels John Barnwell and Alexander Mackey were chosen to lead the Carolina troops. At length the Indians were completely defeated and driven beyond the Savannah River. The Yemassee after their complete defeat took up their abode in Florida, and never again attempted to renew the war. South Carolina now enjoyed a long interval of repose.

CHAPTER XV.

SETTLEMENT OF GEORGIA.



SEAL OF GEORGIA.

1. A CHARTER for the establishment of the colony of Georgia was obtained from George II., King of England, in June, 1732. At first it embraced a territory between the Savannah and the

21. What of the whole country in the mean while? Why did many fear the destruction of the province? What did Governor Craven do in this emergency? Who were chosen to lead the Carolina troops? What was the result of the war? What did the Yemassee do after their defeat?

Altamaha Rivers, but after the cession of the Spanish possessions of East and West Florida to England by the treaty of 1763, the boundaries of Georgia were extended to the Mississippi River on the west, and on the south to latitude 31° and the St. Mary's River, thus embracing not only the present State of Georgia, but also most of what now constitutes the States of Alabama and Mississippi. The Georgia of Oglethorpe's time was the district between the Savannah and Altamaha Rivers.

2. The object of the founders of Georgia was to establish a barrier against the hostile encroachments of the Spaniards on the province of South Carolina, and at the same time to provide a home for the poor of Great Britain, and a place of refuge for the Salzburgers and other persecuted sects of the Continent of Europe.

3. James Edward Oglethorpe, a man of great talent and benevolence, and of considerable military experience, was selected by the trustees to take charge of the affairs of the new colony, and in November, 1732, he set sail from England with one hundred and sixteen emigrants. In January, 1733, after a voyage of nearly two months, they arrived in the harbor of Charleston, where they were received with the greatest kindness by the Carolinians and their governor, Robert Johnson. The Carolinians furnished them with provisions and stock, and also with vessels to convey additional supplies to the Savannah River. They also sent along a company of soldiers to protect them against the Indians until they could build houses and fortifications.

4. After leaving Charleston the new settlers went to Beaufort,

1. When was a charter obtained from George II. for the establishment of the colony of Georgia? What did it embrace at first? How were the boundaries of Georgia afterwards extended? What was the Georgia of Oglethorpe's time?

2. State in full the object of the founders of Georgia.

3. Who was selected to take charge of the affairs of the new colony? When did he set sail from England? Who accompanied him? When did they reach Charleston? How were they received? With what did the Carolinians furnish them? What did they send along with them?

4. Where did the new settlers go after leaving Charleston? What did Ogle-

in South Carolina. Here Oglethorpe left the party and ascended the Savannah until he came to Yamacraw Bluff, which spot he selected for his settlement. On the 1st of February the colonists arrived, and the first house was commenced on the 9th. Oglethorpe called the new town "Savannah," from the name of the river on whose banks it was situated.

5. Tomochichi, chief of the Yamacraws, a tribe of Indians who lived near by, immediately sought an alliance with Oglethorpe, who made a treaty with him. The chief presented Oglethorpe with a buffalo robe, on the inside of which were painted the head and feathers of an eagle, and said, "The feathers of the eagle are soft and signify love; the buffalo skin is warm and is the emblem of protection. Therefore love and protect our little families." Oglethorpe also made treaties with the Creeks, the Muscogeas, and even with the Cherokees of the mountains and the Choctaws on the borders of the Gulf of Mexico.

6. In March, 1734, the colony was strengthened by the arrival of seventy-eight Salzburger from Germany, who had been driven from their homes by the most terrible persecutions. They settled in a portion of Georgia now known as Effingham County, at a place which they called Ebenezer, or the "Stone of Help," expressing by this name their gratitude to God for their final deliverance from all their enemies.

7. Oglethorpe also established settlements in other portions of Georgia. A company of Scotch Highlanders was located at Darien, a company of immigrants was settled at Frederica, on St. Simon's Island, and trading-posts were established at Augusta. In February, 1736, two hundred immigrants came over to Georgia, among

thorpe do here? When did the colonists arrive at Yamacraw Bluff? What did Oglethorpe call his new town?

5. Relate the interview between Tomochichi and Oglethorpe. With what other Indians did Oglethorpe make treaties?

6. How was the colony strengthened in March, 1734? Where did these Salzburger settle? Why did they call their settlement Ebenezer?

7. In what other portions of Georgia did Oglethorpe establish settlements? What happened in February, 1736? For what did the two Wesleys come?

whom were the celebrated founders of Methodism, John and Charles Wesley, who came to preach the gospel to the Indians and also to the settlers. In 1738 there came to Georgia another eminent minister, afterwards celebrated in the great Methodist movement, the Rev. George Whitefield, who resided in the colony several years, and during his stay founded the Orphan House at Bethesda, a few miles from Savannah.

8. The Spaniards, who had established their first permanent settlement in Florida, in 1565, at St. Augustine, claimed the territory of Georgia as their own, and regarded its colonization by the English as an intrusion upon their rights. They therefore resolved to expel the English from Georgia. In 1737, Oglethorpe, anticipating a war with Spain, went to England, where he raised a regiment of six hundred men for the defence of the colony. He was now appointed commander-in-chief of all the militia forces of South Carolina and Georgia.

9. On the breaking out of the war in 1739, Oglethorpe invaded Florida at the head of two thousand men, consisting of his own regiment and the rest Carolinians and friendly Indians. Oglethorpe, however, found the Spanish fortifications at St. Augustine too strong for his small army, and returned to Georgia without accomplishing anything. In 1742 the Spaniards invaded Georgia with a land and naval force of three thousand men. In this emergency Oglethorpe was obliged to rely upon his own resources, for the Carolinians, provoked at his former failure, would give him no assistance. Accordingly, he prepared to make the best possible defence with the forces at his command, numbering barely eight hundred men.

10. No general engagement occurred, however, though a force

Who came over in 1738? What did Whitefield do during his stay in the colony?

8. What can you say of the Spaniards? What of Oglethorpe?

9. What of Oglethorpe's expedition in 1739? What did the Spaniards do in 1742? What was Oglethorpe obliged to do? How large was the force under his command?

10. Give an account of the battle of Bloody Marsh? How was Oglethorpe's

of three hundred Spaniards was defeated on St. Simon's Island by a far inferior force of English troops. In this affair, known as the battle of the Bloody Marsh, the Spaniards lost two-thirds of the number engaged. Oglethorpe now resolved to attack the Spaniards at night, but his plan was thwarted by a French soldier of his party, who, when they had come near the Spanish camp, fired off his musket and ran into the enemy's lines. Oglethorpe knew that this deserter would make known to the Spaniards the weakness of his force. He therefore resorted to a stratagem to deceive the enemy. He wrote a letter to the deserter asking him to urge the Spaniards to make an immediate attack upon Frederica, and if they would not do that, to persuade them to remain where they were three days longer, as he expected within that time six British men-of-war, with two thousand troops, from South Carolina. This letter was intrusted to a Spanish prisoner, who promised to deliver it to the deserter, but the prisoner delivered it, as Oglethorpe hoped he would, to the Spanish commander, who put the deserter in irons, considering him a spy. While the Spanish general was deliberating what was best to be done three vessels did appear in sight, which were sent, with troops on board, to the assistance of Oglethorpe by the governor of South Carolina. The Spaniards being fully convinced now that the letter was no stratagem, and that this was the very force mentioned in the letter, became panic-stricken, and, burning their fort, fled in such haste that they left behind their military stores and some of their artillery.

11. In 1743, Oglethorpe returned to England, and a civil government was substituted for the military government which had previously prevailed. In 1747 the laws against the introduction of negroes into Georgia were repealed.

plan for attacking the Spanish thwarted? Relate Oglethorpe's stratagem for deceiving the enemy. When the Spanish commander got hold of Oglethorpe's letter, what did he do with the deserter? What convinced the Spaniards that the letter was no stratagem? What did they then do?

11. After Oglethorpe returned to England in 1743, what happened? When was slavery introduced into Georgia?

12. In the latter part of 1747 the colony was threatened with a great danger. A man named Bosomworth, who had been a chaplain in Oglethorpe's regiment, had married an Indian squaw named Mary, who claimed to be queen of the Creeks. Bosomworth, who was an unscrupulous man, set up a claim in behalf of his wife to all the islands and lands reserved by the Indians in their first treaty with Oglethorpe. In support of this claim Bosomworth and Mary marched at the head of a large Indian force upon Savannah, and threatened to exterminate the colonists unless their demands were complied with. But the firmness of the authorities saved the colony, and the Indians, after being deprived of their leaders, were forced into submission.

13. In 1752 the trustees to whom the charter for the establishment of the colony of Georgia had been granted surrendered their rights under it to the crown, and Georgia became a royal province. In 1754, Captain John Reynolds, of the Royal Navy, was appointed governor. The government of the colony was conferred on a legislature, in conjunction with the governor and his council. The legislature consisted of delegates elected by the people, but the governor and his council were appointed by the king. Under the royal government, which thus supplanted that of the trustees, Georgia began to flourish and to increase rapidly in population and importance.

12. Give an account of the troubles with the Creeks led by Bosomworth and Mary.

13. What did the trustees do in 1752? Who was appointed governor in 1754? On whom was the government of the colony conferred? Of what did the legislature consist? By whom were the governor and his council appointed? What else can you say of Georgia?

CHAPTER XVI.

THE FRENCH WARS IN AMERICA.

King William's War.

1. THE rival claims of the French and English in America were the cause of a series of wars, the first of which took place long before the events recorded in the last chapter. The first of these wars broke out in 1689, and was called King William's War.

2. The war began in Europe between England and France, and extended to their respective colonies in America. The white population of all the French possessions in America at this time was only twelve thousand, not more than one-twentieth of that of the English settlements, but the French had a great number of Indian allies. The English settlers would have suffered far more from the attacks of the Indians than they did, if it had not been for the friendship of the powerful Indian confederacy known as the Five Nations, which was secured by the treaty made with them in New York in 1684. The same year that this treaty was made with the English, De La Barre, the French governor of Canada, invaded the territory of the Five Nations with seventeen hundred men, but his expedition was a complete failure. His successor, De Nouville, led a still larger army against the

1. To what did the rival claims of the French and English in America lead? When did the first of these wars break out, and what was it called?

2. Where did the war begin? Give the comparative population of the French and English possessions in America at this time. What was a great assistance to the English during these wars? What can you say of the expedition of De la Barre against the Five Nations? What of De Nouville, his successor? How did the Indians retaliate? What did Count Frontenac, the successor of De Nouville, do? What did he succeed in getting the Five Nations to do?

Five Nations, but was drawn into an ambuscade, and defeated with heavy loss. The Indians attacked the French settlements in Canada, and inflicted great damage on them. Count Frontenac, a skilful French officer, who succeeded De Nouville, pursued a very different policy towards the Five Nations, and did all that he could to gain their good will; and though he could not persuade them to break their treaty with the English and become his allies, he did succeed in getting them to promise to remain neutral in the war which broke out in 1689 between the French and English in America.

3. The war in America was begun by the Eastern Indians, who were allies of the French. Their first attacks were on the English settlements in New Hampshire and Maine. They destroyed Dover, in New Hampshire, and carried off many of the inhabitants to Canada as prisoners of war. They also captured Fort Pemaquid, and massacred most of the inhabitants living along Salmon Falls River and Casco Bay, in Maine. The settlements in New York were next attacked. On the night of the 8th of February, 1690, a large party of French and Indians from Montreal surprised the village of *Schenectady*; sixty persons were massacred, twenty-seven were captured, some escaped, and, half-clad, made their way through a blinding snow-storm to Albany, sixteen miles distant, while many others who attempted to do the same thing perished on the way. A party of young men and Mohawk Indians set out from Albany in pursuit of the enemy, and succeeded in killing and capturing twenty-five of them.

4. An army was raised in New York and Connecticut for the purpose of avenging these and other atrocities, and marched, under the command of General Winthrop, against Montreal, while a fleet and army from Boston, commanded by Sir William Phips, moved against Quebec. Both expeditions failed to accomplish

3. How did the war in America begin? Where were their first attacks? What did they do in New Hampshire and Maine? Describe the attack on Schenectady, in New York.

4. What two expeditions were raised? What of these expeditions? What

their object, though the force under Phipps did capture Port Royal, in Acadia. Near the close of 1691, Major Schuyler, who had great influence among the Indians of the Five Nations, persuaded them to join him in an attack on the French settlements. He accordingly set out with a large body of colonial and Indian forces, but, after inflicting considerable damage on the French, was compelled to retreat. The colonies of New England and New York continued to suffer from the attacks of the French and Indians until 1697.

5. In 1697 the French and their Indian allies attacked Haverhill, in Massachusetts, and killed or captured forty persons. One thrilling incident connected with the attack on Haverhill should not be omitted. A Mr. Dustin was at work in his field, and learning of the approach of the Indians, ran to his house and told his seven little children to run. His wife, who was sick in bed, urged him to save the children and leave her, as she could not possibly go with him. He did so; and by riding behind the children, who ran ahead, he succeeded in keeping the Indians in check with his gun until they reached a place of safety. The Indians went to the house, forced Mrs. Dustin to rise from her sick-bed, with an infant in her arms, and accompany them. Finding that she could not keep up, they seized the infant and murdered it before the mother's eyes. Mrs. Dustin and the nurse, who had been captured with her, were forced along until they reached an island in the Merrimac, a few miles above Concord. Mrs. Dustin learning that she was to be taken many miles farther, resolved to make her escape. So one night when the Indians were asleep she woke the nurse and a white boy, who was also a prisoner, and each taking a tomahawk from one of the sleeping savages, with their own hands they slew ten stalwart warriors, and, seizing on the canoe that had brought them thither, descended the Merrimac,

place did the expedition under Phipps capture? Give an account of Major Schuyler's expedition.

5. What happened in 1697 at Haverhill, in Massachusetts? Relate the adventures of the Dustin family.

and were soon safe among the friends who had mourned them as lost. A granite monument erected on the spot in Boscawen, New Hampshire, commemorates this daring deed of the heroic Hannah Dustin.

6. King William's War was ended in 1697 by the peace signed at Ryswick, in Holland. By this treaty it was agreed that each side should have the same territory as before the war.

Queen Anne's War.

7. In 1702 the peace of Ryswick was broken by a war between England on the one side and France and Spain on the other. The war soon involved the colonies in America, where it was known as Queen Anne's War. The brunt of this war was borne by the colonies of New England. New York was for the most part spared, because the French had made a treaty with the Iroquois, or Five Nations, and refrained from invading their territory. In New Hampshire and Massachusetts the war was characterized by the usual Indian barbarities. War was also carried on between the English of South Carolina and the Spaniards of Florida.

8. In the first year of the war, as has already been mentioned in the chapter on South Carolina, Governor Moore led an unsuccessful expedition against St. Augustine, in Florida. He afterwards attacked and subdued the Indian allies of Spain living near Appalachee Bay. In 1706 an attack on Charleston by the French and Spanish fleets was repulsed. The real horrors of war were confined almost entirely to the New England colonies. In February, 1704, *Deerfield*, in Massachusetts, was surprised just before dawn, after the sentinels had retired from their posts. The mas-

6. When was King William's war ended? What was agreed by the treaty?

7. What happened in 1702? What was this war called in America? By whom was the brunt of the war borne? Why did New York for the most part escape? How was the war in New Hampshire and Massachusetts characterized? Between whom was the war carried on in the South?

8. What of Moore's expeditions? What happened in 1706? Where were the real horrors of the war confined? Describe the attack on Deerfield.

sacre was very much like that at Schenectady, New York, which occurred during King William's War. At the latter place the gate of the palisade surrounding the town was accidentally left open, and the Indians entered in that way. At Deerfield the savages got into the palisades by climbing up the snow-drifts, which reached to their tops, and before the alarm could be given were murdering and scalping men, women, and children. All that escaped immediate death were carried as captives to Canada.

9. In 1707 Massachusetts, Rhode Island, and New Hampshire fitted out an expedition against Port Royal, in Acadia. This expedition was a failure, but in 1710 another attempt was crowned with success. *Port Royal* was taken, and a large part of Acadia became a British province, under the name of Nova Scotia, which means New Scotland. An attempt against Montreal and Quebec in 1711 resulted in failure. Queen Anne's War was ended in 1713 by the treaty of Utrecht. The only gain to England was the conquest of Acadia, or Nova Scotia.

10. Queen Anne's War had interrupted French progress in the West, but during the peace which followed French colonization was revived. In 1718 the city of New Orleans was founded and made the capital of all Louisiana, as the vast French possessions west of the Mississippi were called. Mobile, now the chief city of Alabama, had been founded in 1702, and was the capital of Louisiana until the founding of New Orleans. French progress in the valley of the Mississippi was slow. But in the Northwest the French were firmly establishing their power. They built Fort Niagara in 1728, Crown Point in 1731, and soon after established a post at Vincennes. By the middle of the century they had control of all the water-routes from the Great Lakes to the Gulf

9. What of the expedition against Port Royal? What happened in 1710? How did the attempt in 1711 against Montreal and Quebec result? When and how was Queen Anne's War ended? What was the only gain to England?

10. What had Queen Anne's War interrupted? What happened in 1718? What city had previously been the capital of Louisiana? What of French progress in the valley of the Mississippi? How were they establishing their

of Mexico. They had more than sixty military stations from Lake Ontario down the Illinois, Wabash, and Maumee Rivers to the Mississippi, and then down that river to New Orleans. The grand design of France was to found a mighty empire in the country watered by the St. Lawrence, the Great Lakes, and the Mississippi.

King George's War.

11. The progress of the French was interrupted by the outbreak of King George's War in 1744. This war, like both the others, began between the English and French in Europe, and extended to their colonies in America. The most important event of this war was the capture of *Louisburg*, on Cape Breton Island. It was captured June 17, 1745, by thirty-two hundred New Englanders, led by General Pepperell, a native of Maine, assisted by a British fleet, commanded by Admiral Warren. The French made two attempts to reconquer Cape Breton, but failed. King George's War was closed in 1748 by the treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle (āks-la-sha-pel). It was agreed that each party should restore all places taken. Accordingly, Louisburg and Cape Breton were restored to France.

The French and Indian War.

12. The peace which followed was of short duration, as might have been expected, for the boundaries of the French and English in America had never been definitely settled, and besides, each nation aimed at the absolute dominion of all North America. The three previous wars grew out of disputes that originated in Europe, but the last and greatest of the wars between France and

power in the Northwest? Of what had they control by the middle of the century? What of their military stations? What was the grand design of France?

11. What war broke out in 1744? Relate the leading events of this war.

12. Why was the treaty which followed of short duration? Out of what had the three previous wars grown? Where did the last and greatest of the wars on this continent between France and England originate? What did

England on this continent originated in America. The French claimed all the magnificent territory west of the Alleghanies, and for the purpose of confining the English to the country east of those mountains they had, as we have already seen, erected a chain of forts from Nova Scotia along the Great Lakes, and down the Mississippi to the Gulf of Mexico. France based her claim on the ground of discovery and settlement, while England claimed all North America on the ground of its discovery by Cabot.

13. The English made no attempt to settle west of the Alleghanies previous to 1752. In that year a company of English merchants and Virginia land speculators styled the Ohio Company, who had, in 1749, obtained from the King of England a grant of a large tract of land on the east side of the Ohio River, sent agents, who established a trading-post at Redstone, now Brownsville, on the Monongahela, and commenced surveying the lands. These agents were seized by a party of French and Indians and carried as prisoners to a French fort. Some Indians who were friendly to the English resented this treatment of their allies by seizing several French traders and sending them to Pennsylvania. Soon after the French began to build forts south of Lake Erie, against which Governor Dinwiddie, of Virginia, remonstrated, because this territory was within the original charter limits of Virginia. Governor Dinwiddie selected George Washington, then only twenty-one years of age, to be the bearer of a letter to the French commander.

14. George Washington, who afterwards led the armies of his

France claim? What did they do for the purpose of confining the English to the country east of the Alleghanies? On what did France base her claim? Why did England claim all North America?

13. What of the English previous to 1752? What happened in 1752? What was done to the agents of the Ohio Company? What did some Indians friendly to the English do? What did the French begin to do soon after? Why did Governor Dinwiddie, of Virginia, remonstrate against this? Whom did he select as the bearer of a letter to the French commander?

14. Where and when was George Washington born? What is said of him as a lad? What else is said of him?

country in the war for independence, was born in Westmoreland County, Virginia, on the banks of the Potomac, on the 22d of February, 1732. Even as a lad he was distinguished for his truthfulness and manly spirit. He was a surveyor at sixteen, and at nineteen was appointed adjutant of a military district with the rank of major. This rank he held when he was appointed by Governor Dinwiddie to be the bearer of the letter to the French commander.

15. It was on the 31st of October, 1753, that Washington set out from Williamsburg on his journey of five hundred miles, most of it through a wilderness full of dangers. He reached the French commander in safety, and was kindly received by him; but the letter which was given him to bear back to Governor Dinwiddie contained a positive refusal to withdraw the French troops from the disputed territory. The French commander declared that he was acting under the orders of the governor of Canada, whom alone he was bound to obey. Washington, on his return, was exposed to great dangers. He was thrown from his raft by the drifting ice while crossing the Alleghany River, and narrowly escaped being drowned, and was once fired at by a treacherous Indian guide at a distance of fifteen paces; but his life was preserved by a kind Providence, and he reached Governor Dinwiddie in safety with the French commandant's letter, and with valuable information about the French forces and posts on the Mississippi.

16. Governor Dinwiddie immediately sent a party of men to erect a fort at the junction of the Alleghany and Monongahela Rivers, where Pittsburg now stands. The French drove off this party, finished the fort themselves, and called it Fort Du Quesne (du kane). A regiment under Colonel Frye, with Washington as

15. What can you say of Washington's journey? How was he received by the French commander? What of the French commander's reply to Governor Dinwiddie? What did the French commander declare? Describe the perils encountered by Washington on his homeward journey.

16. When Governor Dinwiddie received the letter of the French commander, what did he do? What did the French do? What was sent into the disputed territory? Give an account of the battle of the Great Meadows. What fort

second in command, was marched into the disputed territory, when news reached them of this conduct of the French. Washington hastened forward with an advanced party, and coming up with a party of French under Joumonville, at a place called the *Great Meadows*, utterly defeated them, killing or capturing almost the entire party. At this place Washington erected a fort, which he named *Fort Necessity*. While waiting here for reinforcements Colonel Frye died, and Washington was now chief commander. He was soon joined by additional troops from New York and Carolina. His whole force now amounted to about four hundred men. Here, on the 4th of July, 1754, he was attacked by fifteen hundred French and Indians under De Villiers, and after a gallant fight, found it necessary to accept the honorable terms of capitulation which were offered by the French. With drums beating and colors flying the English marched out of Fort Necessity, leaving all the country west of the Alleghanies in the hands of the French.

17. It was now evident that a mighty struggle was at hand, that bitter, desperate strife for the mastery of a continent, known as the French and Indian War. At this time the English colonies contained more than one million five hundred thousand inhabitants, while the French settlements contained scarcely one hundred thousand. This estimate is, of course, exclusive of Indians.

18. The British government advised the colonies to unite themselves together for the common defence. Accordingly a congress, consisting of delegates from New Hampshire, Massachusetts, Rhode Island, Connecticut, New York, Pennsylvania, and Mary-

did Washington erect? What occurred while they were waiting for reinforcements? By what was he soon joined? What happened on the 4th of July, 1754? What was left in the hands of the French?

17. What mighty struggle now began? What was the comparative white population of the English and French colonies in America at this time?

18. What did the British government advise the colonies? What States sent delegates to a congress of the colonies? Where did the congress meet? Who drew up and presented a plan of union? What of this plan? Why was it rejected by the colonial Assemblies? Why rejected by the British government?

land, was held at Albany, in New York. A plan of union was drawn up and presented by Benjamin Franklin, of Pennsylvania. This plan was adopted by the congress on the 4th of July, 1754, the delegates from Connecticut alone objecting. The plan of union was, however, rejected by the colonial assemblies, on the ground that too much power was given to the president-general of the confederation, and by the British government, because it was thought that too much power was assumed on the part of the respective colonial governments. It was resolved to carry on the war with British troops, aided by such forces as the colonies might separately furnish. The congress also made a treaty which secured the alliance of the Iroquois, or Six Nations, as they were now called, the Tuscaroras having been received into their confederacy.

19. All this time England and France professed to be at peace with each other, but kept sending over troops to the assistance of their colonies. In the spring of 1755 the British government sent over two regiments of regulars with General Braddock, who was to be commander-in-chief of all the forces in America. General Braddock had a meeting with the colonial governors at Alexandria, in Virginia, and arranged a plan of campaign. Three expeditions were planned, one under Braddock himself against Fort Du Quesne, another under General Shirley, against Fort Niagara, and a third under Sir William Johnson, against Crown Point,



GENERAL BRADDOCK.

How was it resolved to carry on the war? With what Indian confederacy did the congress make a treaty?

19. What did England and France profess all this time? But what did they do? What did the British government do in the spring of 1755? What did General Braddock do? How many expeditions were planned, and what were they? What did most of the colonies do?

on Lake Champlain. Most of the colonies raised troops, and voted money and supplies for these expeditions.

20. While preparations were going on, it was determined to send an expedition against that portion of Acadia lying between Nova Scotia and Maine, and now known as New Brunswick. In this country the French had erected three small forts. A land and naval force sent out from Boston in May, 1755, made an easy capture of these forts. The French inhabitants of the country, the peaceful Acadians, were now cruelly torn from their homes, forced on board of British vessels,—in many instances husbands and wives, parents and children, separated from each other,—and distributed among the different colonies, to lead out miserable existence in exile or to die in despair. Neither Britain nor her colonies gained any honor by this act of cruelty. The sufferings of these Acadians have been commemorated in Longfellow's beautiful poem, *Evangeline*.

21. After some delay General Braddock's column of two thousand five hundred troops started from Alexandria. Washington went with the expedition as aide-de-camp to Braddock. Braddock was not accustomed to the Indian mode of fighting, and would not take the advice of Washington. On the 9th of July, when Braddock, with the advanced division, had reached a place about seven miles from *Fort Du Quesne*, the sudden war-whoop of the Indians and the whistle of bullets told the English that they had fallen into an ambuscade. The result was a disastrous defeat to the English. Braddock was among the slain. Washington with a body of Virginia troops covered the retreat and saved the army from total destruction. The expedition was a failure, and the whole force retreated to Philadelphia.

20. While preparations were going on, what was it determined to do? What had the French done in this country? What of the expedition against the Acadians? How have the sufferings of these Acadians been commemorated?

21. What of General Braddock's column? Who was aide-de-camp to Braddock? What of Braddock's experience in Indian warfare? Give the account of Braddock's defeat by the French and Indians. Who covered the retreat and saved the army?

22. General Shirley's expedition against Niagara accomplished nothing but the erection of two small forts on the east side of the river, in which garrisons were left.

23. Sir William Johnson's column of six thousand men, whose destination was Crown Point, assembled at the head of boat navigation on the Hudson. After erecting at this place Fort Edward and leaving a garrison in it, Johnson moved forward to the southern end of Lake George. Baron Dieskau (dee-es-ko) moved out from Crown Point with nearly four thousand French, and encountered Colonel Williams, who, with one thousand men, had been sent to watch the French. Williams's force was defeated and himself slain, as was also Colonel Hendricks, in command of the Indian allies. Dieskau pursued the fugitives, and came up with Johnson's main body. The French were now outnumbered in turn, and after a desperate fight, known as the *Battle of Lake George*, were completely routed. The English, in the pursuit, came upon Baron Dieskau, who was wounded, and leaning against a tree. He put his hand to his pocket, feeling for his watch, for the purpose of surrendering it, when a British soldier, thinking that he was searching for his pistol, fired at and mortally wounded him. Though Johnson had defeated the enemy, he did not feel strong enough to attack Crown Point. He therefore built a fort on the battle-ground, which he called Fort William Henry. Leaving a garrison at this fort and one at Fort Edward, he returned to Albany and disbanded the remainder of the army.

24. Up to this time war had not been formally declared between France and England, but in May, 1756, a formal declaration was made. The Marquis Montcalm was sent over to command the

22. What of General Shirley's expedition against Niagara?

23. Describe the movements of Sir William Johnson's column. Give an account of the battle of Lake George. Why did not Johnson attack Crown Point? What did he build? After leaving a garrison at this fort, what did he do?

24. When was war formally declared between France and England? Who was sent over to command the French armies? Who to command the English forces?

French armies in America, and Lord Loudon was sent over to command the English forces.

25. In August, Marquis Montcalm, with about six thousand French and Indians and thirty cannon, crossed Lake Ontario and besieged *Fort Ontario*, on the Oswego River. The garrison, which numbered about fourteen hundred men, retired to an old fort on the west side of the river, but on the 14th of August they were compelled to surrender. The French could boast as their spoils a large amount of military stores of all sorts, about one hundred and thirty-five cannon, and several vessels. This was a severe blow to the English, and broke up the whole plan of campaign for the year. During the same month Colonel John Armstrong, with about three hundred men, marched against the Indian allies of the French living near the Alleghany River, and inflicted considerable damage on them.

26. The campaign of 1757 was a disastrous one to the English. The skilful and intrepid Montcalm, with ten thousand French and Indians, marched to *Fort William Henry*, in which was a garrison of twenty-five hundred men, and besieged it. At Fort Edward, fifteen miles distant, was an army of four thousand men under General Webb; but Webb was afraid to risk an attempt to relieve Fort William Henry, and, after a gallant fight, the garrison capitulated, on the promise of a safe escort to Fort Edward. No sooner had the evacuation of the fort commenced than the Indians began plundering the English, and slaying them if they resisted. In vain did the French officers attempt to restrain the Indians. The retreat of the English was turned into a flight, and the greater part of them were massacred. During the same summer Lord Loudon with a force of ten thousand men, con-

25. Give an account of Montcalm's victory at Fort Ontario. What effect had this blow on the English plan of campaign? What did Colonel John Armstrong do during the same month?

26. Give an account of the capture of Fort William Henry and the massacre which followed. What did Lord Loudon do during the same summer? To what conclusion did he come? What had he done?

sisting of British regulars and colonial troops, assisted by a fleet, went against Louisburg, on Cape Breton Island, but got no further than Halifax, in Nova Scotia. There Lord Loudon concluded that he could not accomplish the object of his expedition, and returned without firing a shot. He had done nothing but prove his own unfitness for command, and had made himself the laughing-stock of the colonies.

27. In the summer of 1757 the great statesman, William Pitt, afterwards Earl of Chatham, became prime minister of England. Under his lead affairs soon wore a brighter aspect. He removed Loudon from the command, and appointed General Abercrombie in his place, and prepared to carry on the war with great vigor. Twelve thousand additional troops were sent over from England, and the colonies were to furnish twenty thousand. When Abercrombie succeeded Loudon he found himself in command of fifty thousand men, twenty-two thousand of them British regulars and twenty-eight thousand colonial troops. Three expeditions were planned: one against Louisburg, another against Crown Point and Ticonderoga, on Lake Champlain, and the third against Fort Du Quesne.

28. In June, 1758, a large fleet under Admiral Boscawen, with twelve thousand troops brought from England, appeared before *Louisburg*. The troops were under General Amherst, and the brave young General Wolfe was second in command. After making the best resistance in their power, the French garrison of six thousand men surrendered. Cape Breton, with a large amount of munitions of war, and Prince Edward Island fell into the hands of the English.

29. While the English were successful at Louisburg, they met

27. Who became prime minister of England in the summer of 1757? What was done under his lead? How many men did Abercrombie find himself in command of? What expeditions were planned?

28. What happened in June, 1758? Under whose command were the troops? Give an account of the capture of Louisburg.

29. Give an account of the expedition against Ticonderoga. What of Gen-

with a severe repulse at Ticonderoga. On the 5th of July, General Abercrombie crossed Lake George with an army of fifteen thousand men to attack *Fort Ticonderoga*. This fort was held by the Marquis Montcalm with only four thousand men, but the gallant Marquis was a host in himself. He sallied forth, and skirmished with the English and delayed them as much as possible. In this skirmishing the noble young Lord Howe, in whom the troops had great confidence, was slain. On the 8th of July, Abercrombie made a vigorous assault on Fort Ticonderoga, but was repulsed with the loss of two thousand men, and fell back to the head of Lake George. From thence General Bradstreet, with three thousand colonial troops, was sent against Fort Frontenac (now Kingston), at the outlet of Lake Ontario. This fort was captured, and nine armed vessels, over fifty cannon, and a large quantity of stores and ammunition fell into the hands of the English.

30. The expedition against *Fort Du Quesne*, consisting of nine thousand men under General Forbes, set out from Philadelphia in July. The French force at this point had been very much weakened, and when Colonel Washington, who was in advance with a brigade of Virginians, reached the fort, he found it abandoned and in ruins, having been set on fire by the French just before their retreat. Ere long a new fortress was erected on the spot and named Fort Pitt, in honor of the English prime minister. At that point now stands the flourishing city of Pittsburg.

31. In 1759, General Amherst was appointed to command the English forces in America. The plan of campaign for this year was as follows: General Wolfe was to attack Quebec; General Amherst was to take Ticonderoga and Crown Point, and unite

eral Bradstreet's expedition against Fort Frontenac? What fell into the hands of the English?

30. Give an account of the expedition against Fort Du Quesne. What was erected on the ruins of the French fort? What city now stands there?

31. Who was appointed to command the English forces in America in 1759? Give the plan of campaign for the year. What did Wolfe do? What

his forces with General Wolfe; and General Prideaux, with a third army, was to take Niagara and then march against Montreal. With a fleet of forty armed vessels, carrying eight thousand British regulars, Wolfe sailed up the St. Lawrence, and on the 27th of June landed at Orleans Island, a few miles below Quebec. His whole force, including the seamen on the ships, probably numbered ten thousand men. The French garrison of Quebec has been variously estimated at between ten and thirteen thousand men, but only two thousand of these were regular troops. The rest were untried Canadian militia.

32. The formidable movement against Quebec had caused Montcalm to weaken the garrisons at other points. The result was that General Amherst captured Ticonderoga in July and Crown Point the 1st of August. Fort Niagara was captured in July after a brief siege by Sir William Johnson, the successor of General Prideaux, who was accidentally killed during the siege. While the siege was going on a body of French and Indians attempted to relieve the place, but were routed with great slaughter, and the fort soon after surrendered.

33. Meanwhile, General Wolfe was prosecuting the siege of Quebec. After being a month before the town he had accomplished nothing. Chafing under the delay, he made an assault on the French lines between the St. Charles and the Montmorenci Rivers, but was repulsed with the loss of between five and six hundred men. Wolfe was now discouraged. No vulnerable point had yet been discovered, and no news was received of the approach of Amherst. In fact, that general, after the capture of Crown Point and Ticonderoga, had gone into winter-quarters.

did his whole force, including seamen, number? How has the French garrison been estimated? How many of them were regular troops?

32. What was the result of weakening the garrisons at other points? What of Fort Niagara?

33. What was General Wolfe doing in the mean while? After being a month before the town and accomplishing nothing, what did Wolfe do? With what result? What discouraged Wolfe? Why did not Amherst appear? What happened one day as Wolfe was making a close examination of the

At last one day, while making a close examination of the cliff above the town, the quick eye of Wolfe detected a narrow path leading up from a sheltered bay, since called Wolfe's Cove. He immediately formed the plan of leading his army up that path by night, surprising the weak guard, and gaining a position which would place his whole force on the heights above the town. Could he accomplish this he felt that success was certain. But was it possible to do this? He resolved to try. On the night of the 12th of September the British army floated noiselessly down the river in boats, landed, and, ascending the rugged path, dispersed with a few shots the Canadian picket, and at dawn were drawn up in battle array on the *Heights of Abraham*. Montcalm, though astounded at the news, did not lose the courage which characterized him. He led forth his army to meet the English. He had superior numbers on his side, but far the greater part of his troops were untrained Canadian militia, and were no match for British regulars. The battle was a desperate one. At last after hours of fighting the French were routed and driven into the city. General Wolfe was wounded early in the action, but continued to lead on his troops until he received a third and mortal wound. While in the agonies of death he heard a shout, "They run! they run!" "Who run?" he asked. "The French!" was the reply. "Now God be praised! I die happy!" were the last words of the expiring hero. The brave Montcalm, who had been the prop and stay of the French cause in America, was also mortally wounded. He was carried into the city. When told that he must die, he replied, "So much the better, for then I shall not live to see the surrender of Quebec." Five days afterwards the city surrendered, leaving Montreal the only place of importance in Canada in the possession of the French. On the

cliff above the town? What plan did he form? What was done on the night of the 12th of September? What did Montcalm do? What of Montcalm's forces? What was the result of the battle? Give an account of the death of Wolfe. What of Montcalm? What happened five days afterwards? What was now the only place of importance in Canada possessed by the French?

square before the Castle of Saint Louis at Quebec there was erected many years after these events a monument to the joint memory of Wolfe and Montcalm.

34. In the spring of 1760 the French attempted to retake Quebec, but failed. In September of the same year three large English armies were concentrated before Montreal. Resistance was not to be thought of, and the French governor at once surrendered not only the city, but all Canada. As far as the fighting in America was concerned the war was ended; but the war went on elsewhere between England on the one side and on the other France, assisted by Spain, which nation had rashly allowed herself to be drawn into the struggle. In September, 1760, war broke out in the Southern colonies with the Cherokees, who had been up to that time the faithful allies of the English. The war was caused by the ill-treatment of some of their chiefs by Governor Lyttleton, of South Carolina. In this war Moultrie and Marion, afterwards so celebrated in the Revolutionary War, took quite a prominent part. After the Cherokees had been defeated in several battles and their country ravaged, they sued for peace and obtained it (1761).

35. In August, 1762, Havana, the capital of Cuba, was conquered from Spain. The French islands in the West Indies had already been taken by a British fleet. In 1763 peace was made. According to the terms of the treaty, France gave up to England all her possessions in North America east of the Mississippi, except the city of New Orleans. At the same time France ceded

34. What happened in the spring of 1760? What in September of the same year? What did the French governor do? Did the close of the contest in America end the war? What nation assisted France? How was the war caused which broke out with the Cherokees in 1760? Who are mentioned as taking a prominent part in this war? What did the Cherokees do after several defeats?

35. What city was captured from Spain in August, 1762? What of the French West India islands? When was peace made? What did France give up to England? What did France cede to Spain? Why? What did Spain cede to England? How were the limits of Georgia extended at this time?

to her ally, Spain, New Orleans and all her possessions west of the Mississippi, as an indemnification for the losses which Spain had suffered during the war. In exchange for the captured Havana, Spain ceded to England her possessions of East and West Florida. It was at this time that England extended the limits of the colony of Georgia to the Mississippi River on the west, and on the south to latitude 31° and the St. Mary's River.

Pontiac's War.

36. The Indians of the Northwest regretting the departure of their old allies, the French, and jealous at the rapidity with which the fertile valleys beyond the Alleghanies were being filled with emigrants from the older settlements, under the leadership of Pontiac, a crafty and talented chief of the Ottawas, formed a plan for the extermination of the new settlers. Treacherous attacks were made on all the western border, and all the English posts in that quarter, except Fort Pitt, Fort Niagara, and Detroit, fell into the hands of the savages. Pontiac, failing to surprise Detroit, besieged it vigorously, showing remarkable skill and tact. Detroit held out until relief came from the East. In the summer of 1764 most of the tribes becoming alarmed at the preparations of the English withdrew from the confederacy and made peace. Pontiac fled to the Illinois. While at a council urging the formation of a new confederacy, he was stabbed by a chief of the Peorian Indians, who had been bribed with a barrel of rum to commit this crime.

37. At the close of the long series of French and Indian wars everything seemed to promise a period of long-continued peace and prosperity, for the colonies were now relieved from all fear of French invasion in the North or Spanish interference in the South.

36. What was the cause of Pontiac's War? Describe it. What did most of the tribes do in the summer of 1764? What became of Pontiac?

37. What was the prospect now?

Topical Review of Part First.

Discoveries.

1. ON the 12th of October, 1492, Columbus discovered the island of Gu-an-a-han-i, or St. Salvador, one of the Bahamas. On the same voyage he discovered Cuba, which he supposed to be Japan, and Hayti, which he named Hispaniola, or Little Spain.

2. ON his second voyage he discovered Dominica, Porto Rico, and Jamaica.

3. ON his third voyage Columbus discovered the main land of South America, which he supposed to be Asia.

4. AMERICA received its name from Americus Vesputius, a Florentine navigator.

Explorations and Settlements of the Spaniards.

5. IMMEDIATELY after the discovery of America the Spaniards began to make conquests and settlements.

In 1512, Ponce de Leon discovered Florida.

In 1513, Balboa crossed the Isthmus of Darien, or Panama, and discovered the Pacific Ocean, and proved America to be a separate continent.

From 1519 to 1521, Cortez achieved the conquest of Mexico.

In 1528, De Narvaez attempted the conquest of Florida, but failed.

In 1529, Pizarro and Almagro, in South America, conquered the vast empire of Peru.

In 1539, Ferdinand De Soto landed in Florida and began his adventurous march, which terminated on the Mississippi in 1541. In the waters of that river he was buried.

The first voyage along the Pacific coast was made by Cabrillo, who sailed as far north as Oregon in 1542.

In 1565, Melendez laid the foundations of *St. Augustine*, in Florida, the oldest town in the United States.

In 1582, Espejo explored New Mexico and founded *Santa Fé*, the second oldest town in the United States.

Before the close of the sixteenth century Spain had possession of the West Indies, Central America, Mexico, and Florida, and a large part of South America. Spain also claimed by right of discovery the greater part of the present Southern States of the American Union, and the Pacific coast by right of discovery.

French Explorations and Settlements.

6. In 1524, John Verazzani, a Florentine, in the service of the King of France, sailed along the coasts of North America from North Carolina to Nova Scotia.

In 1534, Jacques Cartier explored and named the Gulf and River St. Lawrence.

In 1562, John Ribault attempted a settlement at Port Royal, in South Carolina, but his attempt was a failure.

In 1564, Laudonniere attempted a settlement on the river St. John, in Florida. This settlement was broken up in 1565 by the Spaniard Melendez.

The first permanent French settlement in America was made by De Monts and Champlain at Port Royal, in Nova Scotia or Acadia, as it was then called, in 1605.

In 1608, Champlain established at Quebec the first permanent French settlement in Canada. In fifty years after his death Jesuit missionaries had penetrated the wilderness of the West, discovered the Great Lakes, and, sailing down the Mississippi to its mouth, had acquired for France the vast territory of Louisiana.

English Explorations and Settlements.

7. England claimed the exclusive right to plant colonies in North America, on the ground of Cabot's discovery of the continent in 1497.

In 1576, Martin Frobisher sailed in search of a northwest passage to India, but did not succeed.

In 1579, Sir Francis Drake explored the coasts of California, and discovered San Francisco Bay. From 1584 to 1587, Sir

Walter Raleigh attempted settlements on the coast of North Carolina, but failed.

The first permanent English settlement in North America was made in 1607, at Jamestown, in Virginia, by immigrants under the direction of Sir Christopher Newport.

8. In 1609, Henry Hudson, an Englishman, in the service of the Dutch East India Company, discovered the Hudson River. Between 1610 and 1613 the Dutch began settlements at Albany and New York. The Swedes also made settlements in Delaware, which they called New Sweden.

Conflicting Claims.

9. Thus we see five European nations made explorations and discoveries in the region now known as the United States.

The Spaniards claimed the greater part of the present Southern States, under the name of Florida, and all the Pacific coast, under the name of New Mexico.

The French claimed a large part of the Atlantic coast, all Acadia and Canada, and the whole Mississippi Valley, including all the region west of the Alleghanies. They called all this vast territory New France.

The English claimed nearly the whole Atlantic coast, under the name of North Virginia and South Virginia. They also claimed that their boundaries extended west to the Pacific Ocean.

The Dutch claimed the Atlantic coast from the Connecticut River to the Delaware, under the name of New Netherlands. The Swedish claim was soon yielded to the Dutch.

These rival claims of the Spaniards, French, English, and Dutch led to frequent disputes and to several wars, which were frequently waged with a bitter and unrelenting spirit.

Founding of the Colonies.

10. The first settlement in Virginia was in 1607, at Jamestown, by English immigrants.

New York was first settled by the Dutch, who established trading-posts at the present cities of Albany and New York, between 1610 and 1613. It became a British colony in 1664.

The first settlement in Massachusetts was at Plymouth, in 1620, by English Puritans. The Massachusetts Bay Colony was established in 1628, also by English Puritans. In 1691 the two colonies became one under the name of Massachusetts.

New Hampshire was founded in 1622, and the first permanent settlements were made in 1629, at Portsmouth and Dover. The settlers were from England and Massachusetts.

Connecticut was first settled by the Dutch, in 1633, near Hartford. In 1635 the English seized it, and established the Connecticut Colony. In 1636 Saybrooke Colony was established, and in 1638 New Haven Colony. These three colonies were united, under the name of Connecticut, in 1662. Connecticut was settled by emigrants from other parts of New England.

Rhode Island was founded in 1636, by Roger Williams, and settled by persecuted New Englanders.

Maryland was founded in 1633, by persecuted Catholics from England.

New Jersey was first settled by Danes, in 1622 ; soon after fell under the sway of the Dutch, and in 1664 fell under the dominion of England.

Delaware was first settled by Swedes and Finns, in 1638, near the present city of Wilmington. In 1655 it fell under the dominion of the Dutch, and in 1664 was seized by the English. In 1682 it was granted to William Penn, and in 1690 became a separate colony.

Pennsylvania was first settled by Swedes and Finns, in 1638. It fell under the sway of the Dutch in 1655, and in 1664 was seized by England. It was granted to William Penn, who founded the colony of Pennsylvania, in 1682. It was settled by persecuted English Quakers.

North Carolina was first settled between 1640 and 1643, by persons from Virginia. In 1663 the colonies of Albemarle

and Clarendon were founded. In 1670 they were united into one.

South Carolina was first settled by the English, in 1670, at Port Royal, and in 1680 Charleston was founded. It was settled by English immigrants and French Huguenots.

Georgia was founded in 1733, by James Edward Oglethorpe. The first settlement was at Savannah, by English colonists; afterwards peopled by Scotch, Swiss, and persecuted Protestants from Germany.

11. All the colonies had more or less trouble with the Indians at various times, but their wars with the red men always ended to the advantage of the settlers.

Wars with the French.

12. There were four of these wars. The first was King William's War, which began in 1689; the second was Queen Anne's War, and began in 1702; the third, King George's War, which broke out in 1744; the fourth and greatest of them all was the French and Indian War, which commenced in 1754.

13. The chief events of King William's War were the surprise and massacre by the French and Indians of the inhabitants of Dover, in New Hampshire, Fort Pemaquid, in Maine, Schenectady, in New York, and Haverhill, in Massachusetts, the failure of two English expeditions, one against Montreal, the other against Quebec, and the capture by the English of Port Royal, in Acadia. King William's War was ended by the treaty of Ryswick, in 1697. It had lasted eight years. All conquests made by either party were restored.

14. Queen Anne's War began five years afterwards. Spain was an ally of France in this war. The chief events were an unsuccessful invasion of Florida by Governor Moore, of South Carolina, a subsequent successful attack made by the same governor on the Indian allies of Spain, the massacre of the inhabitants of Deerfield, in Massachusetts, by the Indian allies of France, the failure of an English expedition against Port Royal,

in Acadia, in 1707, the success of a second attempt in 1710, when a great part of Acadia was conquered, and the failure of an attempt, in 1711, against Quebec and Montreal. The treaty of Utrecht, in 1713, ended Queen Anne's War. The only gain to England was the conquest of a large part of Acadia, henceforth called Nova Scotia.

15. The chief events of King George's War, which broke out in 1744, were the capture of Louisburg, on Cape Breton Island, by about three thousand New Englanders, led by General Pepperell, aided by a British fleet under Admiral Warren, and the failure of two attempts made by the French to recapture it. This war was closed by the treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle, in 1748. Louisburg and Cape Breton were restored to the French.

16. The French and Indian War began in 1754. The leading events of the campaign of 1754 were Washington's victory over the French under Jumonville, at Great Meadows, and his own defeat by a superior force of French and Indians at Fort Necessity.

The chief events of 1755 were the conquest of New Brunswick by the English, the defeat of Braddock near Fort Du Quesne by the French and Indians, and Johnson's victory over the French under Dieskau, at Lake George.

The only important event of 1756 was the capture by Montcalm of Fort Ontario, near Oswego, with a vast amount of supplies, together with the garrison of about fourteen hundred men under General Mercer.

The campaign of 1757 was disastrous to the English. Montcalm captured Fort William Henry and its garrison of twenty-five hundred men, commanded by Monroe. Lord London's expedition against the French fortress of Louisburg amounted to nothing.

The campaign of 1758 was more fortunate for the English. Louisburg was captured by an English army under General Amherst, assisted by a fleet under Admiral Boscawen. Abercrombie, the commander-in-chief of the English, was repulsed in an assault on Ticonderoga, but General Bradstreet, one of his subordinates,

captured Fort Frontenac (now Kingston, on Lake Ontario). Fort Du Quesne was captured by General Forbes, the French retiring on his approach.

The campaign of 1759 was glorious for England and her colonies. Ticonderoga and Crown Point were captured by General Amherst, the French retiring before him; Fort Niagara was captured after a brief siege by Sir William Johnson, and Quebec was captured by the English under General Wolfe, who died in the arms of victory.

In 1760 the French were defeated in an attempt to recapture Quebec, and in the fall Montreal and all Canada were surrendered to the English.

The French and Indian War was terminated in 1763 by the treaty of Paris. *France gave up to England* all her possessions in North America east of the Mississippi, except the city of New Orleans; *to Spain*, who had been her ally during the war, she gave New Orleans and all her possessions west of the Mississippi. *Spain gave up to England* her possessions of East and West Florida.

Pontiac's War.

17. *The Indians of the Northwest* under Pontiac, regretting the departure of the French, made war upon the western English settlements in 1763, but after inflicting great damage were subdued in 1764.

The supremacy of England on the North American Continent was now established, and the colonies looked forward to a long period of peace and prosperity.

PART SECOND.

FROM THE CLOSE OF THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR TO THE
BEGINNING OF WASHINGTON'S ADMINISTRATION.

CHAPTER I.

DISPUTES WITH THE MOTHER-COUNTRY.

1. At the close of the French and Indian War the feeling throughout the colonies was one of devoted attachment to England, the mother-country. The remembrance of their contests against a common foe, when British regulars and colonial troops marched side by side to battle and to final triumph, filled their hearts with pride, and they gloried in being British subjects and in sharing the liberties of English freemen.* Little did they dream that their next struggle would be with England, which, as the mother-country, they regarded with filial love and loyalty.

2. Had the British Parliament acted towards the colonies in a proper spirit, this feeling would have grown and strengthened. But Parliament soon adopted a policy which wrought a change in the feelings of the Americans. The French and Indian War had added largely to the already heavy debt of England, and Parliament asserted that the colonies ought to bear their share of this debt, and claimed the right to tax them. This right the colonies denied, because they claimed that taxation and representation

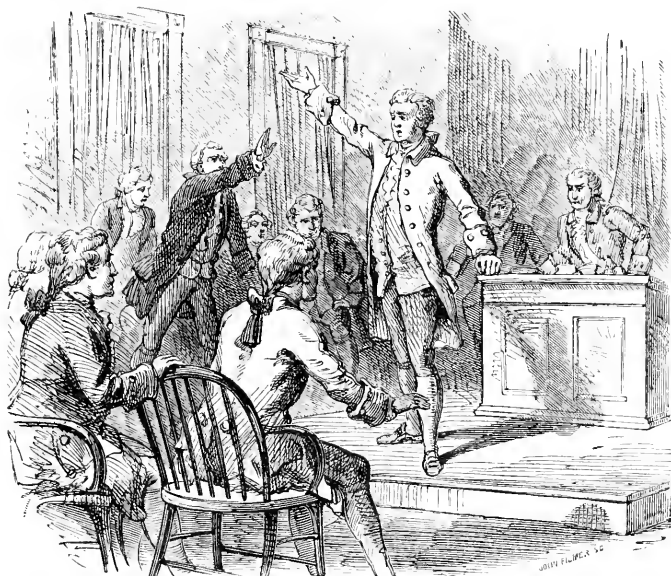
1. What was the feeling throughout the colonies at the close of the French and Indian War?

2. What policy did the British Parliament soon adopt? What did Parliament assert about the debt contracted during the late war? Why did the colonies deny the right of Parliament to tax them?

ought to go together, and deemed it unjust for a Parliament in which they had no voice to levy a tax upon them.

3. In 1765 an act was passed by the British Parliament known as the Stamp Act, requiring all contracts, notes, bonds, deeds, writs, and public documents to be on government stamped paper. When the news of the passage of this act reached America it caused great excitement.

4. Virginia was the first to speak her condemnation. The Legislature was in session when the news came. Patrick Henry introduced



PATRICK HENRY BEFORE THE LEGISLATURE.

a series of resolutions claiming for Virginians all the rights of born British subjects, and asserting that the General Assembly of

3. What act was passed by Parliament in 1765? What did it require? What did the news of the passage of this act cause in America?

4. Give an account of what happened in the Legislature of Virginia.

Virginia alone had the right to lay taxes on the people of that colony. He supported the resolutions by a speech burning with fiery eloquence. He closed with the words, "Tarquin and Cæsar had each his Brutus; Charles I. his Cromwell; and George III.—" "Treason! Treason!" cried the Speaker of the House and several members, springing to their feet, but amid the wildest excitement the undaunted Henry finished his sentence—"may profit by their example." The resolutions were adopted by one majority, and had a wonderful effect on the country.

5. The Legislature of Massachusetts proposed that there should be a convention of delegates from all the colonies to meet in New York in October, the month before the Stamp Act was to go into effect. This proposal of Massachusetts met with opposition until it was adopted by South Carolina, after which it grew in favor. In September the Legislature of Pennsylvania passed resolutions denouncing the Stamp Act. New York was outspoken, and the papers of that colony discussed the question boldly. Throughout all the colonies the people met and protested against the Stamp Act. Societies, styled Sons of Liberty, were formed everywhere, whose purpose was to resist the tyranny of the government. Stamp officers were frightened by them and compelled to resign. When the stamps came, they were either unpacked or seized and destroyed. The merchants of Philadelphia, Boston, New York, and other places agreed to buy no more goods from England until the Stamp Act was repealed.

6. The *First Colonial Congress* met in the city of New York, on the 7th of October, 1765. Nine colonies were represented. It agreed upon a declaration of principles, and asserted the right of the colonies to be exempted from all taxes not imposed by their own consent. The Congress also adopted a petition to the

5. What can you say of the proposal of the Legislature of Massachusetts? What of the Legislature of Pennsylvania? What of New York? What did the people do throughout all the colonies? What of the stamp officers? What was done with the stamps? What did the merchants of Philadelphia, New York, Boston, and other places do?

6. Where and when did the first Colonial Congress meet? How many co'o-

king and Parliament. When November 1 came, the day appointed for the Stamp Act to go into effect, not a stamp was to be seen. All the stamp officers had resigned.

7. British merchants injured by the loss of American trade petitioned Parliament to repeal the act. William Pitt, the Earl of Chatham, Burke, and Lord Camden earnestly plead the cause of the colonies. In March, 1766, the Stamp Act was repealed, but it was at the same time declared that Parliament had a right to bind the colonies in all cases whatsoever.

8. The news of this repeal was received in America with great rejoicing. The old kindly feeling began to revive, and trade was resumed.

9. The scheme of taxation was revived June 29, 1767, when an act was passed imposing a tax on all glass, paper, painters' colors, and tea imported into the colonies. Another thing which caused the most intense excitement was the passage of an act forbidding the Legislature of New York to pass any act whatever until supplies should be furnished the royal troops at the expense of the colony.

10. On the 1st of October, 1768, seven hundred British troops arrived in Boston, sent for the purpose of overawing the citizens. In February, 1769, Parliament passed a resolution approving the employment of force against the colonies, and requested the king to have the traitors (as they styled the leading patriots) carried to England for trial. The colonial Assemblies reasserted their rights, and denied the right of the king to take offenders out of

nies were represented? What did the Congress do? What petition was adopted? What happened when the 1st of November came?

7. What did British merchants do? Who plead the cause of the colonies? What was done in March, 1766?

8. How was the news of the repeal received in America?

9. When and how was the scheme of taxation revived? What else caused great excitement?

10. What happened on the 1st of October, 1768? What resolution did Parliament pass in February, 1769? What did the colonial Assemblies do? What of Virginia and North Carolina?

the country for trial. The Assemblies of Virginia and North Carolina made such earnest protestations that they were dissolved by the royal governors.

11. On the 17th of January, 1770, a riot occurred in New York, because the soldiers provoked the "Sons of Liberty" by cutting down their liberty-pole. One citizen was killed and several wounded. In Boston, a dispute having arisen between some soldiers and citizens, the citizens were fired upon; three were killed and several wounded. This affair occurred on the 5th of March, and is known as the *Boston massacre*. The soldiers were tried for murder; two were convicted of manslaughter, the rest were acquitted.

12. In April, 1770, a bill was passed by Parliament repealing all the duties except that on tea. This exception was made merely for the purpose of asserting the principle that Parliament had a right to tax the colonies. But it was the *principle* that the colonies were opposed to; so they resolved to import no more tea.

13. In New York and Philadelphia the vessels containing the tea were not allowed to enter. At Charleston, South Carolina, it was landed and stored away in damp cellars and left to rot. In Boston a party of men, disguised as Mohawk Indians, went on board the tea-ships, broke open all the chests, and threw the tea into the sea.

14. In 1774, to punish the city of Boston, Parliament passed the Boston port bill, closing that city as a port and removing the custom-house to Salem. The charter of Massachusetts was revoked, and Gage was appointed military governor, and was authorized to send criminals to England or to another colony for trial.

11. What occurred on the 17th of January, 1770? Give an account of the Boston massacre.

12. What bill was passed by Parliament in April, 1770? Why was the exception made on tea? What did the colonies resolve?

13. What was done at New York, Philadelphia, Charleston, and Boston?

14. What did Parliament do in 1774 to punish Boston and Massachusetts?

15. When the Virginia Legislature heard of this action of Parliament they protested against it, expressed sympathy for the people of Boston, and appointed the 1st day of June as a day of "fasting, humiliation, and prayer." Dunmore, the royal governor, immediately dissolved the Assembly, whereupon they adjourned to a tavern, and there passed a resolution that "an attack on one colony was an attack on all." The cry now went throughout the colonies, "The cause of Boston is the cause of us all." The Legislature of Virginia advised that a general congress of all the colonies should be held at Philadelphia.

16. This Congress met on the 5th of September, 1774. All the colonies were represented except Georgia. That colony was so much at the mercy of the Indians on its northern and western borders, and was in such danger from the king's ships and soldiers under Governor Wright, that the people had to act with caution, though at the first opportunity they acted promptly. The Congress made a declaration of the rights of the colonies, drew up a petition to the king, and issued addresses to the British people, to the colonies, and to the province of Quebec.

17. Early in 1775, Lord Chatham introduced a bill in Parliament which he hoped would bring about a reconciliation, but he failed; for the Parliament would listen to nothing but the absolute submission of the colonies.

15. What did the Virginia Legislature do when they heard of this? What did the royal governor do? What cry went throughout the colonies? What did the Legislature of Virginia advise?

16. When did this Congress meet? Who were represented? What were the people of Georgia obliged to do on account of the exposed condition of the colony? What did the Congress do?

17. What did Lord Chatham do early in 1775? Why did he fail?

CHAPTER II.

COMMENCEMENT OF THE WAR OF THE REVOLUTION.

1. BY the 1st of April, 1775, three thousand British troops were assembled in Boston, under the command of General Gage, the military governor, who had quartered his soldiers in the State House, because the people had refused to furnish them with quarters.

2. General Gage having heard that the patriots had collected some military stores at Concord, about sixteen miles from Boston, secretly sent eight hundred men on the night of the 18th of April to destroy these stores.

3. The British troops, who were under the command of Colonel Smith and Major Pitcairn, expected to reach Concord and do the work assigned them before they could be molested by the bands of Minute-men who were scattered all over the country. But at five o'clock on the morning of the 19th of April, at *Lexington*, they encountered about seventy militia commanded by Captain Parker. Major Pitcairn rode up to the militia and ordered them to disperse. On their failure to do so, he fired his pistol at them and ordered his men to fire. They did so; several of the militia were killed and the rest dispersed. The British troops then went on to *Concord* and commenced destroying the stores. Meanwhile, the militia from all the country near Lexington and Concord had assembled, and soon their numbers were so large that they felt bold enough to make a spirited attack at Concord Bridge,

1. How many British soldiers were in Boston by the 1st of April, 1775?

2. What did General Gage do on the night of the 18th of April?

3. Who commanded the British troops? What happened on the morning of the 19th of April? On the refusal of the militia to disperse, what did Major Pitcairn do? What was the result? What did the British troops then do? What happened in the mean while? Give an account of the retreat of

soon after which the British began to retreat. But they found this no easy task. The American militia pressed close behind them, and the sturdy New England farmers hastening to the scene of conflict, under no organized command, but each man for himself, from every wood and fence and thicket poured in destructive volleys from their old flint-locks, thinning the ranks of the foe and striking terror into their hearts, until the retreat became a rout. The whole British force would probably have surrendered had they not been met at Lexington by Lord Percy with nine hundred men. Under cover of these reinforcements they made their way back to Boston. The loss of the British in this affair, which is known as the battle of Lexington, was two hundred and seventy-three men, of whom sixty-five were killed. The loss of the Americans was about ninety men.

4. The news of the battle spread like wildfire through all the surrounding country, and the militia from every quarter hastened to Boston. By the night of the 19th thousands were assembled around that city. Israel Putnam, a man noted for his valor during the late French war, was ploughing in his field when he heard the news. Leaving his yoked cattle in the field, he hastened to the camp at Cambridge. The militia of Connecticut and Rhode Island hurried to the help of their brethren. The New Hampshire militia, under Stark, also came to their assistance. In less than a month twenty thousand men were encamped in the vicinity of Boston. A line of fortifications was run from Roxbury to the Mystic River, and the British were confined to the Boston peninsula.

5. The excitement was not confined to the New England colonies. From Massachusetts to Georgia the people were thoroughly

the British from Concord. What was the loss of each side in the battle of Lexington?

4. What effect had the news of this battle? Relate the anecdote of Israel Putnam. What of the militia? What happened in less than a month? What of the British?

5. Was the excitement confined to New England? What happened at

aroused. At Savannah, Georgia, on the night of the 11th of May, a party of patriots broke open the powder-magazine, took out the powder, sent part of it to Beaufort, in South Carolina, and concealed the remainder in their garrets and cellars. Sir James Wright, the royal governor, offered a reward for the apprehension of the men who had done this, but the secret was kept by the Americans until they had use for the powder in defending their rights and property.

6. At *Charlotte, Mecklenburg County*, North Carolina, representatives of the people met, and on the 20th of May made the First Declaration of Independence. But the other colonies were not at this time in favor of independence. They were only fighting for their rights as British subjects.

7. Early in the spring the authorities of Connecticut fitted out an expedition against Ticonderoga and Crown Point. The command was given to Colonel Ethan Allen, who lived in the southern part of Vermont, which was not at that time a separate colony, but was claimed by both New Hampshire and New York. Colonels Allen and Benedict Arnold set out on their important expedition with the Connecticut militia and the "Green Mountain Boys." The British commander at Ticonderoga was completely taken by surprise. The first intimation of the approach of a foe was the noise made by Allen and his men as they rushed into the fort. To the request of the astounded Briton to know what this meant, Allen replied by demanding the surrender of the fort "in the name of the Great Jehovah and the Continental Congress." As resistance was hopeless, the fort was surrendered. This was on the 10th of May, 1775. Two days later Crown Point was taken. Benedict Arnold was equally successful at Skenesborough,

Savannah, Georgia, the night of the 11th of May? What did the royal governor do? How long was the secret kept?

6. What was done at Charlotte, North Carolina? Why did not the other colonies favor independence at this time?

7. What did the authorities of Connecticut do? Give an account of the taking of Ticonderoga and Crown Point by Ethan Allen. What did Benedict Arnold do? What did the Americans secure by these captures?

now known as Whitehall, in New York. The Americans secured by these captures more than one hundred cannon and other valuable military stores.

8. On the 10th of May, 1775, the Second Continental Congress met at Philadelphia. There were delegates present from twelve colonies. Those from Georgia did not arrive until some time afterwards. One of the first things that this Congress did was to proclaim the reasons which prompted the colonies to take up arms. In stating these reasons they declared that they had "no wish to separate from their mother-country, but only to maintain their chartered rights." They also voted an army of twenty thousand men and the issue of bills of credit to the amount of three million dollars. The forces in front of Boston were adopted as the Continental army. On the 15th of June, at the suggestion of the Massachusetts delegation, George Washington, at that time a delegate from Virginia, was appointed commander-in-chief, and was commissioned in the name of the United Colonies. John Hancock, of Massachusetts, was president of this Congress. The Congress also adopted a petition to the king, which he refused to receive.

9. Meanwhile, important events were transpiring near Boston. On the 25th of May reinforcements for the British arrived in the harbor of Boston, under the command of Generals Howe, Clinton, and Burgoyne. The whole British force now numbered more than ten thousand men.

10. On the 12th of June, General Gage issued a proclamation declaring those in arms to be rebels and traitors, and offering par-

8. When and where did the Second Continental Congress meet? What of the delegates from Georgia? In stating the reasons of the Americans for taking up arms what did the Congress say? What did they vote? Who was appointed commander-in-chief? In whose name was he commissioned? Who was president of this Congress? What did the Congress adopt? How did the king treat the petition?

9. What arrived in Boston on the 25th of May? What did the whole British force now number?

10. What did General Gage do on the 12th of June?

don to all who would lay down their arms, except Samuel Adams and John Hancock.

11. In order to prevent the British from advancing into the country, the officers of the colonial forces determined to fortify *Bunker Hill*, an eminence commanding the neck of the peninsula of Charlestown. Either by mistake, or because it suited their purpose better, the detachment under Colonel Prescott fortified Breed's Hill, an eminence nearer Boston. All night of the 16th of June the Americans toiled, and at dawn of the 17th the British generals were astonished to see a breastwork about six feet high frowning down upon them from the opposite height. General Gage sent over in boats twenty-five hundred British regulars, under General Howe, to storm the intrenchment, behind which lay about fifteen hundred Americans under Prescott and Putnam. As the British advanced they burned the village of Charlestown. Every point in Boston, from which a view of the conflict could be had, was filled with anxious spectators, eagerly waiting to see how their former soldiers would stand the assaults of British regulars. According to the advice of Prescott and Putnam, the Americans waited in silence the approach of the British until they could see the whites of their eyes. Then they poured in such a volley that the advancing column broke and fled. Again the British formed and moved forward to the assault, but only to be driven back by the same withering fire. The Americans had, however, exhausted their ammunition, and when General Clinton arrived with reinforcements, and the third assault was made, the British succeeded in entering the works. The colonial troops retired across Charlestown neck. Their retreat was covered by General Stark and his New Hampshire Boys, who disputed every step of the way. When the Americans reached Prospect Hill they fortified it. The British fortified Bunker Hill. No active operations were carried on by either army for

11. What did the officers of the colonial forces determine to do? What did General Gage do? Give an account of the advance and the battle. What was the effect of this battle?

some time after this. In this battle, known as the battle of Bunker Hill, the British lost one thousand and fifty-four men, and the Americans about four hundred and fifty, among whom was General Joseph Warren, whom General Howe declared to be worth five hundred common rebels. The effect of this battle was to greatly encourage the Americans, for though they had been compelled to retire and yield the victory to the enemy, they had proven that their untrained militia would bravely stand the assaults of British regulars.

12. On the 2d of July, 1775, Washington reached the headquarters of the American army, and on the next day took command. He found collected there a body of undisciplined militia, without tents, ammunition, or necessary supplies. He immediately went to work to discipline the militia, and ere long had moulded it into an efficient army, with which he kept General Howe, who had succeeded to the command of the British forces, hemmed in and confined within the limits of Boston.

13. Meanwhile, the people in the other colonies were not idle. Preparations for the mighty struggle with England were going on everywhere. In July a British vessel which arrived at *Tybee Island*, below Savannah, Georgia, with thirteen thousand pounds of powder for the use of the British troops, was seized by thirty volunteers under the lead of Commodore Bowen and Colonel Joseph Habersham. The powder was carried to Savannah and secured in a magazine. Five thousand pounds of it were sent to the Continental army at Boston.

14. During the latter part of 1775, Lord Dunmore, the royal governor of Virginia, having been driven from the colony, raised a regiment of negroes, to whom he offered their freedom, and attacked the Virginians near Norfolk, but was defeated. Some

12. When Washington took command at Cambridge, what did he find? What did he immediately do?

13. Meanwhile, what were going on everywhere? What happened at Savannah, Georgia, in July? What was done with the powder?

14. What happened in Virginia during the latter part of 1775?

time after this he returned with a British man-of-war and gratified his revenge by bombarding and burning a large part of the town.

15. In September a body of troops from New York and New England, under the command of General Montgomery, invaded Canada. They captured Fort St. John, in Canada, also Fort Chambly, and one month later the town of Montreal. By the 1st of December, Montgomery reached Quebec, and there found General Arnold, who, with a body of troops, had marched across Maine into Canada, and had been some time in front of Quebec, waiting Montgomery's arrival. On the 31st of December they made an attack on Quebec, but were repulsed, Montgomery being killed and Arnold severely wounded. In the spring the Americans abandoned the attempt on Quebec and retreated from Canada.

CHAPTER III.

CAMPAIGNS OF 1776.—DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE.

1. IN March, 1776, the Americans were cheered by a great success. Washington, who, with his army, still beleaguered Howe's forces in Boston, suddenly seized and fortified *Dorchester Heights*, which commanded the city on the south. Howe seeing that he could not dislodge the Americans, agreed to surrender the city uninjured on condition of being allowed to depart with his army; and the Americans entered in triumph March 17. The British fleet conveyed Howe and his troops to Halifax, in Nova

15. Give an account of the invasion of Canada. What happened at Quebec on the 31st of December? What did the Americans do in the spring?

1. How were the British compelled to evacuate Boston? Where did the British fleet convey Howe and his troops? Who else went off from Boston in the British fleet?

Scotia. Fifteen hundred loyalists were carried off from Boston in the British fleet.

2. During the same month in which Boston was evacuated an event occurred near Savannah, Georgia, which showed the spirit actuating the people of the youngest of the colonies, and the one which was at that time the most exposed to the dangers of Indian warfare. The Continental Congress had passed an act forbidding all communication between the colonies and the British dominions. Now it must be mentioned here that in all the colonies there were persons who sided with the king and Parliament. These persons were sometimes designated as Loyalists and sometimes as Tories. Some wealthy loyalist planters had freighted eleven merchant vessels with rice in the Savannah River and prepared for a sea-voyage. To help them in this, some British war-ships at the mouth of the river moved up and threatened Savannah. The militia of Georgia, under Colonel McIntosh, assisted by the Carolinians, under Colonel Bull, dislodged the enemy, burned three of the merchant vessels and dismantled six. The other two escaped. On this occasion there was some fear that the town might fall into the hands of the enemy. The Sons of Liberty, among whom were the wealthiest inhabitants of Savannah, whose all consisted in houses and lots, adopted a resolution to burn the town to the ground rather than let it fall into the hands of the British.

3. The first offensive operations of the British in 1776 were directed against Charleston, South Carolina. On the 4th of June a British fleet under Sir Peter Parker and a land force of twenty-five hundred men under General Clinton appeared off Charleston.

2. Who were the Tories or Loyalists? What did some loyalist planters do near Savannah? What was done to help them in this? What did the militia of Carolina and Georgia do? When it was feared that Savannah might fall into the hands of the enemy, what resolution did the Sons of Liberty adopt?

3. Where were the first offensive movements of the British directed in 1776? When did the British fleet appear before Charleston? How was the entrance

The entrance of the harbor was defended by *Fort Moultrie*, built of sand and palmetto logs, and garrisoned by four hundred men commanded by Colonel William Moultrie. On the 28th of June the British attacked this fort by sea and land, but after ten hours' fighting were repulsed with the loss of more than two hundred men. The loss of the Carolinians was thirty-two, ten of whom were killed. There were many instances of personal daring during this fight, but the most conspicuous was that of Sergeant Jasper, who, when the flag-staff was cut in two by a cannon-ball, and the flag had fallen upon the beach outside the fort, leaped over the parapet, and amid a perfect shower of balls picked up the flag, fastened it to a staff, and set it up in its proper place. For this heroic deed a lieutenant's commission was offered to Jasper by Governor Rutledge, who at the same time presented him with a sword. Jasper accepted the sword but declined the commission, for the reason that he could neither read nor write. Soon after their repulse the British fleet, with Clinton's army on board, sailed northward.

4. Soon after the British sailed from Boston, Washington moved the bulk of his army to New York, supposing this would be the next point of attack. He reached New York about the middle of April, and soon had collected there an army of seventeen thousand men; but many of them were unarmed, his supply of artillery was small, and the line which he had to hold was fifteen miles long.

5. Meanwhile, Great Britain had been making extensive preparations for the subjugation of the colonies. A large fleet had been ordered to America, with twenty-five thousand British sol-

to the harbor defended? What happened on the 28th of June? Relate the exploit of Sergeant Jasper. What was offered Jasper? Why did he refuse the commission? What did the British fleet do soon after their repulse?

4. What did Washington do soon after the British sailed from Boston? What was the condition of Washington's army?

5. Meanwhile, what had Great Britain been doing? What of the fleet and soldiers? What were the German soldiers called?

diers and seventeen thousand German troops, who were hired by the British government at thirty-six dollars per head, to be paid to their respective princes. Most of these German mercenaries came from Hesse-Cassel, and were known in America as Hessians.

6. When the people of the colonies saw that England was determined to force them to submit, and had even gone so far as to hire foreign soldiers to fight them, they ceased thinking of contending for their rights as British subjects and began to think seriously of independence. As we have already seen, a portion of the people of North Carolina had, as early as May, 1775, expressed themselves as in favor of independence, and had actually gone so far as to declare that North Carolina no longer owed allegiance to the British crown. But the idea did not meet with much favor in the other colonies at that time.

7. In January, 1776, Massachusetts instructed her delegates in Congress to vote for independence. South Carolina did the same in March; and Georgia and North Carolina in April. Virginia took the same step in May; New Hampshire, New Jersey, and Maryland followed the example of the others early in June. New York and Pennsylvania delayed action, still hoping for some settlement of the controversy with the mother-country.

8. On the 7th of June, Richard Henry Lee, of Virginia, offered a resolution in Congress that "These United Colonies are and of right ought to be free and independent States." He also proposed that "a plan of confederation be prepared and transmitted to the several colonies for their consideration and approbation." The resolution was adopted on the 11th of June. Two committees were appointed, one to prepare a declaration of inde-

6. When the people of the colonies saw the vast preparations that were being made for their subjugation, what did they do? What has already been said about the people of North Carolina?

7. What did Massachusetts do in January, 1776? What State did the same thing in March? Which ones in April? Which in May? Which in June? Why did Pennsylvania and New York delay action?

8. What did Richard Henry Lee, of Virginia, do on the 7th of June? What did he also propose? What two committees were appointed? Who were the

pendence, and the other to prepare articles of confederation. The committee on the Declaration of Independence were Thomas Jefferson, of Virginia; John Adams, of Massachusetts; Benjamin Franklin, of Pennsylvania; Roger Sherman, of Connecticut; and Robert R. Livingston, of New York. The document was drawn up by Jefferson, the chairman, and received a few verbal alterations from Adams and Franklin.

9. The committee on the *Declaration of Independence* reported on the 28th of June; but action was delayed until the delegates



INDEPENDENCE HALL.

from New York and Pennsylvania should receive their instructions to vote for it. At last the needed instructions came, and on the 4th day of July, with the unanimous consent not only of all the colonies, but also of all the delegates, Congress declared the thirteen colonies to be free and independent States. The announcement of this declaration was received everywhere with

committee on the Declaration? By whom was the Declaration of Independence drawn up?

9. When did the committee on independence report? Why was action delayed? When did Congress declare the colonies to be free and independent States? Was it unanimous? How was the announcement of this declaration received? What happened in New York City?

great rejoicing, and in many places the people showed their joy by the ringing of bells and the kindling of bonfires. When the news of the declaration was received in New York City, a large number of the people, rushing to one of the squares, in which stood a leaden statue of King George III., tied a rope around its neck and dragged it down from its pedestal. It was afterwards moulded into bullets to fight the king's soldiers with.

10. On the 12th day of July, eight days after the adoption of the Declaration of Independence, a plan of union was laid before Congress. The plan of union was styled "*Articles of Confederation and Perpetual Union between the States.*" According to this plan, the States conferred certain powers upon the United States in Congress assembled, and reserved others to themselves. Most of the States accepted the Articles of Confederation as early as 1777, but it was not until 1781 that Maryland gave her full assent to them.

11. Henceforth we will speak not of the colonies, but of the United States, whose independence dates from the 4th of July, 1776, the day on which the grand Declaration was issued to the world. At this time the aggregate population of the thirteen States was, according to the most reliable returns, two million eight hundred thousand, of whom five hundred thousand were negro slaves, scattered throughout all the States.

12. On the 8th of July, General Howe landed about nine thousand men on Staten Island, near New York City. A few days afterwards his brother, Admiral Howe, arrived with reinforcements from England. General Clinton soon after arrived

10. When was the plan of union laid before Congress? What was it styled? According to this plan, what did the States do? When were the Articles of Confederation accepted by most of the States? When did Maryland accept them?

11. From what time does the independence of the United States date? What was the aggregate population of the thirteen States at this time?

12. What did General Howe do on the 8th of July? Who came a few days afterwards? Who else arrived at the same place? What did the whole British force now number? What had Washington to oppose them with?

with the force which had been repulsed at Charleston. The whole British force now numbered about thirty thousand men, well supplied with everything needed to make an efficient army. To oppose this force Washington had a poorly-equipped army of hardly half their number, and was obliged to hold a line fifteen miles in length.

13. Lord Howe had been instructed to bring about a reconciliation, and accordingly he offered pardon to all who would swear allegiance to the king. Congress had his proclamation published in the newspapers of the country, so that the people might see what kind of submission was required of them. Howe also addressed a letter to Washington directed to George Washington Esq. Washington refused to receive it, for the reason that he would not notice any letter from the British general not directed to him as commander of the armies of the United States.

14. Between the 22d and 25th of August Howe landed about fifteen thousand men, under General Clinton, on the southwest point of Long Island. The Americans had about nine thousand men, under Generals Sullivan and Sterling. General Greene, who had been in command of this force, was sick, and accordingly General Putnam was sent over to take command. On the 27th of August occurred the *battle of Long Island*. The Americans were attacked, and after a brave resistance were disastrously defeated, with the loss of nearly two thousand men, of whom eleven hundred were prisoners. Among the captured were Generals Sullivan and Sterling. The loss of the British was less than four hundred. The Americans retired to Fort Putnam near Brooklyn. Howe, thinking his prey secure, did not attack, but waited for his fleet to intercept them and cut off their retreat; but Wash-

13. What had Lord Howe been instructed to do? What did he offer? What did Congress do? Why did Washington refuse to receive Howe's letter?

14. What did Howe do between the 22d and 25th of August? How many men had the Americans on Long Island? Who was sent over to take command? Give an account of the battle of Long Island. Where did the Americans retire? What did Howe do? What did Washington do on the night of the 29th?

ington skilfully withdrew his army to New York on the night of the 29th.

15. He could not remain in the city, however, and he therefore retired to the northern part of the island. Howe again made overtures, this time to Congress, but was again unsuccessful; so, on the 15th of September, his army crossed over to Manhattan Island, three miles above what was then the city. The rear-guard of the American army, under Putnam, narrowly escaped being cut off and captured.

16. On the 16th of September a skirmish at Harlem resulted to the advantage of the Americans. An attempt of Howe to outflank the Americans caused Washington to extend his lines northward to *White Plains*. Here, on the 28th of October, a battle occurred between portions of the two armies, and the Americans were obliged to fall back. The main body was so strongly posted that Howe deemed it best not to attack. Washington withdrew to North Castle, and becoming apprehensive that Howe was intending to attack Philadelphia, he left General Charles Lee with four thousand men at North Castle, while he crossed the Hudson and fixed his headquarters at Fort Lee, in New Jersey.

17. On the 17th of November, General Howe attacked *Fort Washington*, in which Congress had ordered a garrison to be left, in opposition to the judgment and advice of the commander-in-chief. After a fierce assault, in which the British lost one thousand men, the works were carried and the garrison of nearly three thousand men was forced to surrender. This was a terrible and disheartening blow to the Americans.

18. On the 19th of November the British crossed the Hudson,

15. To what place did Washington retire? After Howe had made overtures to Congress and had again met with failure, what was done? What of the rear-guard of the American army?

16. What was the result of a skirmish at Harlem on the 16th of September? What of the battle of White Plains? What did Washington do after this?

17. Give an account of the capture of Fort Washington.

and Washington was obliged to retreat across New Jersey, hard pressed by the victorious foe. On the retreat the Americans suffered terribly. Many of the soldiers were poorly clad and barefoot, and the frozen ground was tracked with their blood. At last they reached the Delaware, and crossed over into Pennsylvania.



WASHINGTON CROSSING THE DELAWARE.

19. These were dark days. The Americans felt gloomy and disheartened; desertions in the army were frequent, and Washington's force was reduced to about three thousand men. Many thought that the cause was lost. The British boasted that the war would soon be ended. Philadelphia was in danger, and Congress removed to Baltimore.

20. General Charles Lee, who had been ordered to join Washington, was captured by carelessly exposing himself. General Sullivan, who had been exchanged, took command of Lee's forces

18. Give an account of the retreat of Washington's army across New Jersey into Pennsylvania.

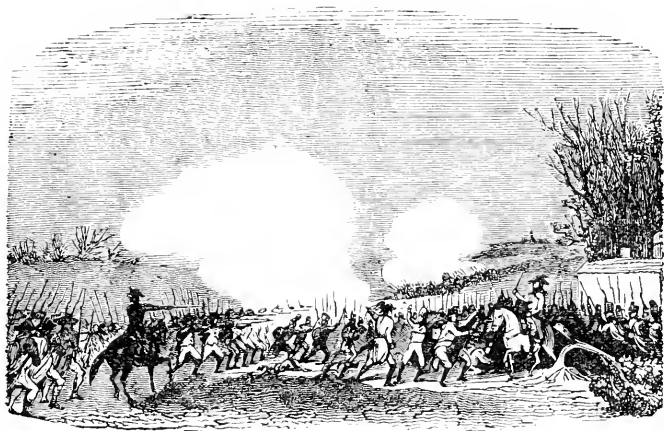
19. What was now the state of affairs? What did the British boast? What did Congress do?

20. What of General Charles Lee? What did General Sullivan do? What was now the size of Washington's army?

and united them with those of Washington. These and some recruits from Pennsylvania brought Washington's force up to somewhere between five and seven thousand men.

21. Washington now resolved to strike a sudden blow and retrieve, if possible, the disasters of the fall campaign. He felt that something must be done, or the cause of freedom would be ruined. The British had detached posts at New Brunswick, Trenton, Princeton, and other places in New Jersey, and were in fancied security. One of their officers had remarked that he could keep the peace in New Jersey with a corporal's guard.

22. At *Trenton* was encamped a force of fifteen hundred, mostly Hessians. Washington resolved to cross the Delaware on



BATTLE OF TRENTON.

Christmas evening and surprise and, if possible, capture the whole force. He therefore took the greater part of his army and em-

21. What did Washington now resolve to do? Where did the British have detached posts? What had one of their officers remarked?

22. What was encamped at Trenton? Give an account of the crossing of the Delaware and the surprise and capture of the Hessians at Trenton. What

barked them on boats to cross the river. Washington, with Greene, Sullivan, Sterling, and Mercer, and twenty-four hundred men, got safely across. Two other divisions of his army were unable to get over on account of the wind and ice. Washington's success was thorough and complete. At dawn of the 26th the Hessians were taken entirely by surprise. Colonel Rahl, their commander, was slain while trying to rally his men, and one thousand laid down their arms and were made prisoners of war. Washington's total loss in the brilliant victory at Trenton was two men killed, two frozen to death, and a few wounded. That same night, with his prisoners and spoils, he recrossed the Delaware.

23. The effect of this victory was wonderful. The faint-hearted plucked up courage anew. Many, whose term of service had expired, re-enlisted, and fresh recruits came in. Washington resolved to return to New Jersey. Accordingly, on the 1st of January, 1777, he again crossed the Delaware, and took post at Trenton with five thousand men.

CHAPTER IV.

CAMPAIGNS OF 1777.

1. On the 2d of January, Lord Cornwallis appeared before Washington's position at Trenton with a much larger force than Washington's. The Americans successfully resisted until night the attempts of the enemy to cross a creek which separated the two armies. That night Washington withdrew from Cornwallis's

was Washington's total loss in the brilliant victory at Trenton? What did Washington do that night?

23. What was the effect of this victory? What did Washington do on the 1st of January, 1777?

1. Give an account of the movements of Washington and the battle of

front, leaving his camp-fires burning. Next morning (January 3) the British general was surprised to find the Americans gone. While wondering where they could be, he heard guns in the direction of *Princeton*. Washington had attacked the British at that post, and before Cornwallis could reach the scene had gained another brilliant victory. The loss of the British at Princeton was four hundred men, that of the Americans one hundred, among them General Mercer. Washington now marched to Morristown, where he established his headquarters, and from thence continued to send out expeditions, until he had recovered the greater part of New Jersey from the British.

2. The principal events of 1777 were the campaign of Washington in New Jersey and Pennsylvania and the campaign of Burgoyne in New York. Before treating of these events we will mention some affairs of minor importance. In April, General Tryon, with a large British force, made a raid into Connecticut, burned the town of Danbury, destroyed the supplies collected there, and committed many depredations. On their return they were attacked by the militia, and lost nearly three hundred men. Soon after this, Colonel Meigs, with some Connecticut militia, destroyed twelve British vessels and a large quantity of supplies at Sag Harbor, on Long Island. He also took ninety prisoners. The militia lost none. In July, Major Barton, of Providence, with forty men, captured the British General Prescott, and carried him off as a prisoner. For this exploit Congress presented Major Barton with a sword and a colonel's commission. General Prescott was afterwards exchanged for General Charles Lee.

3. During the summer of 1777 the Congress adopted a flag for

Princeton. Where did Washington now establish his headquarters? What did he then do?

2. Give an account of Tryon's raid. What did Colonel Meigs with the Connecticut militia do soon after this? What did Major Barton, of Providence, do soon after this? What did Congress do on account of this? For whom was Prescott afterwards exchanged?

3. Describe the flag adopted by Congress in the summer of 1777. Who first gave the new flag to the breeze?

the United States. This was a flag having thirteen alternate stripes of red and white, and having thirteen white stars on a blue field, each star representing a sovereign, independent State. Commodore Paul Jones, who commanded a vessel named the *Ranger*, was the first to give the new flag to the breeze.

4. During this year several distinguished foreigners came over to America to aid the struggling patriots. These were the Marquis de La Fayette and the Baron de Kalb from France, Baron Steuben from Prussia, and General Kosciusko and Count Pulaski, two Polish noblemen. All these did good service for the American cause.

Washington's Campaign.

5. Washington, after taking up his winter-quarters at Morristown, spent the rest of the winter in recruiting his army. By May, 1777, he had a force of ten thousand men. The British, at New Brunswick, New Jersey, had thirty thousand men. The main object of Howe was to get possession of Philadelphia, but Washington had so impressed him with his skilful generalship, that Howe did not consider it safe to go by land, leaving Washington's army in his rear. So, by the end of June, the British evacuated New Jersey, and assembled their forces on Staten Island. One month later, Howe, leaving twelve thousand men under Clinton to hold New York, embarked eighteen thousand on transports and sailed to the head of Chesapeake Bay, and disembarked his troops at Elkton, in Maryland.

6. As soon as Washington knew that the British general was moving upon Philadelphia from the south, he put his army in motion to encounter the enemy. At Philadelphia he was joined

4. What distinguished foreigners came over to assist the patriots this year?

5. What did Washington's army number by May, 1777? How many had the British at New Brunswick, New Jersey? What was Howe's purpose? How many men did Howe leave to hold New York? With how many men did he sail to the head of the Chesapeake?

6. What did Washington do when he discovered the movements of the

by La Fayette, a young French nobleman, then only twenty years of age. Leaving Philadelphia, he pushed forward with his army, eleven thousand strong, and met the British on the 11th of September at Chadd's Ford, on the Brandywine Creek. Here a desperate battle occurred. The Americans, after making a gallant resistance, were compelled to give way before the superior numbers of the British. Count Pulaski and La Fayette both distinguished themselves in this battle. The latter was wounded, but not seriously. Washington now knew that he could not hold Philadelphia. Congress moved to Lancaster, and afterwards to York. The American army took position at Pottsgrove, on the Schuylkill, about eight miles above Philadelphia. Howe occupied the city on the 26th of September.

7. On the 4th of October, Washington made an attack on the British at *Germantown*, but after a severe conflict, which at first promised success, he was repulsed, with the loss of about twelve hundred men. Soon after this a British force under General Donop made an attack on a part of Washington's army at *Red Bank*, but were defeated with great loss, General Donop himself being among the slain. In the latter part of October the British captured *Forts Mifflin* and *Mercer*, which commanded the navigation of the Delaware, but the garrisons escaped.

8. Washington now took post at *Whitemarsh*. Early in December General Howe advanced with the design of attacking the Americans, but finding them strongly posted, he returned to Philadelphia without a battle.

During the winter the British took up their quarters in Philadelphia, where they were supplied with every luxury. The

enemy? By whom was he joined at Philadelphia? Give an account of the battle of Chadd's Ford or Brandywine and its consequences. Where did Congress go? When did Howe occupy Philadelphia?

7. Give an account of the battle of Germantown. Of Red Bank. What forts did the British capture in October? What of the garrisons?

8. What happened early in December? Where did the British spend the winter? Where did the Americans encamp?

Americans encamped at *Valley Forge*, sheltered only by rude huts and suffering the greatest hardships.

Burgoyne's Campaign.

9. The other grand campaign of 1777 was the invasion from Canada, supported by a movement up the Hudson from New York. The design of the British was to hold the line of the Hudson, and thus separate the New England from the Middle States. In the spring Burgoyne had landed in Canada with an army of seven thousand British regulars. This force he increased to ten thousand men by recruiting in Canada, and then advanced into New York State by way of Lake Champlain. The Americans, under Generals Schuyler and St. Clair, were obliged to retire before him. Ticonderoga and Crown Point were captured, and the Americans were forced back to the Mohawk River, near where it empties into the Hudson.

10. Burgoyne's advance from Ticonderoga to Fort Edward was very slow, because General Schuyler before retreating had felled trees and destroyed bridges along the roads by which the British had to advance. They did not reach Fort Edward until the 30th of July.

11. Burgoyne found it very difficult to haul supplies from Ticonderoga to Fort Edward. Hearing that there was a large quantity of stores at *Bennington*, in Vermont, he sent Colonel Baum with a large body of Hessians to seize them. Colonel John Stark with a force of "Green Mountain Boys" and New Hampshire militia immediately moved to meet this force. As the British came in sight Stark said to his men, "There are the red-coats; we must beat them to-day or Molly Stark's a widow!"

9. What was the other grand campaign of 1777? What was the design of the British? With how large a force did Burgoyne advance from Canada into New York? What were the Americans obliged to do? What forts were captured by the British?

10. What of Burgoyne's advance from Fort Ticonderoga to Fort Edward?

11. What did Burgoyne do to get supplies? Who advanced to meet the

Baum's detachment was totally defeated, but a fresh body of British troops came up and the battle was renewed. At the critical moment Colonel Warner came up with reinforcements to the Americans, and the British were completely routed, with the loss of seven hundred men, most of them prisoners. The American loss was one hundred. This battle occurred on the 16th of August.

12. The defeat of the British at Bennington delayed Burgoyne nearly a month. Another event which added to his embarrassment was the defeat of St. Leger. This officer had been despatched to the Mohawk Valley, by way of Oswego, with seven hundred rangers, to overrun the country and call out the Indians and Tories, after which he was to join Burgoyne at Albany. He met with little resistance until he reached *Fort Schuyler*, now Rome, in New York. His force had now been augmented by one thousand Tories and Indians. With this force he besieged Fort Schuyler. General Herkimer, who advanced with a body of militia to the assistance of the fort, was defeated and slain; but General Arnold, who was sent by General Schuyler, raised the siege by a cunning stratagem. He pardoned a half-witted Tory, who had been condemned to the gallows, on condition that he would make the British believe that a large force of Americans was advancing against them. The Tory played his part well. Rushing into the camp of the besiegers as if pursued, and showing his coat full of bullet-holes, he created such a panic among the Indians and Tories that they were soon in full flight. St. Leger was forced to retreat into Canada.

13. These successes encouraged the Americans greatly. Re-

enemy? When the British came in sight, what did Stark say to his men? Describe the battle of Bennington.

12. What was the effect of the battle of Bennington? What added to the embarrassment of Burgoyne? What was St. Leger expected to accomplish? With what resistance did he meet? By what had his force been augmented? What of General Herkimer? Relate the stratagem of General Arnold and its success.

cruits kept pouring in, and the army was rapidly increased. In August the army was placed under the command of General Gates. He took up a position at *Stillwater*, and resolved to check the progress of the invaders at *Bemis Heights*, which were fortified by Kosciusko. Here, on the 19th of September, was fought the first battle of Stillwater. Morgan and his riflemen and Arnold especially distinguished themselves on the side of the Americans. The battle was indecisive. On the 7th of October the second battle of *Stillwater* was fought, and the British were defeated with great loss. Among them was General Frazer, a gallant and a skilful officer. On the American side Arnold performed prodigies of valor, and towards its close fell, severely wounded. It is a pity that Arnold had not died on Bemis Heights, for then his name would have been one of the most glorious in the annals of the Revolution.

14. Burgoyne now attempted to retreat to Fort Edward; but the Americans advanced so rapidly that they cut off his retreat. Hemmed in on every side by an army of thirteen thousand men, his own force reduced to less than six thousand, many of them unable to fight, and with his camp filled with the wounded and dying, no alternative was left but surrender. The terms of surrender had been agreed upon, when Burgoyne received news that General Clinton had taken Forts Montgomery and Clinton and was advancing up the river. Burgoyne now felt like reconsidering, but Gates, with his victorious army in battle array, demanded an immediate answer, and Burgoyne had to yield. Accordingly,

13. What was the effect of these successes? How was the American army increased? Under whom was the army placed in August? What did Gates do? What took place at Bemis Heights on the 19th of September? Who especially distinguished themselves on the side of the Americans? What was the result? Describe the second battle of Stillwater.

14. What prevented Burgoyne's retreat to Fort Edward? How large now was the American army? To what was Burgoyne's force reduced? What news reached Burgoyne just after terms of surrender had been agreed upon? How did Burgoyne now feel? What forced him to yield? How large was the army which he surrendered? Where and when did this occur?

he surrendered his army of five thousand seven hundred and ninety-one men. This was near *Saratoga*, on the 17th of October, 1777.

15. The news of this great victory was hailed everywhere in the States with transports of joy. The forts that had been captured by Sir Henry Clinton were immediately abandoned, and that officer returned to New York. Ticonderoga and all the other posts on the northern frontier were again occupied by the Americans. A new impetus was given to enlistments, and Washington's thinned ranks began to fill up.

16. We will now return to Washington, whom we left in camp at Valley Forge. This was to the army under his immediate command the gloomiest period of the war. They were sheltered by rude huts, were poorly clad, ill fed, and unpaid. They were, moreover, discouraged by their defeats. A plot was gotten up in Congress to remove Washington from the chief command and put Gates in his place. This plot has been called the *Conway cabal*. But these efforts to injure Washington utterly failed, and met with the contempt which they deserved. Congress and the country knew that Washington's failure to defeat the enemy was due to the fact that he as commander-in-chief had left many of his best officers and troops in New York to oppose Burgoyne; for it was far more essential to the cause of freedom that Burgoyne's expedition should be defeated than that Philadelphia should be saved.

17. While in the camp at Valley Forge, *Baron Steuben*, a Prussian officer, who had distinguished himself in the wars of Frederick the Great, rendered great service by helping Washington to reorganize the army and by introducing a uniform system of drill and tactics.

15. What of the news of this victory? What were its effects?

16. What was the condition of Washington's army at Valley Forge? Give an account of the Conway cabal. What of these efforts to injure Washington?

17. What of Baron Steuben?

CHAPTER V.

THE ALLIANCE WITH FRANCE AND OTHER EVENTS OF 1778.

1. THE most important event which resulted from the capture of Burgoyne was the *French alliance*. Ever since the conquest of Canada by England France had cherished feelings of revenge. In 1776, Silas Deane was sent to France to urge an alliance. But France was not then prepared to act openly, though she did secretly furnish arms and supplies. After the Declaration of Independence Congress sent Benjamin Franklin as minister to France. When the news of Burgoyne's surrender reached France the king, Louis XVI., hesitated no longer. On the 6th of February, 1778, the French government acknowledged the independence of the United States, and formed a treaty of alliance with them. This treaty was signed on the part of the United States by Benjamin Franklin, Silas Deane, and Arthur Lee. The treaty was ratified by Congress on the 4th of May following.

2. Alarmed by the surrender of Burgoyne and the danger of a French alliance, the British government had sent *commissioners* to America, who were authorized to offer all that the Americans had asked if they would only return to their allegiance to the British crown. But Congress rejected the proposal. The people of the United States would now be satisfied with nothing less than absolute independence. Soon after the rejection of this proposal Congress received news of the consummation of the alliance with France.

1. What was the most important result of the capture of Burgoyne? What of Silas Deane and Benjamin Franklin? What was the effect of the news of Burgoyne's surrender? What did the French government now do? What else can you say of the treaty?

2. What did the British government now do? Why did Congress reject the proposal?

3. As the spring drew near the condition of Washington's army was much improved. It had been reinforced by four thousand troops of the victorious army which had captured Burgoyne, and Washington was now able to take the field with forces about equal to those of his adversary. In April France sent out a fleet, under D'Estaing, to blockade the British fleet in the Delaware, while Washington intended to operate against the enemy by land.

4. Sir Henry Clinton was now commander-in-chief of the British forces in Philadelphia, Sir William Howe having resigned. Fearing lest his army might be captured if he waited until the French fleet should arrive in the Delaware, he prepared to evacuate Philadelphia. Accordingly, the British fleet in the Delaware sailed for New York, carrying the greater part of the baggage and stores. General Clinton then abandoned Philadelphia, and retreated across New Jersey with his army, numbering twelve thousand men. Washington started in pursuit with a force about equal in number.

5. Washington overtook the retreating enemy at *Monmouth* on the 28th of June, 1778. General Charles Lee, commanding the van of the American army, was ordered to make an immediate attack. He did so, but being pressed by the British regulars, ordered a retreat. La Fayette, who looked upon Lee's conduct with suspicion, sent a messenger to Washington, urging him to hurry up. Washington hastened to the scene of action with the main body, reproved Lee sharply, restored order, and drove the British back. The battle then lasted until night. The advantage was rather on the side of the Americans, their loss being two hundred and thirty, and that of the British five hundred. Washington intended to renew the battle in the morning,

3. What was the condition of Washington's army as the spring drew near? How had it been reinforced? What did France do in April?

4. Why did Clinton prepare to evacuate Philadelphia? What did the British fleet do? What did Clinton and Washington do?

5. Describe the movements of the Americans and the battle of *Monmouth*. Why did not Washington renew the battle? Where did the British army

but Clinton did not feel like risking another engagement, and retreated during the night. The British army proceeded to Sandy Hook, and from thence sailed to New York. General Charles Lee was court-martialed for his conduct in this battle, and also for an insolent letter which he wrote to Washington the day after the fight. He was sentenced to be suspended from his command for one year. He never returned to the army afterwards. A noteworthy incident of the battle of Monmouth was the conduct of Molly Pitcher, the wife of one of the American cannoneers. During the thickest of the fight she busied herself in carrying water to the soldiers. Seeing her husband fall dead at his gun, she sprang to the piece, and served it so well that the next day she was appointed sergeant. She ever afterwards was called by the soldiers Captain Molly.

6. When Washington found that the British had retreated he pressed on in pursuit, but was not able to overtake them. After the return of the enemy to New York the American army took position at White Plains until they went into winter-quarters at Middlebrook, in New Jersey.

7. Early in July the French fleet arrived with four thousand troops on board. An attack was now planned upon the British garrison at Newport, in Rhode Island. D'Estaing was to attack by sea with the French fleet, and General Sullivan, assisted by Generals Greene and La Fayette, with an army of ten thousand men, took charge of the movement by land. Soon after the siege commenced a British fleet approached, and D'Estaing sailed out to meet them, but a severe storm arose, and separated the combatants. Soon after, the French fleet was obliged to go to Boston for repairs. Sullivan then raised the siege and retired. The

go? What is said of General Charles Lee? Relate the incident of Molly Pitcher.

6. What did Washington and the American army do?

7. What happened early in July? What attack was now planned? What caused the siege to fail? What was the French fleet obliged to do? What of the affair at Quaker Hill?

British followed, and attacked him near Quaker Hill, but were repulsed.

8. In July a party of Tories and Indians, led by Colonel John Butler, came into the *Valley of Wyoming*, in Pennsylvania, defeated the small force opposed to them, captured Fort Wyoming, slaughtered the garrison after its surrender, and massacred men, women, and children.

9. In November *Cherry Valley*, in New York, suffered like atrocities at the hands of a body of Tories and Indians led by Brant, a noted Mohawk chief.

10. The French fleet, after refitting at Boston, sailed for the West Indies. The British fleet, in order to protect British possessions in that quarter, followed soon after. Clinton now resolved to transfer the war to the South, where the army would be nearer the fleet.

11. In November Clinton sent two thousand men, under Lieutenant-Colonel Campbell, and a fleet, under Admiral Hyde Parker, against *Savannah*, in Georgia. Savannah was defended by nine hundred American troops, commanded by General Robert Howe. On the 29th of December the British advanced to the attack. The Americans fought bravely, but were overpowered by the superior numbers of the enemy, and after suffering a loss of nearly two-thirds of their number they abandoned Savannah and crossed over into South Carolina.

8. Give the account of the massacre of Wyoming.

9. Relate what happened in Cherry Valley.

10. Describe the movements of the French and British fleets. What did Clinton now resolve to do?

11. What did Clinton do in November? What was the result of the attack?

CHAPTER VI.

EVENTS OF 1779.

1. EARLY in January, 1779, General Prevost, advancing from Florida, with nearly two thousand men, took the fort at *Sunbury*, and marching thence to Savannah, took command of the British forces. The lower part of Georgia was now completely overrun by the British and Tories.

2. The strength of the British force in the South was now between three and four thousand effective men, under the command of General Prevost. The American army was inferior in number to the British, and consisted almost entirely of militia. It was commanded by General Lincoln, a brave officer, who had won distinction in the Northern campaigns.

3. While General Lincoln was reorganizing his army and trying to get it ready for an active campaign, General Prevost sent Colonel Campbell against Augusta, which town he occupied on the 1st of February, 1779. Another expedition was sent to take possession of Port Royal Island, in South Carolina, but the British were defeated by General Moultrie with considerable loss.

4. The British expected to be joined by large numbers of Southern Tories. A body of Tories eight hundred strong did rise, and, under Colonel Boyd, set out to join the British force at Augusta, pillaging and plundering the property of the patriots on their way.

1. What happened early in January, 1779?

2. What was now the strength of the British force in the South? What can you say about the American army? By whom was it commanded?

3. While General Lincoln was reorganizing his army, what did General Prevost do? What was the result of an expedition to take possession of Port Royal Island?

4. What did the British expect? What did a body of Tories do? Give an

At *Kettle Creek*, in Wilkes County, Georgia, on the 14th of February, they were attacked by four hundred Carolina and Georgia militia, led by Colonels Andrew Pickens and Elijah Clarke, and were totally defeated, with the loss of one hundred and fifty men. The loss of the Americans was thirty-two killed and wounded. Soon after this Colonel Campbell was ordered by General Prevost to retire from Augusta. The British retreated to Hudson's Ferry, about fifty miles above Savannah.

5. Encouraged by these successes, General Lincoln sent General Ashe to take position at *Brier Creek*, near where it empties into the Savannah. Ashe had two thousand men under his immediate command, and two thousand more within supporting distance. General Ashe proved himself to be incompetent. On the 3d of March he was surprised by General Prevost and defeated, with the loss of three hundred and forty killed, wounded, and prisoners, while the loss of the enemy was small. By this defeat the plans of Lincoln were frustrated, and the British conquest of that portion of Georgia lying below Augusta was made complete for the time.

6. General Lincoln did not give up hope of driving the British out of Georgia. By the middle of April his army numbered five thousand men. On the 23d of April he set out at the head of four thousand men, intending to enter Georgia at Augusta, and left one thousand under General Moultrie, to watch the movements of the enemy. As soon as General Prevost heard of Lincoln's advance he moved upon Charleston, in South Carolina, by rapid marches, forcing Moultrie to retreat before him. Lincoln was compelled by this movement to abandon his enterprise

account of the defeat of the Tories at *Kettle Creek*. What happened soon after this battle? To what point did the British retreat?

5. On account of these successes, what did General Lincoln do? What was the strength of the force under Ashe? Give the account of Ashe's defeat on the 3d of March. What was the effect of the defeat at *Brier Creek*?

6. What was the strength of Lincoln's army by the middle of April? What did he do on the 23d of April? What did Prevost then do? What did this

and hasten to the defence of Charleston. On Lincoln's approach Prevost withdrew. A body of Carolina troops made an attack on the British at Stono Ferry on the 20th of June, but were repulsed with considerable loss. Shortly afterwards the British established a post at Beaufort, in South Carolina, but the main body of their army returned to Savannah. The weather now being very hot and the season unhealthy, both armies refrained from active operations until September.

7. Meanwhile, at the North several operations of secondary importance were carried on by both the American and British armies. In February, General Tryon, the last royal governor of Connecticut, destroyed the salt-works at Horse Neck, in Connecticut, and plundered the town. It was at this place that General Putnam performed a remarkable feat. He was on the point of being captured, when, seeing no other means of escape, he rode down a precipitous descent called the Stone Steps, over which the British dared not follow him.

8. In May the enemy made raids into Virginia, and destroyed much property, both public and private, in Norfolk, Portsmouth, and the neighboring country. In New York State during this same month General Clinton himself conducted an expedition up the Hudson. On the 31st of May he captured Stony Point, and on the 1st of June Verplanck's Point, taking their garrisons prisoners of war. He left British garrisons in both forts, and returned to New York. In July, General Tryon led a second plundering expedition into Connecticut, and burned East Haven, Fairfield, and Norwalk, plundered New Haven, and ravaged the coasts of the State generally.

9. On the 15th of July occurred one of the most brilliant

force Lincoln to do? What did Prevost do on Lincoln's approach? What happened at Stono Ferry? What did the British do shortly afterwards?

7. What happened at Horse Neck?

8. What happened in Virginia in May? What happened in New York during the same month? What places did General Clinton capture? What did General Tryon do in Connecticut in July?

exploits of the war. This was the recapture of *Stony Point* by the Americans. This point was considered by Washington to be of considerable importance. He therefore sent General Anthony Wayne to recover it. Wayne made a night attack, and carried the fort at the point of the bayonet. The American loss was nearly one hundred men, that of the British, six hundred in killed, wounded, and prisoners. The Americans destroyed the works and returned to their camp.

10. On the 19th of July a body of Americans led by Major Henry Lee surprised a British garrison at *Paulus Hook*, killing thirty and capturing one hundred and sixty.

11. In July a land and naval expedition went from Boston against a British force posted at Fort Castine on the Penobscot, but the expedition was a total failure.

12. In the same month Brant, with some Indians and Tories, committed many depredations and burned the village of Minisink, in New York. At one place they rushed into a school-house, killed the school-teacher, and, though they spared the girls, killed several of the boys. Several other atrocities were committed by them.

13. To put a stop to the atrocities of the Indians, General Sullivan was sent against them at the head of five thousand men. He attacked the Indians under Brant, Johnson, and Butler on the site of the present city of Elmira, and completely routed them, after which he laid waste the Indian country as far as the Genesee River, which empties into Lake Ontario. The effect of these defeats on the Indians was such that they gave up all thoughts of further war.

14. We will now return to operations in the South. On the 9th of September, Count D'Estaing appeared near *Savannah* with

9. Give an account of the recapture of *Stony Point* by the Americans.

10. Give an account of the American success at *Paulus Hook*.

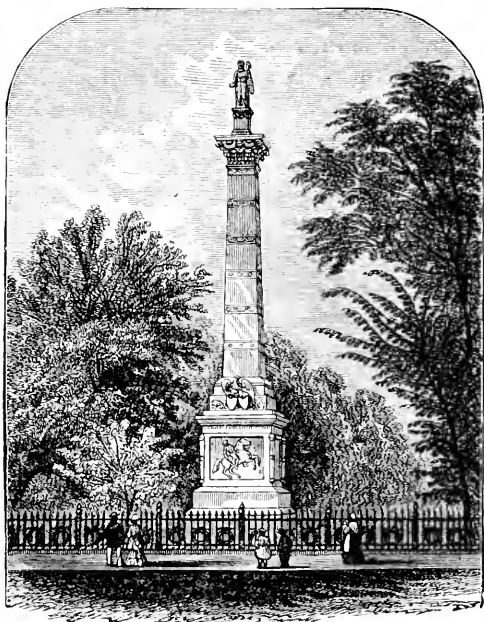
11. What of the expedition from Boston in July?

12. What happened at Minisink, New York, during the same month?

13. Give an account of Sullivan's victory over the Indians and its effect.

14. What happened on the 9th of September? After Lincoln had effected

a French fleet having on board six thousand troops. Lincoln moved up and effected a junction with the French, and by the middle of the month laid siege to Savannah. While the allied forces were in front of Savannah, Captain John White, of the Georgia line, with but a few followers, captured by a skilful strat-



PULASKI MONUMENT, SAVANNAH.

agem five British vessels, one hundred and thirty stand of arms, and one hundred and eleven British soldiers. The British could not have stood a long siege in Savannah, but D'Estaing became impatient and insisted upon an immediate assault. On the 9th

a junction with the French, what did the allied forces do? Relate the exploit of Captain John White. Could the British have stood a long siege? Why, then, was an assault made? What was the result of the assault made

of October the assault was gallantly made by the allied armies, but they were repulsed with the loss of nearly eleven hundred men. Among the slain were Count Pulaski, the noble Pole, and the gallant Sergeant Jasper. In Monterey Square, in the city of Savannah, there stands an elegant monument erected in honor of Count Pulaski. Though no monument has ever been reared to Jasper, one of the squares in Savannah bears his name, and about two miles from the city is the Jasper Spring, so called to commemorate one of his daring exploits. Here on one occasion, assisted by Newton, another gallant sergeant, Jasper rescued from a British guard an American prisoner who was being carried to Savannah for execution. After the disastrous repulse of the allied armies, as Jasper lay dying, he said to Major Horry, who called to see him (referring to his exploit at the spring), "Should you ever see Jones, his wife, and son, tell them that Jasper is gone, but that the remembrance of that battle which he fought for them brought a secret joy into his heart when it was about to stop its motion forever."

15. After the repulse at Savannah the allied armies raised the siege, the French sailed to the West Indies, and the disappointed Lincoln returned with his army to Charleston.

16. During the summer of 1779 the American commissioners at Paris fitted out a small squadron and placed it under the command of Commodore Paul Jones, a Scotch-American and a man of great daring. In September, while cruising off the coast of Scotland in his ship, the *Bon Homme Richard*, he fell in with the British ship *Serapis*, and after one of the most desperate sea-fights on record, captured her. His own vessel was so badly damaged that he transferred his men to his prize, and scarcely had he done so, when the *Bon Homme Richard* went down.

on the 9th of October? Who were among the slain? How has Pulaski's memory been honored? Tell what is said of Jasper and his exploits.

15. What did the allied armies do after the failure of the assault, and where did they go?

16. What was done by the American commissioners at Paris during the summer of 1779? Relate Paul Jones's fight with the British ship of war.

17. The year 1779 closed in gloom. The hopes founded on the French alliance had not been realized. The several schemes of co-operation had failed. The American troops were poorly provided for and suffered greatly. The finances of the country were in a bad condition. Congress had been obliged to resort to bills of credit, issued from time to time in denominations of from one to twenty dollars, on pledge of the public faith for their



SPECIMENS OF CONTINENTAL BILLS.

redemption in gold or silver. This currency at first passed for its face value, but as its issue increased with enormous rapidity, with little or no prospect of its ever being paid, it finally depreciated so that at last it became absolutely worthless. On the other hand, Britain seemed greater than ever. Though Spain had joined her enemies, she resolved on putting forth still

17. How did the year 1779 close? What of the hopes founded on the French alliance? What of the American soldiers? What of the finances? What nation had joined the enemies of Britain? What did Parliament determine to do for the next year?

greater efforts. Parliament determined for the next year to enlist eighty-five thousand seamen and thirty-five thousand land troops in addition to those already in service.

CHAPTER VII.

EVENTS OF 1780.

1. As soon as Sir Henry Clinton heard that the French fleet had left the American coast, he resolved to lead an expedition himself for the reduction of South Carolina. He accordingly withdrew the British garrison from Newport, thus leaving Rhode Island free of the enemy, and after leaving a strong force to hold New York City, he embarked five thousand of his best troops, and on the 26th of December set sail for the South, under the convoy of Admiral Arbuthnot.

2. On the 11th of February, 1780, he landed on John's Island, near Charleston. The condition of South Carolina at this time was exceedingly unfavorable. The State was poorly provided with the means of defence; the Tories and Indians harassed the inhabitants of the border counties, and the army under Lincoln was too small to offer an effective resistance. When Lincoln heard of the advance of the British upon Charleston, his first impulse was to abandon the city, but the inhabitants so earnestly implored him to remain that he did so, trusting to the arrival of reinforcements which had been promised him. The reinforcements never came, and Lincoln's army was hemmed in and besieged in Charleston by Clinton,

1. What did Clinton do when he heard that the French fleet had left the American coast? With how many men did he sail for the South?

2. Where did he land February 11, 1780? State the condition of South Carolina at this time. What of the army under Lincoln? Why did Lincoln remain in Charleston? Did the expected reinforcements come? How was Clinton's army increased?

whose army was soon increased to eight thousand by the arrival of three thousand additional troops from New York under Cornwallis.

3. *The siege of Charleston* lasted eight weeks. A force which had been assembled under General Huger for the relief of the city was surprised and defeated at Monk's Corner by fourteen hundred British troops under Webster, Tarleton, and Ferguson. There being no hope of relief Fort Moultrie surrendered on the 6th of May, and on the 12th Lincoln was forced to surrender Charleston, and with it his army, numbering nearly two thousand regular troops and between two and three thousand militia.

4. In order to secure his conquests Clinton sent out three detachments into the interior, one under Cornwallis, which occupied Camden; a second, under Colonel Cruger, to Ninety-Six; and a third, under Colonel Browne, to Augusta. Clinton also proclaimed a truce, and offered pardon to all who would take British protection. Great numbers of South Carolinians and Georgians, seeing their States completely overrun by the British, and despairing of assistance from the States north of them, accepted the terms on condition of not being compelled to take up arms against their countrymen. The patriot leaders in Carolina and Georgia fled with the small bands, which followed them, into North Carolina, and waited for a favorable opportunity to return into their respective States.

5. Clinton thinking his conquest complete, and congratulating himself on having reannexed two provinces to the British crown, sailed for New York, leaving Cornwallis in command. Cornwallis left Lord Rawdon in command at Camden and took up his

3. Give an account of the siege and surrender of Charleston. How large was the surrendered army?

4. What did Clinton do to secure his conquests? To what place did these detachments go? What else did Clinton do? What did great numbers of the people do? What of the patriot leaders in Carolina and Georgia?

5. What did Clinton do now? Where did Cornwallis take up his headquarters? How were the people treated by the British commander?

headquarters at Charleston. The British commander broke faith with those who had surrendered, imprisoned some of the best citizens of Charleston, and seized their property. He allowed British troopers to traverse the country burning houses, destroying crops, and insulting the inhabitants. He endeavored to force those who had taken protection to enlist in the British service and bear arms against their countrymen.

6. By such treatment the people were roused to resistance, and flocked to the standards of such leaders as Sumter, Marion, and Pickens, of South Carolina, and Clarke, of Georgia.

7. All these leaders in Carolina and Georgia kept up a constant warfare upon the posts of the enemy, and broke up the bands of the Tories wherever they appeared. Colonel Henry Lee, in his *Memoirs of the War in the Southern Department*, says of them: "Their combats were, like those of the Parthians, sudden and fierce." Never despairing of the cause of their country, they at no time relaxed their efforts until the final great triumph of the American arms.

8. In July the struggling patriots were encouraged by the news that Gates, the victor of Saratoga, was advancing to their assistance. Lord Rawdon, the British commander at Camden, perceiving his danger, with Gates advancing in front and with Sumter threatening him on his left and Marion on his right, called in his outposts, brought reinforcements from Ninety-Six, and notified Cornwallis of his danger. That general hastened up from Charleston, united his forces with Lord Rawdon, and took command.

9. General Gates, confidently looking forward to victory, pushed on, contrary to the advice of his officers, with the intention of surprising the enemy at Camden. Lord Cornwallis was himself medi-

6. What was the result of such treatment?

7. What did all these leaders do? What does Colonel Henry Lee say of them?

8. How were the struggling patriots encouraged in July? What did Lord Rawdon, the British commander at Camden, do? What did Cornwallis do?

9. With what intention did Gates hasten forward? What was Cornwallis

tating a surprise of Gates's army, and set out from Camden for that purpose on the night of August 15. The armies stumbled on each other at *Sander's Creek* after midnight, and at dawn of the 16th the battle began. The Americans were utterly defeated, with the loss of more than a thousand men, besides all their artillery, ammunition, and supplies. Among the slain was the brave Baron De Kalb. Gates, with the fugitives, escaped to Hillsborough, North Carolina. The loss of the British was something over three hundred.

10. To add to the misfortunes of the patriots, Sumter, with his force of eight hundred men, was surprised two days afterwards at *Fishing Creek* by Colonel Tarleton, utterly defeated, and his men dispersed, losing their artillery and stores, and also the spoils and prisoners which had been taken from the enemy by Sumter a few days before the battle of Camden. Marion and his men, issuing at times from the swamps of the Pedee, alone maintained hostilities in South Carolina.

11. Soon after his victory at Camden, Cornwallis sent Lieutenant-Colonel Tarleton to operate east of the Catawba, and Lieutenant-Colonel Ferguson to assemble the Tories among the mountains of North and South Carolina.

12. While Ferguson was on his way, Colonel Elijah Clarke, the bold Georgia partisan, with seven hundred men, laid siege to Augusta, which was held by a British garrison under Colonel Thomas Browne. Clarke pushed the siege vigorously, and was on the point of capturing the garrison, when a fresh body of the enemy under Colonel Cruger came up, and he was obliged to retire. Ferguson was ordered by Cornwallis to intercept Clarke's

himself meditating? Give an account of the battle of Sander's Creek, near Camden.

10. What added to the misfortunes of the patriots? Who alone maintained hostilities in South Carolina?

11. What two detachments did Cornwallis send out soon after his victory at Camden?

12. While Ferguson was on his way, what did Colonel Elijah Clarke do? Describe Clarke's attack on the British garrison at Augusta. What did

command, if possible. He therefore drew near to the mountains, intending to fall upon Clarke as soon as he reached his vicinity. Here he heard that a new enemy was approaching him for the purpose of proceeding on the same enterprise in which Clarke had just failed. This new foe was a large band of riflemen, about three thousand strong, gathered mostly from Kentucky (at that time a western district of Virginia) and North Carolina, under Colonels Campbell, Cleveland, Williams, Sevier, and Shelby. Hearing of Clarke's repulse and Ferguson's expedition, they abandoned their enterprise against Browne at Augusta, and turned on Ferguson.

13. Realizing his danger, Ferguson selected a strong position on *King's Mountain*, and awaited the advance of the Americans. For fear that Ferguson would escape, about sixteen hundred of the bold riflemen mounted their swiftest horses, and hurried forward to meet the enemy. On the 7th of October they came up with Ferguson. Dismounting from their horses, they formed in three divisions, and ascended the mountain in different directions. A desperate battle ensued. Ferguson was slain, and three hundred of his men killed and wounded. The remaining eight hundred, consisting of British regulars and Tories, surrendered. The American loss was but twenty, among these Colonel Williams, of South Carolina, who, with his adherents, had joined the expedition just before the battle. Fifteen hundred stand of arms fell into the hands of the victors. Although Clarke had failed to reduce Augusta, his expedition had led to the destruction of Ferguson's force.

14. Cornwallis, meanwhile, had occupied Charlotte after a gal-

Cornwallis order Ferguson to do? While Ferguson was trying to do this, what did he hear? What was this new foe?

13. Realizing his danger, what did Ferguson do? For fear that Ferguson would escape, what did the militia do? When did they come up with the enemy? Describe the battle of King's Mountain. What was the American loss? What fell into the hands of the victors?

14. What of Cornwallis meanwhile? What reasons prompted him to fall

lant but vain resistance by Colonel Davie and his North Carolinians, and was preparing to advance still farther when he heard of the defeat of Ferguson at King's Mountain. Being thus deprived of one-fourth of his army, and with his communications threatened by the activity of Sumter, Marion, and Pickens in South Carolina, he judged it best to retreat, and fell back to Camden, in South Carolina. Thus the effect of the battle of King's Mountain had been to compel Cornwallis to abandon his projected conquest of North Carolina. Another effect of this battle was to break up an invasion of Virginia by a British force of three thousand, under General Leslie, which depended for success upon the co-operation of Cornwallis.

15. Sumter had not remained idle after his defeat at Fishing Creek. By his energy and activity he soon collected his scattered followers and returned to his old work of harassing the enemy. On the 12th of November he was attacked at *Fishdam Ferry*, on Broad River, by Major Wemys; but the British were defeated and Wemys himself captured. On the 20th he was again attacked, by Colonel Tarleton, at *Blackstocks*, in Chester District. Fortune once more favored Sumter, and the British were repulsed.

16. In the North during this year no military event of importance occurred. About midsummer a French fleet, under Admiral de Ternay, arrived, having on board six thousand French troops, under Count de Rochambeau (rosh-awm-bo). This force had been sent out through the influence of La Fayette. They entered Newport, Rhode Island; but soon after a superior British fleet arrived and blockaded the French in Narraganset Bay. So nothing was accomplished by this force during 1780.

back to Camden, in South Carolina? What was one of the effects of the battle of King's Mountain? What was another effect?

15. Meanwhile, what of Sumter? Describe Sumter's victory at Fishdam Ferry. When, by whom, and where was he again attacked? With what result?

16. What of affairs in the North? What happened about midsummer? Through whose influence had this fleet been sent out? What prevented the fleet from accomplishing anything?

17. In September a disgraceful plot was discovered. General Arnold, who had been one of the bravest of the American officers, had formed a plan to betray *West Point*, on the Hudson, into the hands of the British. The motive which prompted Arnold thus to injure his country and cover his own name with infamy was a desire for revenge. While in command of Philadelphia, in 1778, he had acted badly, and had been court-martialed for his conduct, but was forgiven by Washington. In August, 1780, he was placed by Washington in command of the important post of West Point. Filled with the desire of revenge, he opened a correspondence with Clinton, in New York, and promised to deliver up the fortress in return for ten thousand pounds and a general's commission. Major André, a young British officer, who was sent by Clinton to arrange the plan with Arnold, was captured on his return journey by three New York militia-men, and in his boots were found papers containing proofs of Arnold's treachery. The American commander, to whom André was carried, incautiously allowed him to write to Arnold. Arnold fled to a British vessel and went down the river to Clinton, at New York. He received the promised reward. André was hung as a spy. To each of his captors, John Paulding, Isaac Van Wert, and David Williams, Congress voted a medal and a pension for life.

18. On the 20th of December of this year England declared war against Holland, because the Hollanders had given protection to American privateers, and had actually begun to negotiate a treaty with Congress.

17. What disgraceful plot was discovered in September? What motive prompted Arnold thus to disgrace himself? Why did he seek revenge? Of what post was he placed in command? Give an account of Arnold's treason. What befell André? When Arnold heard that André was captured, what did he do? What became of André? What did Congress do for each of his captors?

18. When did England declare war against Holland? What had the Dutch done?

CHAPTER VIII.

EVENTS OF 1781.

Campaign of Greene in the Carolinas.—The Final Campaign in Virginia.—Peace.

1. THE leading events of 1781 were the campaign in the Carolinas and the final campaign in Virginia. Before treating of these we will notice the condition of Washington's army in the winter of 1780 and 1781. The winter was severe, the soldiers were half clad and unpaid. On the 1st day of January, 1781, thirteen hundred troops of the Pennsylvania line left camp with the intention of marching to Philadelphia and demanding relief of Congress. At Princeton they were met by a committee from Congress, who satisfied their demands, whereupon they returned to their duty. Two British emissaries, who were sent to tamper with the discontented troops, were seized by them and delivered up to General Wayne, by whose order they were hung as spies. Soon after this some of the New Jersey troops mutinied, but the outbreak was forcibly suppressed by Washington. Congress now realized that something must be done. Taxes were levied, and money and supplies were purchased in Europe. Robert Morris, a wealthy merchant and banker of Philadelphia, was appointed financial agent of the government, and freely used his own money and credit to furnish supplies.

2. We will now speak of the campaign in the Carolinas. After the disastrous defeat of Gates at Camden, that general had

1. What was the condition of Washington's army in the winter of 1780 and 1781? Give an account of the mutiny in Washington's army. What was done with two British emissaries? What of some of the New Jersey troops? What was now done by Congress? What of Robert Morris?

2. What had General Gates done after his disastrous defeat near Camden?

retreated to Hillsborough, North Carolina, where he labored with unceasing zeal and diligence to repair the damage caused by his former rashness. The remains of his shattered army were collected, some recruits from Virginia arrived, and some companies of artillery were added to his force. The State authorities of North Carolina summoned to the field a division of militia under Generals Sumner and Davidson, to which was united a volunteer corps under Colonel Davie. The headquarters of the army were afterwards transferred to Charlotte.

3. On the 3d of December, 1780, General Nathaniel Greene arrived at Charlotte and took command. General Greene, who was a native of Rhode Island, had distinguished himself in all the campaigns of Washington's army, and when Congress determined to remove Gates from command of the army in the South, he was nominated by Washington as the most suitable person to be intrusted with the task of recovering South Carolina and Georgia from the British. Well did Greene prove that he merited the confidence reposed in him by the commander-in-chief.

4. Soon after Greene took command, Colonel William Washington, while on a scouting expedition with the cavalry, discovered that a body of Tories under Colonel Rudgley were stationed at a farm about twelve miles from Camden. Colonel Washington hastened forward to surprise them, but found that they had taken refuge in a barn surrounded by abatis, and safe from any attempt made by cavalry. The American officer then resorted to stratagem. He had the trunk of a tree shaped into the form of a cannon, and bringing it up in true military style, pretended to be getting ready to cannonade the barn. This was too much for

What was done to get his force ready for the field? What did the State authorities of North Carolina do? To what place were the headquarters of the army transferred?

3. Who took command of the army at Charlotte on the 3d of December, 1780? What can you say of Greene?

4. Relate the stratagem by which Colonel William Washington captured a party of Tories.

the Tories, and the whole party, one hundred in number, surrendered at discretion.

5. Though Greene's army was only about two thousand strong, yet he sent General Morgan in the direction of Ninety-Six, while he himself advanced, and took post at Cheraw. This placed Cornwallis between the two divisions of Greene's army. As he was about to march into North Carolina, and did not like to leave Morgan in his rear, he sent Colonel Tarleton after that officer, with instructions to push him. Morgan retreated to a place called the *Cowpens*, in Spartanburg District. Here, being joined by a large body of Carolina and Georgia militia under General Pickens, he resolved to await Tarleton's attack. On the 17th of January, Tarleton rushed to the attack, confident of victory. But instead of victory he met with a stunning defeat. Nearly three hundred of his men were killed and wounded, and five hundred were taken prisoners. The loss of the Americans was seventy, of whom only twelve were killed. All the enemy's artillery, eight hundred muskets, two standards, thirty-five baggage-wagons, and one hundred dragoon horses fell into the hands of the Americans. Tarleton himself barely escaped capture by Colonel Washington, who pursued him with the cavalry and wounded him slightly in the hand with his sword. Some time after this battle Colonel Tarleton was in the company of some Carolina ladies, and remarked to one of them, "I have been told that Colonel Washington is very illiterate, and can scarcely write his name." "Ah, colonel," replied the lady, "at least he can *make his mark*." Tarleton replied that he would like very much to see Colonel Washington. The sister of the lady who had just spoken instantly replied, "Had you looked behind you at the battle of Cowpens, colonel, you might have had that pleasure."

6. After Tarleton's defeat at Cowpens, Cornwallis advanced

5. What distribution did Greene make of his forces? How did this place Cornwallis? Give an account of the movements of Morgan and Tarleton. Describe the battle of the Cowpens. What of Tarleton himself? Relate the anecdote of Tarleton and the South Carolina ladies.

against Morgan with a large force, hoping to intercept that officer and defeat him before he could cross the Catawba. General Greene being aware of Cornwallis's intention, hastened to join Morgan, and sent word to Colonel Henry Lee, who, with his legion, had been assisting Marion in an expedition against Georgetown, to rejoin the main army with all haste. Two hours after Morgan crossed the Catawba, Cornwallis appeared on the opposite bank; but as it was night, he encamped, not doubting that he would be able to overtake Morgan in the morning. But during the night heavy rains fell and raised the river so that the British could not cross for two days. Meanwhile, Morgan continued his retreat in safety. On the 31st of January, Greene, escorted by a few dragoons, joined him and took the command. At the crossing of the Yadkin, Greene was closely pressed by the British, and again a sudden rise of the river checked the pursuit. It seemed as though Providence had specially interposed to save the American army. On the 7th of February, at Guilford Court-House, Greene met the main body of his army, which had marched by a different route; but feeling too weak to encounter Cornwallis, he continued his retreat across the Dan into Virginia. Cornwallis then gave up the pursuit, and took position at Hillsborough.

7. Greene remained in Virginia but a short while. Having received reinforcements, so that his army numbered nearly five thousand men, he returned into North Carolina and advanced to meet Cornwallis. Colonel Henry Lee, styled by the soldiers "Light-Horse Harry," in advance with a body of cavalry, fell in with a body of three hundred and fifty loyalists, and killed or captured the whole.

6. What did Cornwallis do after Tarleton's defeat? What did General Greene do? What prevented Cornwallis from intercepting Morgan at the crossing of the Catawba? When did Greene catch up with Morgan's force and take command? What happened at the crossing of the Yadkin? Where did Greene meet the main body of his army? Where did Greene retreat? What did Cornwallis then do?

7. When Greene's army had been increased by reinforcements to nearly five thousand men, what did he do? What did Colonel Henry Lee do?

8. On the 15th of March the armies of Greene and Cornwallis met at *Guilford Court-House*, and a bloody battle was fought. Cornwallis remained in possession of the field, and hence claimed the victory. Greene retired in order, and encamped several miles from the scene of action. The American loss was nearly four hundred; that of the British more than five hundred.

9. The possession of the battle-field was all that the British general gained by his victory. He was in a hostile country, had lost a great many men in battle and many from sickness, while the American army was growing stronger every day, and might soon be expected to make another attack. Three days after the battle, he began to retire towards Wilmington. When Greene heard of this retreat, he pursued Cornwallis as far as Deep River, and then discontinued the pursuit and marched into South Carolina.

10. Greene advanced near Camden, and took up a position at *Hobkirk's Hill*. Here he was attacked on the 25th of April by Lord Rawdon. At first it seemed that the Americans would gain the victory, but some of the troops misunderstanding an order of their officer, became confused, and Greene was finally compelled to yield the field to his adversary.

11. Rawdon was unable to derive any benefit from his victory, and was soon obliged to retreat to *Butaw Springs*. His retreat was caused by the fact that General Marion, with the Carolina militia, assisted by Colonel Lee, with a body of troops from Greene's army, had captured *Fort Watson*, and that *Forts Motte*, *Granby*, and *Orangeburg* would probably soon fall. Lord Rawdon, when he began his retreat, hoped to succor *Fort Motte*, but Lee and Marion were too quick for him. In connection with the

8. Give an account of the battle of *Guilford Court-House*, stating the result and the losses on both sides.

9. What was Cornwallis's condition after the battle? What did he do at the end of three days? When Greene heard of this, what did he do?

10. Where did Greene take up a position after his return into South Carolina? Give an account of the battle of *Hobkirk's Hill*.

11. What of Rawdon after the battle? How was Rawdon's retreat caused? What did Lord Rawdon hope when he began his retreat? Give an account

capture of Fort Motte an event occurred, which was only one of many, showing the noble and unselfish patriotism of the ladies of Carolina. A large new mansion, belonging to Mrs. Rebecca Motte, stood in the centre of the British fortifications. It was necessary that no time should be lost, for Rawdon was hourly expected to come to the relief of the fort, and the burning of that house would force a surrender. Colonel Lee, with considerable hesitation, made known the state of affairs to Mrs. Motte, who was living in a little cot near by, and had been very kind to the American officers. Seeing the agitation of Colonel Lee in making this statement, the noble lady instantly replied that she was delighted to be able to do such a service to her country. She then presented to Colonel Lee a bow and arrows with missive combustible matter, which she assured him would be the best thing to use for the purpose. With these the house was fired, and the British garrison forced to surrender.

12. After the retreat of Rawdon, General Greene advanced upon Ninety-Six with his main army, and sent Colonel Lee with his legion to operate against Augusta. When Lee reached *Augusta* he found that General Pickens and Colonel Clarke, with a considerable force of Carolina and Georgia militia, had already commenced a siege of the place. He united his force with theirs, and on the 5th of June the British garrison under Colonel Browne was forced to surrender.

13. Greene did not meet with like success at *Ninety-Six*, because Rawdon, having been reinforced, advanced to the relief of the besieged, and the Americans after failing in an assault retired. But a few days after, on account of the exposed position

of the capture of Fort Motte by Marion and Lee and the noble conduct of Mrs. Rebecca Motte.

12. What did General Greene do after the retreat of Rawdon? Whom did he send against Augusta? Give an account of the movements of the American leaders and the capture of the British garrison at Augusta.

13. Why did not Greene meet with like success at Ninety-Six? Why did Lord Rawdon order Cruger to abandon Ninety-Six and retire southward?

of Ninety-Six, Rawdon ordered Colonel Cruger to abandon the post and retire southward. All the upper portions of Georgia and South Carolina were now recovered from the British.

14. Rawdon now took position at Orangeburg, and Greene retired beyond the Santee to pass the sickly season in a healthier region.

15. Early in September, Greene resumed operations against the enemy, at that time commanded by Colonel Stewart. At *Eutaw Springs*, on the morning of the 8th of September, Greene commenced the attack. A severe battle was fought, in which both sides claimed the victory; the Americans, because they had driven the British from the battle-field back to their camp, and the British, because the Americans had been repulsed from the British camp and had retired to the place where the battle commenced. When we consider the effect of the battle we may safely class it as an American victory, for by it the British were forced to abandon all the up-country. They retreated during the night of the 9th, and from that time they held no places in Carolina or Georgia except Charleston and Savannah, and to these they were strictly confined.

16. The *campaign in Virginia* began in May, when Cornwallis reached Petersburg. It will be remembered that after the battle at Guilford Court-House Cornwallis retired to Wilmington, North Carolina. On the 25th of April he set out from Wilmington intending to conquer Virginia. When he reached Petersburg he found a British force under General Phillips stationed there. Previous to the arrival of Cornwallis the coasts of Virginia had been

What was the effect of the capture of Augusta and the abandonment of Ninety-Six?

14. What did Rawdon and Greene now do?

15. What was done early in September? Describe the battle of Eutaw Springs and its effects. From this time, what did they hold in Carolina and Georgia?

16. When did the campaign begin in Virginia? To what place had Cornwallis retired after the battle of Guilford? For what purpose did he set out from Wilmington on the 25th of April? What did he find when he reached

ravaged, first by the traitor Arnold in January, and by General Phillips in March. Their depredations had been somewhat checked by General La Fayette, but his force was too weak to oppose the enemy after the arrival of Cornwallis.

17. Soon after Cornwallis reached Petersburg he sent out detachments, which overran the country and destroyed much property. One of these detachments penetrated as far as Charlottesville, captured several members of the Virginia Legislature, and came near capturing the governor, Thomas Jefferson.

18. In June, Sir Henry Clinton became uneasy about an attack which he thought Washington was contemplating against New York, and sent orders to Cornwallis to take post near the sea, so that he might, if necessary, go to the assistance of the British army at that place.

19. Cornwallis accordingly proceeded to Yorktown, and began to construct fortifications. Gloucester Point, on the opposite side of the river, was held by Colonel Tarleton with a small body of British troops.

20. Washington had indeed intended, in concert with the French fleet, to attack Sir Henry Clinton in New York, but concluding that his chances for success would be better if he attacked Cornwallis, he abandoned his first intention, and resolved to march into Virginia. He manœuvred so as to lead Clinton to suppose that he still designed to attack New York, and that general did not find out his mistake until Washington had actually crossed the Delaware on his southward march.

21. As soon as Clinton discovered Washington's intention he

Petersburg? What had happened previous to his arrival? How had their depredations been somewhat checked?

17. What did Cornwallis do soon after reaching Petersburg? What did one of these detachments do?

18. What did Sir Henry Clinton become uneasy about in June? What orders did he send to Cornwallis?

19. Describe the movements of Cornwallis.

20. What had Washington intended? What did he conclude? How did he manœuvre? When did Clinton find out Washington's design?

immediately sent an expedition into Connecticut, under the traitor Arnold, hoping thereby to recall the American commander from his expedition against Cornwallis. Arnold acted with great barbarity in Connecticut. He burned New London, and his Hessians captured Fort Trumbull, which was abandoned on their approach, and carried Fort Griswold by storm, putting the greater part of the garrison to the sword.

22. These atrocities did not recall Washington from his purpose. He hastened his march southward, and by the 30th of September the combined armies of France and the United States had invested Yorktown and cut off all escape by land. The French fleet under the Count de Grasse blockaded the James and York Rivers, and cut off from Cornwallis all hope of escape by sea. The allied armies numbered sixteen thousand men, of whom seven thousand were French. The British army numbered about eight thousand men.

23. On the evening of the 9th of October, Washington opened his batteries on the British fortifications, on the 14th two redoubts were carried by assault, and on the 16th nearly one hundred pieces of artillery opened on their works, with such telling effect as to batter down the walls and silence nearly every cannon. On the night of the 16th, Cornwallis attempted to cross the York River with all his force, cut his way through the small force on the opposite side, and thus escape; but his plan totally failed. Nothing was now left him but surrender. The terms were arranged at *Moore's house*, near the American lines on York River, and on the 19th of October over seven thousand men laid down their arms. The British shipping in the harbor was surrendered to

21. What did Clinton do as soon as he discovered Washington's design? Give an account of Arnold's conduct in Connecticut.

22. Meanwhile, what did Washington do? What had happened by the 30th of September? What did the French fleet do? What did the allied armies number? What did the British army number?

23. Give an account of the progress of the siege. What happened on the night of the 16th of October? What was now left him? Where were the terms arranged? When did the surrender take place? How many men sur-

the French naval commander, the Count de Grasse. A large crowd from the surrounding country had gathered at *Yorktown* to witness the surrender, but Cornwallis, chagrined and mortified, feigned sickness, and sent his sword by General O'Hara. Washington directed that it should be delivered to General Lincoln, who eighteen months before had surrendered at Charleston. Five days after the surrender Sir Henry Clinton arrived at the mouth of the Chesapeake Bay with seven thousand troops to reinforce Cornwallis, but finding that he was too late, returned immediately to New York.

24. The news of this glorious victory spread rapidly throughout the country, and excited everywhere the wildest joy. All felt that the British power in America was broken, and that peace was near at hand. Congress appointed the 13th day of December as a day of thanksgiving.

25. After the surrender of Cornwallis the British troops were confined to the cities of New York, Charleston, and Savannah. George III., King of England, was obstinate, and was in favor of raising larger armies and continuing the war, but the people of England were determined that it should end. In March, 1782, the House of Commons passed a resolution that all should be considered as public enemies who should advise a continuance of the war. Lord North, the Prime Minister, was obliged to resign, and one was appointed who favored peace. Sir Henry Clinton was removed from command, and Sir Guy Carleton was appointed in his place, with instructions not to renew hostilities.

26. Negotiations for peace were now entered into. Five com-

rendered? To whom was the British shipping surrendered? Describe the surrender. What happened five days after the surrender?

24. What is said of the news of this victory? How did all feel? What did Congress do?

25. To what points were the British confined after this? What of George III., King of England? What of the people of England? What did the House of Commons do in March, 1782? What of Lord North? Who was appointed to command in America? With what instructions?

missioners were appointed on the part of the United States and five on the part of Great Britain. The American commissioners were John Adams, John Jay, Benjamin Franklin, Thomas Jefferson, and Henry Laurens. Jefferson was unable to serve. The commissioners met at Paris, and on the 30th of November, 1782, a provisional treaty of peace was signed. The final treaty was signed on the 3d of September, 1783. The first article of the treaty began as follows: "His Britannic Majesty acknowledges the said United States, viz., New Hampshire, Massachusetts Bay, Rhode Island and Providence Plantations, Connecticut, New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, Maryland, Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, and Georgia, to be free, sovereign, and independent States." The Mississippi was fixed as the boundary of the United States on the west and the Great Lakes as the boundary on the north. At the same time England made peace with France, Spain, and Holland, and ceded back to Spain her possessions of East and West Florida.

27. The last post in the United States held by the British was New York. This city was evacuated on the 25th of November, 1783. Savannah and Charleston had been abandoned the previous year.

26. How many commissioners were appointed to draw up a treaty of peace? Who were the American commissioners? What of Jefferson? Where and when did the commissioners meet, and what did they do? When was the final treaty signed? How does the first article of the treaty begin? What were fixed as the boundaries? With what other powers did England make peace? What did she cede back to Spain?

27. What was the last post in the United States held by the British? When was this city evacuated? When had Charleston and Savannah been evacuated?

CHAPTER IX.

THE FORMATION OF THE FEDERAL CONSTITUTION.—THE
ELECTION OF WASHINGTON AS PRESIDENT.

1. INDEPENDENCE was now achieved, and there was throughout the whole country a feeling of unbounded joy and enthusiasm at the glorious termination of the war. The people, however, did not realize at once all the blessings which they had hoped would follow the achievement of their independence. New troubles arose, which filled the minds of the most hopeful with gloomy forebodings for the future.

2. Some of the causes of these troubles were the state of the army and the destitute condition of the treasury and of the country at large. The States failed to pay the assessments laid upon them by Congress, and hence there was no money with which to pay the army. At length threats of violence arose in the ranks of the army at Newburgh, and it required all Washington's influence to prevent not only the men, but some of the officers, from resorting to violent means to obtain what was due them. Washington's address to the soldiers on this occasion was full of sentiments of the most exalted patriotism. Congress did all that it could to provide for the pressing wants of the army, which was kept together until after the evacuation of New York.

3. At the end of November the army was disbanded, and on the 4th of December Washington bade an affectionate farewell to

1. Did the people at once realize all the blessings which they had anticipated? What arose?

2. What were some of the causes of these troubles? Why did Congress have no money to pay the army with? What of the army at Newburgh? What of Washington's address to the soldiers on this occasion? What did Congress do?

3. What happened at the end of November? What did Washington do on

his officers. He then went to Annapolis, Maryland, where Congress was sitting, and on the 23d of December, when peace and quiet reigned throughout the land, resigned his commission as commander-in-chief of the armies of the United States.

4. A great source of trouble, and one which was felt everywhere, was the great public debt which had been contracted during the war. Some of this was due to citizens of the United States, and a large amount to Holland and France. In order to meet the interest on this debt heavy taxation was required, and this bore most heavily upon the laboring classes. In Massachusetts there resulted from this heavy taxation a rebellion styled from the name of the leader in it Shays's Rebellion. This was suppressed by the firmness of Governor Bowdoin and the activity of General Lincoln. No one was punished for participation in it.

5. In 1786 the Legislature of Virginia recommended a convention of the States to regulate commerce. Only five States, New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, and Virginia, responded to this call. The convention met at Annapolis, in Maryland, on the 11th of September, 1786, but did nothing except to recommend a general convention of all the States to assemble at Philadelphia in May, 1787, for the purpose of revising the Articles of Confederation. On the 21st of February, 1787, Congress recommended the assembling of the proposed convention. It was evident that unless the Articles of Confederation could be amended in some way the Union could not be preserved.

6. To this call for a convention all the States responded except Rhode Island. On the 14th of May, 1787, the convention met

the 4th of December? What did he do at Annapolis, Maryland, on the 23d of December?

4. What was a great source of trouble? To whom was this debt due? What resulted in Massachusetts from the heavy taxation? How was it suppressed?

5. What did the Virginia Legislature recommend in 1786? How many States responded? Where and when did the convention meet? What did it recommend? What did Congress do? What was evident?

6. What States responded to this call? When and where did the conven-

in the city of Philadelphia. It consisted of some of the ablest statesmen that ever assembled in America. George Washington was elected president of the convention.

7. The great evil under the Articles of Confederation was that many of the laws of the Union applied only to States, and did not act directly upon the people. When Congress enacted that certain amounts of money should be raised by the States respectively, the collection of the amounts depended upon the subsequent action of the State Legislatures. In fact, the United States consisted of thirteen independent republics, bound together by a loose bond of union. They were, as Washington expressed it, "One nation to-day and thirteen to-morrow."



WASHINGTON.

8. As a remedy for this state of affairs Thomas Jefferson, at that time minister to France, proposed, in a letter to Madison, that the laws of the Union should within certain prescribed limits act directly upon individuals. He also proposed that the powers conferred upon the Federal government should be divided into three departments, viz.: Legislative, Executive, and Judiciary. Jefferson's advice was adopted. The convention was in session four months, during which time several plans were discussed. Several times serious differences of opinion arose which threatened to defeat the object for which the convention

tion meet? Of what did it consist? Who was elected president of the convention?

7. What was the great evil under the Articles of Confederation? On what did the collection of amounts enacted by Congress depend? Of what did the United States consist? What did Washington say they were?

8. What did Thomas Jefferson propose? What else did he propose? Was his advice adopted? How long was the convention in session? What of dif-

had been called. It was on one of these occasions that Dr. Franklin, a delegate from Pennsylvania, recommended that the daily sessions be opened with prayer. "If," said he, "a sparrow cannot fall to the ground without God's notice, is it possible that an empire can rise without his aid?"

9. The result of the four months' labors of the convention was the formation of the Constitution of the United States. According to this instrument the legislative or law-making power of the United States is vested in a Congress, which consists of two houses, the Senate and the House of Representatives. Representatives are apportioned among the several States according to their population, and are elected by the people directly. Each State has two Senators elected by the Legislature. The Executive of the United States is styled President. Before a bill can become a law it must be passed by both the Senate and the House of Representatives, and receive the sanction of the President. If the President vetoes or refuses to approve the bill, it cannot become a law unless passed again by a two-thirds majority of both houses.

The judicial power of the United States is vested in one supreme court, and in such inferior courts as the Congress may from time to time ordain and establish.

10. Such powers were delegated by the States as would allow to the Federal government the right to control in matters pertaining to the general interests of all the States. The States reserved to themselves the right to manage their domestic affairs in their own way, with the proviso that no law of a State should be in conflict with the Constitution of the United States.

ferences of opinion? What did Dr. Franklin recommend? What did he say about it?

9. What was the result of the four months' labors of the convention? According to the Constitution, in what is the law-making power vested? How are Representatives apportioned? What of Senators? What is the Executive styled? What is necessary before a bill can become a law? What, if the President vetoes it? In what is the judicial power of the United States vested?

10. What powers were delegated by the States? What did the States reserve to themselves?

11. Amendments to the Constitution can be adopted by the consent of three-fourths of the States, whereas under the original Articles of Union they could only be adopted by the consent of all the States. This change was made with the proviso that no amendment could ever be made which would deprive any State of its equal suffrage in the Senate.

12. As the Constitution was different in several important respects from the Articles of Confederation, it was agreed that when nine of the thirteen States should ratify the Constitution it should be established between those nine States. This was equivalent to breaking up the old Union and forming a new one.

13. When the Constitution adopted by the convention was submitted by Congress to the several States, it did not meet with immediate approval, but encountered considerable opposition in several of them. Before the close of the year 1788 it was ratified by all the States except North Carolina and Rhode Island. Virginia ratified it with the provision that she should be permitted to withdraw from the Union whenever the powers of the Federal government should be used for oppression.

14. According to the terms of the Constitution, the new government was to go into operation on the 4th of March, 1789. The necessary elections were held in all the ratifying States except New York. George Washington, of Virginia, received every electoral vote cast for the office of President, and John Adams, of Massachusetts, was elected Vice-President by a majority of the votes cast.

15. Washington, being duly notified of his election, set out from his home at Mount Vernon, in Virginia, intending to travel

11. How can amendments to the Constitution be adopted? How was it under the original Articles of Union? With what proviso was this change made?

12. What was further agreed? What was this equivalent to?

13. Did the Constitution meet with immediate approval by all the States? How many States had ratified before the close of 1788? With what provision did Virginia ratify?

14. When was the new government to go into operation? Where were elections held? Who were elected President and Vice-President?

privately, without attracting public attention, to New York, at that time the seat of government. But it was impossible to restrain the enthusiasm of the people. Everywhere on his journey he was received with public manifestations of love and esteem. At Trenton a magnificent display was made. A triumphal arch surmounted by appropriate inscriptions spanned the way on which he was to pass, and the road was strewn with flowers by little girls dressed in white, who sang songs of welcome to him whom all regarded as the father of his country.

16. His reception in New York was grand beyond anything ever before witnessed in that city. The inauguration took place on the 30th of April, 1789, in the presence of an immense multitude, who had assembled to witness the imposing ceremonies. The oath of office was administered by Robert R. Livingston, Chancellor of the State.

17. The first session of Congress under the new Constitution continued nearly six months. Early in 1790, at the second session of the new Congress, Washington announced the gratifying fact that North Carolina had acceded to the Constitution of 1787, and on the 1st of June of the same year he announced, by special message, the like accession of the State of Rhode Island. On this occasion Washington congratulated the Congress, then in session, on the happy event which "united under the General Government all the States which were originally confederated."

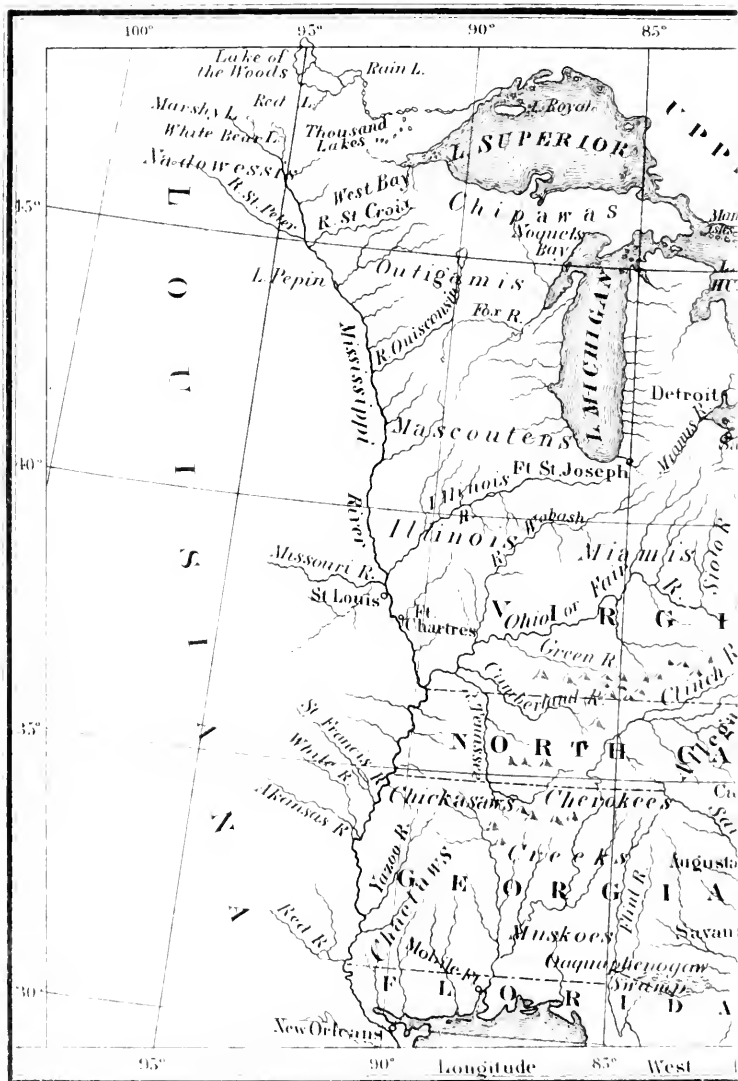
The United States, forming the most perfect model of a "Confederated Republic" (as Washington styled it) ever devised by the wisdom of man, now entered upon a prosperous and brilliant career.

15. What did Washington do when notified of his election? How was he everywhere received? Describe his reception at Trenton.

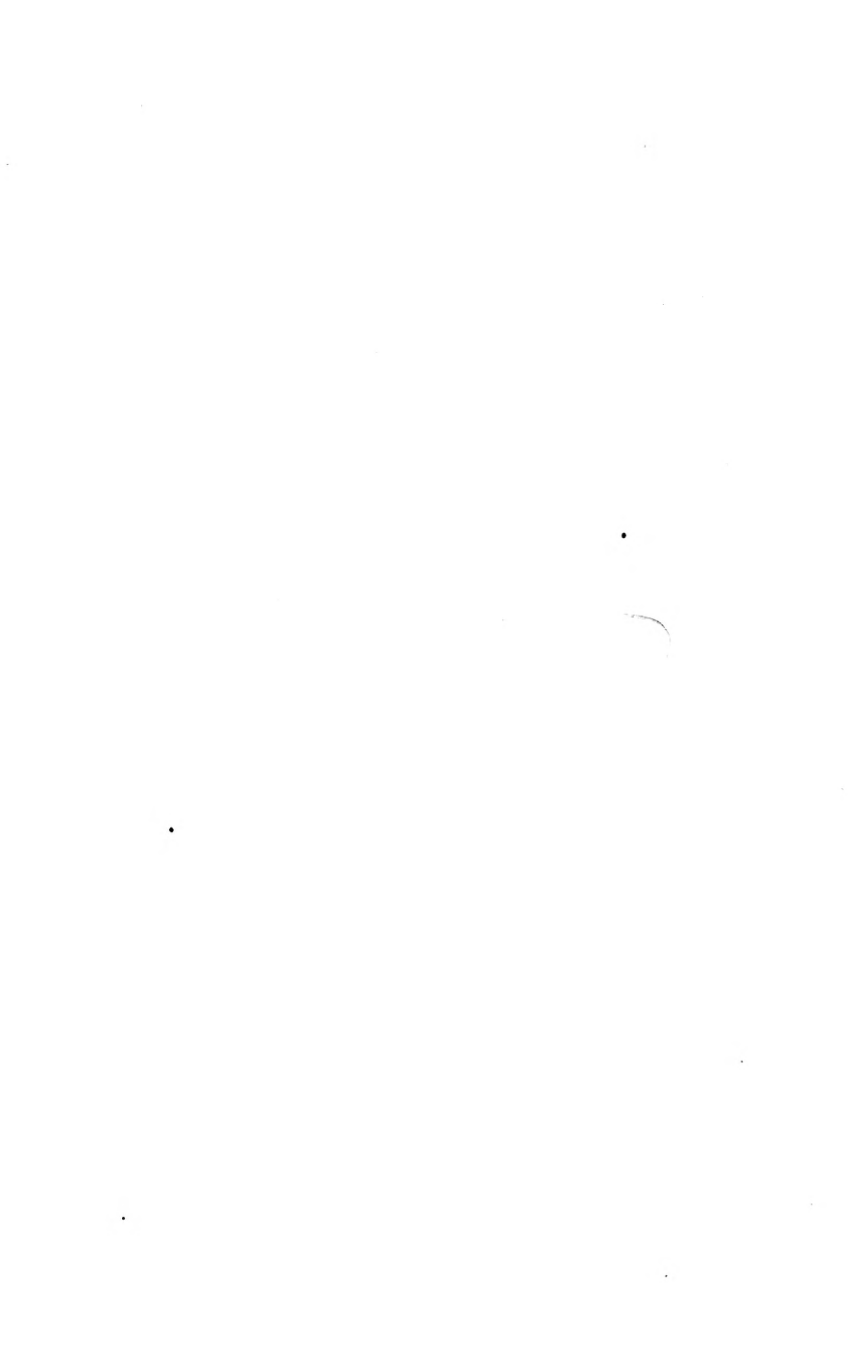
16. What of his reception in New York? What of the inauguration? By whom was the oath of office administered?

17. How long did the first session of Congress under the new Constitution continue? At the second session of the new Congress, early in 1790, what did Washington announce? What did he announce on the 1st of June of the same year? What did Washington do on this occasion? On what did the United States now enter?









Topical Review of Part Second.

1. SOON after the close of the French and Indian War disputes began between the colonies and the mother-country. The quarrel was caused by the determination of Parliament to tax the colonies and the determination of the people not to submit, for the reason that they had no representation in the British Parliament, and thought taxation without representation unjust. The dispute finally led to open war, which broke out on the 19th of April, 1775, at Lexington, Massachusetts.

2. *Principal Events of 1775.*—Battle of Lexington, April 19; American victory. In May Americans capture Ticonderoga and Crown Point. George Washington appointed commander-in-chief, June 15. Battle of Bunker Hill, June 17; British success, but under such circumstances as greatly to encourage the Americans. On the 5th of July the Americans capture a British vessel near Savannah, Georgia, with thirteen thousand pounds of powder, five thousand of which they send to Boston. Lord Dunmore defeated in Virginia towards the end of the year. In September Americans invade Canada; take two forts and Montreal, but fail at Quebec, losing their commander, General Montgomery, after which they retire from Canada.

3. *Principal Events of 1776.*—British evacuate Boston and Americans occupy it on the 17th of March. British defeated at Fort Moultrie, near Charleston, on the 28th of June. Declaration of Independence, July 4, 1776. Defeat of the Americans at Long Island, August 27, which leads to British occupation of New York City. Americans defeated at White Plains, October 28. British capture Fort Washington and garrison, November 17. Washington retreats soon after across New Jersey into Pennsylvania. On Christmas night Washington recrosses the Delaware, and on the next morning gains the battle of Trenton.

4. *Principal Events of 1777.*—American victory at Princeton, January 3, followed by the recovery of most of New Jersey.

Defeat of the Americans on the Brandywine, September 11. British occupy Philadelphia, September 26. Americans repulsed at Germantown, October 4. British repulsed soon after at Red Bank. In latter part of October Forts Mifflin and Mercer captured by the British. During the same time a campaign was going on in New York State, of which the principal events were : British capture Ticonderoga and Crown Point, July 6, and soon after Fort Edward. American victory at Bemington, August 16. British raise the siege of Fort Schuyler, August 22. Indecisive battle at Stillwater, September 19. American victory at Stillwater, October 7. Burgoyne surrenders a British army of six thousand men at Saratoga, October 17.

5. *Principal Events of 1778.*—France recognizes the independence of the United States and forms an alliance with the Americans, February 6. British evacuate Philadelphia, June 18. American advantage at Monmouth, June 28. In July the French and Americans carry on an unsuccessful siege of Newport, Rhode Island. During the same month massacre of Wyoming. In November massacre in Cherry Valley. British capture Savannah, Georgia, December 29.

6. *Principal Events of 1779.*—American victory at Kettle Creek, Georgia, February 14. American defeat at Brier Creek, Georgia, March 3. In February occurred Tryon's raid in Connecticut. British capture Stony Point, May 31, and Verplanck's Point, June 1. On the 15th of July Americans recapture Stony Point. Americans capture Paulus Hook, July 19. The Americans, under Sullivan, utterly defeat the Indian allies of the British during the summer. Americans and French repulsed at Savannah, October 9. During the year Spain declared war against England.

7. *Principal Events of 1780.*—British capture Charleston, South Carolina, May 12. Defeat of the Americans near Camden, August 16. In September, Arnold's treason is discovered. About the middle of the same month the Americans fail to retake Augusta, Georgia. American victory at King's Mountain,

October 7. Some smaller successes were gained during the year in the Carolinas and Georgia by Marion, Sumter, and Clarke. In December Holland was added to the enemies of England.

8. *Principal Events of 1781.*—Mutinies in the American camp. Ratification of the Articles of Confederation. Arnold's raid in Virginia. American victory at the Cowpens, in South Carolina, January 17. Retreat of Greene through North Carolina into Virginia. Return of Greene into North Carolina and battle of Guilford Court-House, March 15; British successful, but unable to profit by it. Americans defeated at Hobkirk's Hill, April 25. Americans soon after capture Forts Watson, Motte, Granby, and Orangeburg. Americans capture Augusta, June 5, but are repulsed soon after at Ninety-Six. American success at Eutaw Springs, September 8. Washington begins the siege of Yorktown, Virginia, September 12. On the 19th of October, Cornwallis surrenders his army, numbering seven thousand British troops.

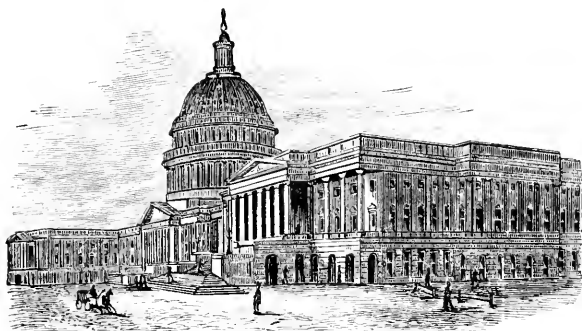
9. *Principal Events of 1782.*—The British government now gave up all hope of conquering the United States. The British evacuated Savannah on the 11th of July, 1782. On the 30th of November a provisional treaty of peace was signed at Paris. On the 14th of December the British evacuated Charleston.

10. *Principal Events of 1783.*—The final treaty of peace was signed at Paris, September 3, 1783. The British evacuated New York, November 25. Washington resigned his commission as commander-in-chief, December 23.

11. On the 14th of May, 1787, a convention of delegates from all the States except Rhode Island assembled in Philadelphia. This convention framed the Constitution of the United States. By the close of 1788 all the States except North Carolina and Rhode Island had ratified that instrument. On the 30th of April, 1789, George Washington was inaugurated as President, and the government under the Constitution began. At the close of 1789 North Carolina ratified the Constitution, and in June, 1790, Rhode Island also ratified it.

PART THIRD.

FROM THE BEGINNING OF WASHINGTON'S ADMINISTRATION TO
THE CLOSE OF THE ADMINISTRATION OF FRANKLIN PIERCE.



CAPITOL AT WASHINGTON.

CHAPTER I.

ADMINISTRATION OF WASHINGTON.

1. As has already been mentioned, the first session of the First Congress under the new Constitution lasted nearly six months. Among the first things that engaged the attention of Congress were certain amendments to the Constitution which had been insisted on by most of the States at the time of their ratification of that instrument. In seven of the States, Massachusetts and Virginia taking the lead in the matter, the ratification of the Constitution had been secured by the assurance that these amendments

1. What were among the first things that demanded the attention of Congress? How many amendments were adopted?

would soon be incorporated in it. Accordingly, ten important amendments were agreed to by Congress, and being sent back to the States for their approval, were soon adopted by them.

2. One of these amendments was, that "the powers not delegated to the United States by the Constitution, nor prohibited by it to the States, are reserved to the States respectively, or to the people." Mr. Samuel Adams, of Massachusetts, before the adoption of the Constitution, said of this amendment, "It is consonant with the second article in the present Confederation, that each State retains its sovereignty, freedom, and independence, and every power, jurisdiction, and right, which is not by this Confederation expressly delegated to the United States in Congress assembled."

3. The Federal judiciary was also organized by this Congress. The following judges of the Supreme Court were nominated by Washington and confirmed by the Senate: John Jay, of New York, Chief Justice; and John Rutledge, of South Carolina, James Wilson, of Pennsylvania, Robert H. Harrison, of Maryland, and John Blair, of Virginia, Associate Judges.

4. Congress also established the subordinate executive offices of Secretary of State, Secretary of the Treasury, Secretary of War, and Attorney-General. Thomas Jefferson, of Virginia, was nominated by Washington, and confirmed by the Senate, as Secretary of State. In like manner Colonel Alexander Hamilton, of New York, was appointed Secretary of the Treasury; General Henry Knox, of Massachusetts, Secretary of War; and Edmund Randolph, of Virginia, Attorney-General. These officers constituted the President's Cabinet. Congress has since created two other departments, the Navy and the Interior, and the heads of these, together with the Postmaster-General, have seats in the Cabinet.

2. What was one of these amendments? What did Samuel Adams, of Massachusetts, say of it?

3. Who was appointed Chief Justice of the Supreme Court? Who Associate Judges?

4. What subordinate executive offices were established? What do these constitute?

5. Congress provided a *revenue* for the support of the government by laying duties on all imported goods. Such duties are called a tariff.

6. Under the wise management of Alexander Hamilton, the Secretary of the Treasury, the war debt of the general government and of the several States, amounting in all to about seventy-four millions of dollars, was funded, and afterwards paid. In 1791 the Bank of the United States was established. There now began a season of great prosperity. The people had confidence in their government, and business interests of all kinds revived.

7. At the second session of the First Congress, in February, 1790, a petition was presented to that body, headed by Dr. Benjamin Franklin, of Pennsylvania, urging the Federal authorities to adopt measures looking to the ultimate abolition of African slavery throughout the Union; but Congress passed a resolution to the effect that it had no authority to interfere in the emancipation of slaves, and that settled the question for the time. Before the War of the Revolution slavery existed in all the colonies. After that war some of the States, where the institution was not profitable, abolished slavery, and others introduced gradual emancipation. The people of the different Southern States retained slavery because slave labor was profitable, and because there were so many negroes in their States that they deemed it dangerous to free them in their midst.

8. At this same session of Congress an act was passed fixing the seat of government at Philadelphia for ten years after 1790, and declaring that after the first Monday in December, 1800, it should be permanently established within a district of territory not exceeding ten miles square, situated on the eastern bank of the Potomac. To the territory afterwards ceded and accepted for

5. For what did Congress provide?

6. What happened under the wise management of Secretary Hamilton?

7. Who presented a petition for the abolition of slavery? What did Congress do?

8. What act was passed by Congress in regard to the seat of government?

this purpose was given the name of the District of Columbia. The site of the capital city was chosen by Washington himself, and was named in his honor.

9. The first census of the United States was taken in 1790, and showed the total population to be 3,929,000.

10. Indian troubles began during this same year to manifest themselves among the Creeks in Georgia, and also among the tribes west of the Ohio. The chiefs of the Creeks were induced to visit New York, where a treaty was made with them by Washington, but the troubles in the Northwest were not so amicably settled.

11. By the Northwestern Territory is meant that portion of country lying between the Ohio River and the Mississippi, which latter river at that time constituted the western boundary of the United States. At the close of the war of independence several of the States (Massachusetts, New York, Connecticut, and Virginia) had claims to this region, though by far the larger portion was within the limits of Virginia. In 1786 these States had given up their claims to their western territory to the general government. Virginia coupled the surrender of her claims with the stipulation that there should be neither slavery nor involuntary servitude in the said Territory, except as a punishment for crime, and when, in 1787, Congress organized the Northwest Territory that stipulation was placed in the act of organization.

12. This Northwest Territory was rapidly filling up with settlers, who were annoyed by the frequent incursions of the Indians. At length it became necessary to send an expedition against the Indians. In the fall of 1790 General Harmer, with

What name was given to the district ceded for the purpose? What name to the capital?

9. What did the first census show the population of the United States to be?

10. How were troubles with the Creek Indians settled?

11. What is meant by the Northwestern Territory? What States had claims to it? Which one had the largest claim? What did the States do in 1786? With what stipulation did Virginia couple the surrender of her claim?

12. How were settlers in the Northwest Territory annoyed? Give an ac-

about fifteen hundred men, marched against them. He burned several Indian towns, but in October he was defeated in two battles, and was then removed from command. The next year General St. Clair, who had been appointed to succeed him, was surprised in the wilderness of the Wabash by Little Turtle, the Miami chief, on the 4th of November, and his army routed, with the loss of their artillery and baggage. Soon after this, however, most of the tribes abandoned the league. The Miamis refused to make peace until General Wayne was sent against them. This general, called by his soldiers "Mad Anthony," on account of his daring courage, utterly defeated the Miamis in a bloody battle near the rapids of the Maumee on the 4th of November, 1794, after which he laid waste their country. Next year peace was made at Fort Greeneville.

13. In October, 1791, Congress passed an act providing for the organization and discipline of the militia of the several States. At the same session an act was passed imposing an excise on distilled spirits. In the western part of Pennsylvania the people openly resisted the collection of this tax. In May, 1792, Congress passed an act authorizing the President to call out the militia. Washington issued a proclamation urging the people to refrain from violence. The trouble did not cease until 1794, when Washington called out fifteen thousand militia under General Henry Lee (the famous Light-Horse Harry), when the insurgents becoming alarmed dispersed, and the "Whiskey Insurrection" was at an end.

14. In the fall of 1792 occurred the second Presidential election. General Washington was unanimously re-elected to the office of President, and John Adams was re-elected Vice-President.

15. The French Revolution and the wars growing out of it had

count of Harmer's expedition. What of St. Clair's expedition? What of General Wayne's expedition?

13. What acts were passed by Congress in October, 1791? Where was the tax on distilled spirits resisted? Give an account of the Whiskey Insurrection.

14. What was the result of the Presidential election of 1792?

at this time an important bearing on the politics of the United States. The French had overthrown their ancient government, and in 1793 they executed their king, Louis XVI. England, Spain, and Holland declared war against France. The sympathy of a majority of the people of the United States was with the French, and this sympathy produced a strong desire to aid France in the conflict. Washington knew, however, that it was the part of wisdom to remain neutral.

16. Genet, minister of the French Republic to the United States, arrived at Charleston, South Carolina, in April, 1793. He endeavored to incite the people to hostile acts against Great Britain, in consequence of which Washington demanded his recall. The French government complied with Washington's demand, and sent Fauchet in his place.

17. In 1794 the feeling in the United States was very bitter towards England, and many prominent men wished to declare war against that country. The reason for this was that British troops continued to hold the forts on Lake Erie and vicinity, in disregard of the treaty of peace of 1783, and American merchant vessels on their way to French ports were seized, and their seamen violently taken from them.

18. In order to avert war at this critical period, John Jay, Chief Justice of the United States, was sent as a special envoy to England. He succeeded in negotiating a treaty by which war was averted and the honor of the United States maintained. The provisions of the treaty met the approval of Washington, and it was ratified on the 14th of August, 1795. In many quarters, however, there was bitter opposition to this treaty.

15. What of the French Revolution and the wars growing out of it? What had the French done? Who declared war against them? With whom did the majority of the people in the United States sympathize?

16. What of the conduct of Genet? What did Washington demand? What did the French government do?

17. What caused bitter feelings towards England?

18. Who was sent as special envoy to England? What did he succeed in doing? Who approved it? How was the treaty received in many quarters?

19. A treaty with Spain was made during the same year, by which the boundaries between the Spanish possessions of Louisiana and Florida and the United States were definitely settled. Spain also granted to the United States the right to navigate the Mississippi, and the privilege of using New Orleans as a place of deposit for ten years.

20. About the same time a treaty was made with Algiers, a Barbary power, on the northern coast of Africa, by which was accomplished the release of captive citizens of the United States who were held by that country.

21. In 1795, Monsieur Adet came to the United States as French minister. He behaved worse than Genet had ever done. He accused the Federal administration of acting in bad faith to the French, the former allies of the United States. His efforts, however, availed nothing, for the people had the greatest confidence in Washington.

22. The third Presidential election was held in the fall of 1796. The people desired Washington to become President for the third time, but he refused, and John Adams, of Massachusetts, was elected to succeed him. Thomas Jefferson, of Virginia, was elected Vice-President. On Washington's retirement he issued his famous farewell address, which abounded in sentiments of the most exalted patriotism.

23. The eight years of Washington's administration had been a season of great prosperity to the United States. The finances of the country were no longer embarrassed, and new life had been infused into every department of industry. The exports of the country had increased from nineteen million to more than fifty-

19. What treaty was made with Spain? What did Spain grant?

20. What was accomplished by the treaty with Algiers?

21. Describe Adet's conduct in America. What of his efforts?

22. Who was elected President in 1796? Why was not Washington elected? Who was elected Vice-President?

23. What of the condition of the country during Washington's administration?

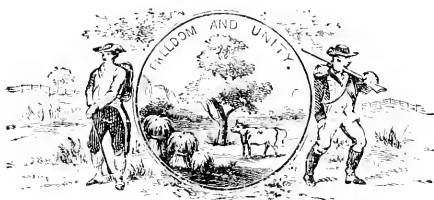
six million dollars, and imports had increased in about the same proportion.

24. *The discovery of coal*, in 1791, by a hunter on the Mauch Chunk (mawk chunk) Mountain, in Pennsylvania, led to the rapid development of the great coal region of that State.

25. *The invention of the cotton-gin*, in 1792, by Eli Whitney, of Massachusetts, who was at the time living in Georgia, produced wonderful results. It gave a new impetus to the cultivation of cotton, and made it the staple production of the Southern States.

26. *Three new States* were admitted to the Union during Washington's administration. These were Vermont, Kentucky, and Tennessee.

Vermont had been originally claimed by both New York and New Hampshire. The first settlement was at Brattleborough, in



SEAL OF VERMONT.

1724. In 1777, during the War of the Revolution, the inhabitants declared the "New Hampshire grants" an independent State. In 1791 New York relinquished her claim on the payment of thirty thousand dollars, and on the 4th of March of that year Vermont was admitted into the Union as the fourteenth State. The name signifies Green Mountains.

Kentucky, the fifteenth State, was admitted to the Union on the 2d of June, 1792. The name means "Dark and Bloody

24. What important discovery in 1791? To what did it lead?

25. What important invention in 1792? To what did it give a new impetus?

26. What new States were admitted during Washington's administration? Tell what is said of Vermont. Of Kentucky. Of Tennessee.

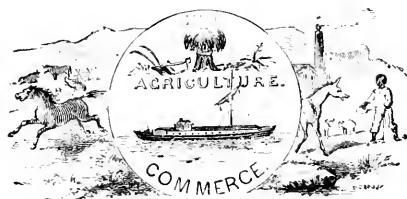
Ground," and it was so called on account of the fierce conflicts between the whites and Indians. Daniel Boone, the first settler,



SEAL OF KENTUCKY.

roamed through the forests of this region for two years, and after many adventures with the Indians, built a fort at Boonesborough, and there established the first permanent white settlement. In June, 1775, he brought his family there. Kentucky was at that time a part of Virginia. When Virginia ceded her western lands, Kentucky was not included in the Northwest Territory, and, as the inhabitants so desired, was admitted into the Union with a constitution which allowed African slavery

Tennessee, the sixteenth State, was admitted to the Union June 1, 1796. It derives its name from the river Tennessee, which is



SEAL OF TENNESSEE.

an Indian word meaning "the river with the great bend." This region was originally a part of North Carolina. The first permanent settlement was in 1756, at Fort Loudon, thirty miles from the present site of Knoxville. In 1789 North Carolina gave up her claim to this region. It was then joined to Kentucky, and

was afterwards organized as a separate territory. The first representative of Tennessee in Congress was Andrew Jackson, destined afterwards to exert a wonderful influence on the history of his country. The constitution of Tennessee also permitted the institution of African slavery.

CHAPTER II.

ADMINISTRATION OF JOHN ADAMS.

1. JOHN ADAMS was inaugurated on the 4th of March, 1797, at Philadelphia, in the presence of both Houses of Congress and a large concourse of people.

2. *The difficulties existing between France and the United States* first occupied the attention of the new administration. For the purpose of bringing about a friendly settlement of these difficulties three special envoys were sent to France. These envoys were Charles Cotesworth Pinckney, of South Carolina, Elbridge Gerry, of Massachusetts, and John Marshall, of Virginia.

3. The French Minister of Foreign Affairs, M. Talleyrand, refused to receive them in their official capacity, but through other parties intimated to the envoys that the payment of two hundred and fifty thousand dollars would secure their official recognition and a settlement of all matters in dispute. "Millions for defence, but not one cent for tribute," was the spirited reply of Mr. Pinckney to this proposition, and it found an echo in every patriot heart throughout the United States.

1. When was John Adams inaugurated?

2. What was done in order to bring about a friendly settlement with France? Who were the envoys?

3. What did the French minister demand? What was Mr. Pinckney's reply?

4. Mr. Pinckney and Mr. Marshall were soon afterwards ordered by the French government to quit France. They obeyed the order. Mr. Gerry being invited to remain did so, but effected nothing.

5. Congress passed a resolution declaring all treaties with France to be abrogated, and suspending all commercial intercourse with that country. In anticipation of war, George Washington was again called from retirement and made commander-in-chief of the armies of the United States. Congress also passed acts for the protection of navigation, for the defence of the sea-coast, for increasing the land and naval forces, and also what are known as the Alien and Sedition Acts.

6. *The Alien Act* authorized the President to order any foreigner, whom he might believe to be dangerous to the United States, to depart from the country, under a heavy penalty for refusing to obey the order. *The Sedition Act* made it a crime, with a heavy penalty, to write, print, or utter anything scandalous against the Congress or President of the United States. These acts, and the arbitrary manner in which they were enforced, created great discontent and indignation, and made Mr. Adams's administration exceedingly unpopular.

7. War between the United States and France was never actually declared, but a state of war did exist for a time, and several engagements occurred between their armed ships.

8. In April, 1798, Decatur, in command of the Delaware, captured a French privateer, which was added to the United States navy, and called the Retaliation; but it was soon afterwards retaken by the French. On the 9th of February, 1799, Commodore

4. What was accomplished by the embassy to France?

5. What resolution did Congress pass? Who was called to command the armies of the United States? What acts did Congress pass?

6. What of the Alien Act? What of the Sedition Act? What did these acts create?

7. Was war ever actually declared against France? What did exist for a time?

8. What did Decatur do in April, 1798? What did Commodore Truxton

Truxton, in command of the United States frigate *Constellation*, captured the French frigate *L'Insurgente*, and on the 1st of February of the next year worsted the French frigate *La Vengeance*. Fifty French merchant vessels became the prizes of American privateers before the termination of hostilities. In 1800, Napoleon Bonaparte became First Consul of the French Republic. With him a satisfactory peace was negotiated in October, 1801.

9. Before the conclusion of peace the whole country was filled with mourning, on account of the death of Washington, the illustrious "Father of his Country." This sad event occurred at Mount Vernon, his home, on the 14th of December, 1799. When the news reached Congress both Houses adjourned. General Henry Lee, of Virginia, in pronouncing the eulogy upon his character, said of him, that he was "first in war, first in peace, and first in the hearts of his countrymen."

10. Another Presidential election occurred in the fall of 1800. The people of the United States had now become divided into two great political parties,—the Federalists, who favored a strong central government, and the Republicans or Democrats, who insisted on a strict construction of the Constitution, and believed in guarding carefully all the reserved rights of the States. At the head of the Federalists stood John Adams, the President, while Thomas Jefferson, the Vice-President, was the leader of the Republicans or Democrats. The Federalists had become exceedingly unpopular, and accordingly Thomas Jefferson and Aaron Burr, the candidates of the Republicans or Democrats, received the largest number of votes; but since each of the successful candi-

do? How many French merchant vessels were captured? With whom and when was peace negotiated?

9. What happened before the conclusion of peace? What did General Henry Lee say of Washington?

10. What occurred in the fall of 1800? Into what had the people of the United States become divided? What of the Federalists? What of the Democrats? Who was the leader of the Federalists? Who of the Democrats? What was the result of the election? What did the House of Representatives do?

dates received an equal number of votes, as the Constitution then stood the election devolved upon the House of Representatives. That body elected Thomas Jefferson as President and Aaron Burr as Vice-President.

CHAPTER III.

ADMINISTRATION OF THOMAS JEFFERSON.

1. THOMAS JEFFERSON was inaugurated on the 4th of March, 1801. The ceremony took place at Washington, which had been made the seat of government in the summer of 1800.

2. One of the first objects to which Mr. Jefferson directed his attention was the securing from Spain of the free navigation of the Mississippi River. In 1802 he received information of the fact that Spain had, by a secret treaty in 1800, ceded Louisiana to France. Upon receiving this information he sent Mr. Monroe as a special minister to France to treat upon the subject in concert with Mr. Livingston, the resident minister of the United States at Paris.

3. The negotiations succeeded beyond expectation. Bonaparte was willing to treat not only for the free navigation of the Mississippi, but also for the cession of the entire Louisiana territory.

4. *The cession of Louisiana* was consummated by a treaty made with Napoleon Bonaparte on the 30th of April, 1803. Louisiana at that time embraced the vast region lying between the Mississippi River and the Rocky Mountains, the northern portion extending to the Pacific Ocean. From this territory have been

1. When was Thomas Jefferson inaugurated? Where?
2. What was one of the first objects to which Mr. Jefferson directed his attention? What information did he receive in 1802? Whom did he send as minister to France?
3. What was Bonaparte willing to do?
4. How was the cession of Louisiana consummated? What did Louisiana

formed the States of Louisiana, Missouri, Arkansas, Iowa, Oregon, Kansas, Nebraska, part of Minnesota, part of Colorado, and various Territories. For all this extensive cession the United States paid only fifteen million dollars. When the treaty was concluded Napoleon said, "This accession of territory strengthens forever the power of the United States, and I have just given to England a maritime rival that will sooner or later humble her pride."

5. The acquisition of Louisiana added to the territory of the United States more than a million square miles, and more than doubled their original limits. The vast increase of power and importance thus given to the United States added greatly to the popularity of Jefferson's administration, which had already won the favor of the people by the repeal of all the obnoxious measures of the preceding administration.

6. In 1803 Georgia ceded to the control of the general government her western lands, embracing nearly one hundred thousand square miles of territory between the Chattahoochee and Mississippi Rivers, out of which were subsequently formed the States of Mississippi and Alabama.



SEAL OF OHIO.

7. Ohio, the seventeenth State, was admitted to the Union November 29, 1802. The first permanent settlement in Ohio was

embrace? What have been formed from this territory? What did the United States pay for this vast region? What did Napoleon say of the treaty?

5. What did the acquisition of Louisiana add to the United States? What of Jefferson's popularity?

6. What did Georgia do in 1803? What States were afterwards formed out of the Georgia cession?

7. When was Ohio admitted to the Union? Tell what is said about Ohio.

made at Marietta, in 1788. It was the first State formed out of the great Northwest Territory. The State was called after the river of the same name, signifying "Beautiful River."

8. In 1803 the United States became involved in a war with the Barbary Powers, which are situated in the northern part of Africa, along the shores of the Mediterranean Sea. The war was caused by depredations committed on American commerce.

9. Commodore Preble was sent to the Mediterranean in command of an American squadron. He brought the Emperor of Morocco to terms, and began to act against Tripoli, which had declared war against the United States two years previously. While the American squadron was before Tripoli the frigate *Philadelphia*, commanded by Captain Bainbridge, while pursuing one of the enemy's vessels, got aground in the harbor and was captured by the Tripolitans, who made slaves of the crew. Soon after Lieutenant Decatur recaptured the *Philadelphia*, and, as she could not be got off, burned her to the water's edge. Tripoli was five times bombarded by Commodore Preble, but without result.

10. In 1805, Commodore Barron, who had succeeded Preble, in concert with a land force under Captain Eaton, captured Derne and compelled the Bashaw to make peace. The safety of American commerce and the restoration to liberty of American citizens held as slaves by the Tripolitan pirates were accomplished by this treaty, which was signed on the 4th of June, 1805.

11. In the fall of 1804, Mr. Jefferson was elected President for a second term, and George Clinton, of New York, was elected Vice-President. Their majority was very large over the candidates of the Federalists, Charles Cotesworth Pinckney, of South Carolina, and Rufus King, then of New York.

8. In what war were the United States involved in 1803?

9. What did Commodore Preble do? Describe Decatur's gallant exploit at Tripoli.

10. What was accomplished in 1805 by Commodore Barron and Captain Eaton?

11. What happened in the fall of 1804? What of their majority?

12. Colonel Aaron Burr, who was Vice-President during Mr. Jefferson's first term, in July, 1804, killed Colonel Hamilton in a duel, and the circumstances under which the duel was fought were such as to bring great odium upon Burr. He was never again honored by the people with any office of profit or trust.

13. In 1806, Burr, who was a man of great talent, was engaged in planning a military expedition of some sort, and as his designs were suspected of being against the peace of the United States, he was tried for treason. He was acquitted, but was from that time a ruined man.

14. Soon after his second inauguration, Mr. Jefferson's attention was called to the injuries to American commerce growing out of the war between England and France. The English government issued "Orders in Council" authorizing the seizure of vessels bound for any French port, while the government of France issued "Decrees" confiscating all ships with their cargoes that should trade at British ports. Many American ships attempting to trade at these various ports were captured by either the English or French. American merchants protested loudly, but it was of no avail.

15. *Hostility to England* was increased by the claim of that country that her ships had a right to search American vessels and take from them any seamen of English birth. This pretended right the Americans indignantly denied. But England persisted in it, and several times forced American seamen into the British navy under the pretence that they were deserters.

16. In June, 1807, the British man-of-war *Leopard*, while off the coast of the United States, fired into the United States frigate

12. What did Colonel Burr do in July, 1804? What effect had this upon Burr?

13. What of Burr's expedition in 1806? What of Burr after this?

14. What of the English "Orders in Council"? What of the French "Decrees"? What effect had these "orders" and "decrees" on American commerce?

15. How was hostility to England increased?

16. Relate the affair of the *Leopard* and the *Chesapeake*. What was the

Chesapeake and killed three of her men, wounding eighteen more. The Chesapeake being totally unprepared for action immediately struck her colors. The pretence for this outrage was that four British seamen were asserted to be on the American ship. The President immediately issued a proclamation requiring British ships to leave American waters, and demanding reparation of the British government. That government promptly disavowed the act of the officer commanding the *Leopard*, and also declared that the "right of search" did not extend to armed vessels. This allayed the excitement for a while and prevented an immediate declaration of war.

17. The year 1807 is especially remarkable for the first successful application of steam to the propulsion of vessels. Robert Fulton, of New York, was the inventor, and his boat, the *Clermont*, started on her first trip up the Hudson to Albany amid the cheers of admiring spectators who gathered on the banks of that noble stream to witness the novel spectacle.

18. An Embargo Act was passed by Congress in December, 1807, by which American trading-vessels were forbidden to leave their ports. This act created great dissatisfaction in the New England States, and Mr. Jefferson received information, which he deemed reliable, that some of them would withdraw from the Union unless the act was repealed. At his suggestion it was repealed by Congress.

19. The abolition of the African slave-trade is one of the memorable events of 1808. The importation of negro slaves into the United States after that date was made a crime with a heavy penalty.

20. Another Presidential election occurred in November, 1808.

pretence for this outrage? What did the President do? What did the British government do?

17. For what is the year 1807 remarkable? Who was the inventor?

18. What of the Embargo Act? What did this act create? What information did Mr. Jefferson receive? What was done at his suggestion?

19. What is one of the memorable events of 1808? What of the importation of negro slaves after this date?

James Madison, of Virginia, was elected President, and George Clinton, of New York, Vice-President. This was another triumph over the Federalists, whose candidates were the same as at the last election.

CHAPTER IV.

ADMINISTRATION OF JAMES MADISON.—SECOND WAR WITH GREAT BRITAIN.

1. JAMES MADISON, the fourth President, was inaugurated on the 4th of March, 1809. His administration was made memorable by a second war with England.

2. A Non-Intercourse Act had been passed just before Mr. Jefferson's retirement. This act declared that United States shipping should be free to trade with all countries except England and France. This prohibition was to cease as to England whenever the British government should repeal the "Orders in Council," and in the case of France, whenever the "Decrees" should be repealed.

3. Soon after Mr. Madison became President, Mr. Erskine, the British minister at Washington, gave assurance that the "Orders in Council" would be annulled, whereupon the President issued a proclamation suspending the Non-Intercourse Act, so far as it related to England. Soon after, the British government informed Mr. Madison that Mr. Erskine had acted without authority. Accordingly, the Non-Intercourse Act was again declared to be in force.

20. What was the result of the election of 1808?

1. When was James Madison inaugurated?

2. What can you say of the Non-Intercourse Act?

3. What did Mr. Erskine do soon after Madison's inauguration? What did the British government inform Mr. Madison? What was then declared?

4. In 1810 the United States minister at Paris received official information that the "Decrees" of the French government would cease to have effect after the 1st of November of that year. The Non-Intercourse Act was therefore repealed, as far as France was concerned, but continued as to Great Britain.

5. On the 16th of May, 1811, an event occurred which inflamed still more the war feeling. This was an engagement between the United States frigate *President* and the British sloop-of-war *Little Belt*. The circumstances of the engagement were as follows: Commodore Rogers, commanding the *President*, late in the evening met a vessel which he hailed, but was answered by a shot which struck his main-mast. He answered this with several broadsides, which soon disabled his adversary, and killed and wounded thirty-two of the British seamen. On hailing again, he was informed that it was the British sloop-of-war *Little Belt*. The American government made reparation for this affair; but the people thought that the British ship was served right, and that the British were properly chastised for their overbearing insolence. The popular cry throughout the Union at this time was "Free Trade and Sailors' Rights."

6. *Indian depredations in the Northwest*, which were attributed to the instigation of British agents, increased the feeling of hostility to England. General William Henry Harrison, at that time governor of the Territory of Indiana, marched against the Indians who had been aroused against the whites by the crafty and eloquent Shawnee chief, Tecumseh.

7. On the *Tipppecanoe* River lay the chief town of the hostile Indians, under the government of Tecumseh's brother, styled

4. What information did the United States minister at Paris receive in 1810? What was then done in regard to the Non-Intercourse Act?

5. Give an account of the affair of the *President* and the *Little Belt*. What did the American government do? What did the people think?

6. What of the Indian depredations? Who marched against the Indians? By whom had the Indians been incited?

7. Give an account of the battle of *Tipppecanoe*. What did most of the tribes do after this?

"the Prophet." Near this town Harrison was met by some of the principal chiefs, who promised submission; but having no faith in their promises, he ordered his men to sleep that night on their arms and in order of battle. It was well that he did so, for before daylight, on the 7th of November, 1811, the Indians made a furious assault on the camp. The conflict which followed was severe, and the issue was long doubtful, but at length Harrison won a complete victory, after which the Prophet's town was burned, the surrounding country laid waste, and most of the tribes sued for peace.

8. British aggressions still continued, and, in anticipation of war, Congress voted to increase the regular army to thirty-five thousand men, and to give the President authority to accept the services of fifty thousand volunteers. Congress also provided for a large increase of the navy, and authorized a loan of eleven million dollars.



SEAL OF LOUISIANA.

9. Louisiana, the eighteenth State, was admitted into the Union on the 8th of April, 1812. This was the first State formed out of the territory purchased from France. All the rest of that vast region was soon after formed into a Territory styled Missouri, with the capital at St. Louis.

10. On the 20th of April, George Clinton, the Vice-President, died, and his place was filled by Wm. H. Crawford, of Georgia.

8. What did Congress do on account of British aggressions?

9. When was Louisiana admitted? What was done with the rest of the Louisiana Territory?

10. What happened in April?

11. The dispute with England still continued. On the 1st of June Mr. Madison recommended to Congress a declaration of war against England. This was soon after adopted, and received the President's approval on the 18th of the same month. On the 19th of June, 1812, the *Proclamation of War against England* was published. There was violent opposition to the war in some quarters, but the large majority of the American people were heartily in favor of it.

12. The population of the United States at this time was upwards of seven millions, or more than double the population of the States at the commencement of the War of the Revolution. The people of the United States thought it would be an easy matter to bring England to terms by invading Canada; but they did not expect to accomplish much by the navy, for the reason that they well knew that the navy of England was far more powerful.

13. General Henry Dearborn, of Massachusetts, was appointed commander-in-chief of the American armies, and was especially intrusted with the conduct of operations between Lake Erie and Lake Champlain. General Dearborn was to take charge himself of the eastern end of this line, General Stephen Van Rensselaer was to command the army of the centre, while the army of the west was to be assigned to General William Hull, at that time governor of Michigan. All these forces were to co-operate with a view to Montreal as the ultimate point of attack.

14. In July, General Hull, with about twenty-five hundred men, crossed over into Canada from Detroit, and took possession of Sandwich. Here he issued a high-sounding proclamation, and remained until the 8th of August, when, learning that the British

11. What did Mr. Madison do on the 1st of June? When was the proclamation of war published?

12. What was the population of the United States at this time? What did the people think?

13. Who was appointed commander of the American armies? What was the plan of campaign?

14. Give an account of Hull's movements. What sentence was pronounced on Hull? Why was it not carried out?

had captured the important post of Mackinaw, he hastily retreated to Detroit. Here he was attacked on the 16th of August by General Brock, the governor of Upper Canada, with a force of seven hundred British and Canadians and six hundred Indians. To the great chagrin of his soldiers, Hull surrendered his whole army, and with it Detroit and all Michigan. On account of this surrender Hull was court-martialed and sentenced to be shot, but the President pardoned him on account of former gallant services during the War of the Revolution.

15. The whole Northwest was now exposed to the invasion of the British and the depredations of the Indians. Ten thousand volunteers offered their services to the government for its defence. They were accepted, and placed under the command of General William Henry Harrison.

16. Fort Dearborn, on the site of the present city of Chicago, was captured by the enemy on the 15th of August, and the greater part of the garrison were massacred by the Indian allies of the British.

17. The Niagara frontier was the scene of the next conflict. On the 13th of October General Van Rensselaer sent about one thousand men across the Niagara River to attack the British post at Queenstown. The troops were led to the assault by Colonel Christie and Lieutenant-Colonel Winfield Scott, and gallantly did they carry Queenstown Heights. General Brock coming up with a British reinforcement of six hundred men, was slain in an attempt to retake the post, and his men were repulsed with great slaughter. General Van Rensselaer, who was now at Queenstown, returned to the American side to carry over reinforcements, but the troops, who were militia, refused to cross, on the ground that

15. To what was the whole Northwest now exposed? Who was put in command of all the troops in that quarter?

16. What of Fort Dearborn?

17. What happened on the 13th of October? Give an account of all that happened at Queenstown. What did Van Rensselaer do? Who succeeded him? Did he do anything?

the government had no right to order them across the frontier. Meanwhile, the British general Sheaffe (shefe) came up with reinforcements from Fort George, and the Americans at Queens-town, after a gallant but vain resistance to twice their number, were forced to surrender. General Van Rensselaer immediately resigned. He was succeeded by General Alexander Smythe, who was soon at the head of an army of forty-five hundred men; but he accomplished nothing, and was soon removed from command.

18. *The brilliant victories of the navy* compensated for these disasters on land. On the 13th of August the frigate Essex, commanded by Captain David Porter, captured the sloop-of-war Alert. On the 19th of the same month the American frigate Constitution (or "Old Ironsides" as she was popularly called) captured the British frigate Guerriere (gärre-yare). Captain Isaac Hull, a nephew of General Hull, was the commander of the Constitution. The engagement occurred on the Gulf of St. Lawrence. On the



CAPTAIN DECATUR.

18th of October the sloop-of-war Wasp, commanded by Captain Jones, captured the British brig Frolic off the coast of North Carolina. When the Frolic surrendered the only sailor on board who was unharmed was the man at the helm. On the 25th of October the frigate United States, commanded by Captain (afterwards Commodore) Decatur, while cruising south of the Azores captured the Macedonian. On the 29th of December the Con-

stitution, commanded by Commodore Bainbridge, captured off Brazil the British frigate Java.

18. What compensated for these disasters? What naval victory was won on the 13th of August? What on the 19th? Who commanded the Constitution? Relate the combat between the Wasp and the Frolic. What naval victory on the 25th of October? What one on the 29th of December?

19. American privateers also swarmed the seas and distressed the enemy's commerce, capturing about five hundred British merchantmen and taking three thousand prisoners.

20. At the Presidential election held in November, 1812, Mr. Madison was re-elected President, and Elbridge Gerry, of Massachusetts, was elected Vice-President. The candidates of the party opposed to the administration were De Witt Clinton, of New York, for President, and Jared Ingersoll, of Pennsylvania, for Vice-President, but the administration was sustained by a large majority.

21. In September, Admiral Warren, of the British navy, had been authorized to open negotiations for a settlement of difficulties, but the terms proposed were not satisfactory and the war went on.

CHAPTER V.

MADISON'S ADMINISTRATION (CONTINUED).—WAR WITH GREAT BRITAIN (CONTINUED).—CAMPAIGN OF 1813.

1. THE military operations of 1813 were mainly along the northern frontier of the United States. The American forces were divided into three armies. The *Army of the West*, under General Harrison, was stationed at the head of Lake Erie; the *Army of the Centre* was under General Dearborn, on the Niagara frontier; the *Army of the North*, at the east end of the line, was on the shore of Lake Champlain, and under the command of General Wade Hampton.

19. What did American privateers do?

20. What of the Presidential election of 1812? Who were the candidates of the other party?

21. What of peace negotiations in September?

1. Where were the military operations of 1813? How were the American forces divided?

2. The Armies of the Centre and the North did not accomplish much. On the 25th of April, General Dearborn sent seventeen hundred picked men under General Pike across Lake Ontario to attack York, now the city of Toronto. The Americans landed, attacked the British, carried two batteries, and pressed forward to enter the fort. This the enemy abandoned, applying a slow-match to their magazine, which blew up just as the Americans were entering. The effect was terrific. Nearly three hundred of the Americans were killed and wounded by the explosion. General Pike was among the mortally wounded.

General Dearborn also captured Fort George, at the mouth of the Niagara River, on the 29th of May, and on the same day the British under General Prevost were repulsed in an attack on Sackett's Harbor.

General Wilkinson, who succeeded General Dearborn in command of the Army of the Centre, was to act in concert with General Hampton in an expedition against Montreal, but on account of disagreements between the two generals, nothing was accomplished.

3. The Army of the West, under General Harrison, had for its object the recovery of Detroit and Michigan from the English. The first movement by this army began in January. General Winchester, commanding the advance, defeated a force of the enemy at Frenchtown, on the river Raisin, but was in turn attacked by a superior force of British and Indians under Colonel Proctor, and forced to surrender. The Indians massacred the greater portion of the captives. Proctor was either unable or unwilling to stop the massacre. "Remember the River Raisin" was henceforth the watchword of Harrison's army. General Harrison now built Fort Meigs. Here he was attacked on the

2. Describe the battle of York. What did General Dearborn capture? What was accomplished by Generals Wilkinson and Hampton?

3. What was the first object of the Army of the West? What happened at the river Raisin? What at Fort Meigs? What at Fort Stephenson? Where did Proctor go?

1st of May by Proctor, but repulsed all the efforts of the enemy. During the same month Proctor attacked Fort Stephenson, at Sandusky, which was garrisoned by one hundred and fifty men under Major Croghan, a young man only twenty-one years old. Being repulsed, Proctor retreated to Malden.

4. *Perry's victory on Lake Erie* gave a new aspect to the campaign. During the summer a fleet of nine vessels, carrying fifty-four guns, was equipped and placed under Commodore Perry. The English had on Lake Erie a fleet of six vessels, carrying sixty-three guns, under Commodore Barclay. On the 10th of September the two squadrons encountered each other in the western part of Lake Erie. At the end of two hours Perry's flagship, the *Lawrence*, became disabled, but the gallant commodore leaped into a boat and bore his flag to the Niagara, nearly half a mile away, and though he passed within pistol-shot of the enemy, who turned every gun upon him, he escaped uninjured. Mounting the deck of the Niagara, he broke through the enemy's line, firing right and left, and in fifteen minutes the victory was won. Perry at once wrote to General Harrison, "We have met the enemy, and they are ours,—two ships, two brigs, one schooner, and a sloop."

5. General Harrison now embarked his troops on Perry's vessels and crossed the lake into Canada. On the 5th of October he encountered the enemy at the river Thames and gained a complete victory. Tecumseh, the Indian ally of the British, was slain. Proctor escaped. By the victories of Perry and Harrison Detroit and Michigan were recovered from the British, and the war was ended in that quarter.

6. Meanwhile, the Creek Indians in Alabama and Georgia, who had been previously influenced by Tecumseh, formed a league

4. What of Perry's victory? When was his fleet fitted out? Describe the battle of Lake Erie. What was Perry's message to General Harrison?

5. What did General Harrison now do? Give an account of the battle of the Thames. What were recovered?

6. Meanwhile, what did the Creek Indians in Georgia and Alabama do?

against the whites. On the 30th of August they surprised *Fort Mims*, on the Chattahoochee River, and massacred nearly three hundred men, women, and children. The militia of Georgia and Tennessee were called out to oppose them, the Georgians under General John Floyd, and the Tennesseans under General Coffee. The whole force was placed under the command of General Andrew Jackson, of Tennessee. The Georgians under Floyd defeated the Indians at *Cullibee* and *Autossee*, and burned their town of *Autossee*. The Tennessee troops under General Coffee defeated the Indians again at *Tallushatchee* on the 3d of November. On the 8th of November, General Jackson defeated the Indians at *Talladega*, and soon after gained another victory at *Emuckfau*. Jackson's crowning victory over the Creeks was won on the 27th of March of the next year, at *Tohopeka*, or the "Horse-shoe Bend," on the Tallapoosa River. The Creeks obtained peace by a large cession of territory.

7. At sea the Americans and British each gained victories during the year 1813. Captain Lawrence, in command of the *Hornet*, captured the British brig *Peacock* on the 24th of February. On the 1st of June the same officer, in command of the *Chesapeake*, attacked the British frigate *Shannon* off the harbor of Boston. In the midst of the fight Lawrence was mortally wounded. The last order of the dying hero was, "*Don't give up the ship!*" and though the ship had to be surrendered, yet the last command of Lawrence was often afterwards the rallying-cry of the American sailors. On the 14th of August the British brig *Pelican* captured the American brig *Argus*, which had previously captured more than twenty of the enemy's merchant ships. In September the American brig *Enterprise* captured the

Who were called out to oppose them? What did the Georgians under Floyd do? What did the Tennessee troops under Coffee do? Give an account of Jackson's victories. What did the Creeks do soon after?

7. What of the war on the sea? What did Captain Lawrence do on the 24th of February? Describe the battle between the *Chesapeake* and the *Shannon*. What success had the British on the 14th of August? Relate the encounter between the *Enterprise* and the *Boxer*. What did Porter do the same year?

British brig *Boxer* on the coast of Maine. The commanders of both vessels were killed, and were buried beside each other with military honors in the city of Portland. During the same year Commodore Porter, of the frigate *Essex*, captured many British merchantmen in the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans.

8. During the spring and summer a British fleet under Admiral George Cockburn entered Chesapeake and Delaware Bays. They destroyed all merchant vessels within their reach, and burned the towns of Frenchtown, Georgetown, Havre de Grace, and Fredericksburg. They also made an attack on Norfolk, but were repulsed with heavy loss.

CHAPTER VI.

MADISON'S ADMINISTRATION (CONCLUDED).—END OF THE WAR WITH GREAT BRITAIN.

1. THERE were two important campaigns of 1814, a northern and southern. The northern campaign was begun by an advance of the Americans into Canada led by General Wilkinson, but Wilkinson was defeated at La Cole Mill on the 31st of March, and resigned his command. General Jacob Brown, a gallant officer, succeeded him, and he was ably seconded by General Winfield Scott and General Ripley.

2. On the 3d of July the Americans crossed the Niagara River and took Fort Erie. They then advanced, and at *Chippewa*, on the 5th of July, defeated the enemy under General Riall. The enemy retired towards Lake Ontario, where General Drummond, who had come with fresh forces, took command. The British

8. What did the British fleet do during the spring and summer?

1. What two campaigns of 1814? How was the Northern campaign begun? What happened at La Cole Mill? Who succeeded Wilkinson? By whom was he ably seconded?

2. What happened on July 3? Give an account of the battle of Chippewa.

now advanced to meet the Americans, who were also advancing. The two armies met near sunset on the 25th of July at *Lundy's Lane* or Bridgewater, opposite Niagara Falls. There now occurred one of the bloodiest battles of the war, in which the



GENERAL SCOTT.

thunder of artillery mingled with the roar of the mighty cataract. The capture of a British battery posted on a hill was essential to the success of the Americans. This was gallantly carried and held against three determined efforts to recapture it by Captain Miller, whose reply, "I'll try, sir," when asked if he could take it, has passed into a proverb. At midnight the British yielded the field to the Americans. Generals Brown

and Scott were so badly wounded that they had to be removed to the American side. Soon after the Americans retired to *Fort Erie*. Here they were besieged by the British, who had been again reinforced. On the 15th of August General Drummond made an assault, but was repulsed with the loss of one thousand men, and on the 17th of September General Brown made a sortie and gave the enemy so heavy a blow that they abandoned the siege and retreated to Chippewa. The Americans remained at Fort Erie two months more, and then of their own accord blew up the fort and abandoned Canada.

3. At *Plattsburg, on Lake Champlain*, was gained the greatest victory won by the Americans during the year 1814. This was a joint land and naval action. During the summer the British had concentrated near the northern end of Lake Champlain a force of fourteen thousand men, under Sir George Prevost.

Battle of Lundy's Lane. Give an account of events at Fort Erie. How long did the Americans remain at Fort Erie? What did they then do?

3. What happened at Plattsburg, on Lake Champlain? Give an account

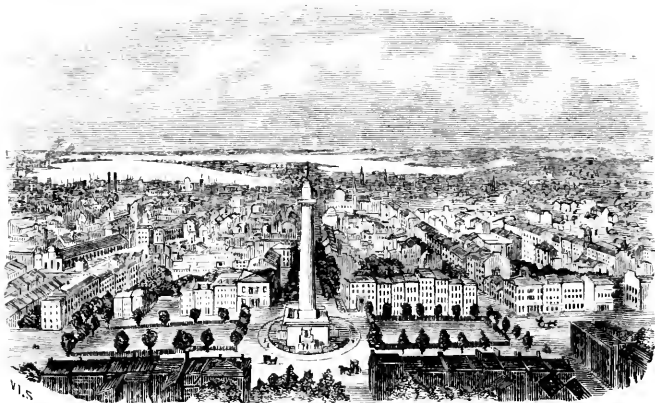
Ascertaining that most of the American force had been withdrawn to the Niagara frontier, General Prevost marched upon Plattsburg. Here General Macomb (ma-koom), the American commander, had only two thousand efficient troops, but he was reinforced by some militia from Vermont and New York, and taking a position on the south side of the Saranac River, he held the enemy in check for four days. On the 11th of September, Commodore Downie, in command of the British fleet, bore down in order of battle to assist the British land force. Commodore McDonough, the commander of the American fleet, though inferior to the enemy in the number of vessels, guns, and men, boldly joined battle, after having first, on the deck of his vessel, invoked the blessing of God upon the American arms. After two hours of terrible fighting McDonough gained a victory as brilliant as that of Perry on Lake Erie the previous year. Commodore Downie was killed in the fight, and his entire squadron surrendered. When Prevost, who had attacked the American works, saw the destruction of the fleet, he retreated, leaving his sick and wounded and large quantities of military stores. The loss of the enemy was about twenty-five hundred men.

4. Along the Atlantic coast the British fleets kept up a vigorous blockade. Several towns in Maine were captured, and Stonington, Connecticut, was bombarded. A British fleet of fifty or sixty vessels, under Admirals Cockburn and Cochrane, ascended the Chesapeake. Five thousand men, under General Ross, were landed, and marched upon Washington, the capital of the United States. General Winder, with about four thousand men, mostly militia, met the enemy at Bladensburg, but his force was routed. The President and Cabinet were obliged to flee. Ross entered the city on the 24th of August. After burning the Capitol and other public buildings the British retreated to their shipping.

of the double battle at Plattsburg and Lake Champlain. When Prevost saw that the British fleet was defeated, what did he do?

4. What did the British fleets do along the Atlantic coast? Give an account of the capture of Washington.

5. Baltimore was the next point of attack, but the British failed to carry the American works, and Fort McHenry repulsed



VIEW OF BALTIMORE.

the British fleet. General Ross was killed while advancing on the American intrenchments. The attempt on Baltimore was then abandoned.

6. During the attack on Fort McHenry, Francis S. Key, an American, who had been detained on board one of the British ships, composed the celebrated national air, "The Star-Spangled Banner."

7. The sea-fights during this year were sometimes favorable to the Americans and sometimes to the British. In March the *Essex*, commanded by Commodore Porter, was captured by two British vessels, and in April the *Frolic* was captured by a British ship. The United States vessel *Peacock* captured a British brig, and the *Wasp* captured another. Early the next year the Presi-

-
5. What of the attack on Baltimore? Who was killed?
6. What song was composed during the attack on Fort McHenry?
7. What of sea-fights during the year? What of the *Essex*? The *Frolic*? The *Peacock*? The *Wasp*? The President? The Constitution? The *Hornet*?

dent, under Commodore Decatur, was captured by an English squadron. The *Constitution*, commanded by Commodore Stewart, captured two British ships, and the *Hornet* took a British brig.

8. During the summer and fall of 1814 the New England States became very much dissatisfied with the management of the war. In December, 1814, a convention was held at Hartford, Connecticut, consisting of delegates from Massachusetts, Rhode Island, New Hampshire, Vermont, and Connecticut. The real designs of the leaders of this convention have never been clearly ascertained, but they were accused of an intention to withdraw their States from the Union. The grievances of which the New England States complained were, however, removed by the cessation of hostilities.

9. As early as March, 1813, the Emperor of Russia had offered to act as mediator between the United States and Great Britain, with a view to bringing about a peace between them. President Madison accepted his offer, but the British government declined it, so that nothing came of this attempt to stop the war. In January, 1814, England intimated her readiness to treat directly for peace, and the President at once appointed commissioners, among whom was Henry Clay, of Kentucky, often called "the mill-boy of the Slashes," from a district of Virginia in which he was born. Though peace commissioners were appointed thus early in 1814, the war continued during all that year. At Ghent, in Belgium, on the 24th of December, 1814, a treaty of peace was signed.

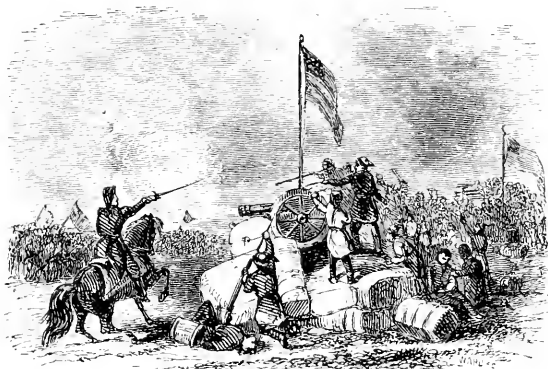
10. But before the news of peace reached America another great battle was fought. This was the battle of New Orleans. In September a British force had attacked the fort at the entrance

8. What of the New England States during the summer and fall? Tell all about the Hartford Convention. How were the grievances removed?

9. When had the Emperor of Russia offered to act as mediator? Did anything come of it? What did England intimate in January, 1814? What did the President do? Where and when was the treaty of peace signed?

10. What happened before the news reached America? What happened at

of Mobile Bay, but met with a repulse. As they had been allowed to fit out their expedition in Pensacola, then a Spanish town, General Andrew Jackson, with some mounted Tennesseans, entered Florida, and took possession of Pensacola. From thence he hurried to New Orleans, which was threatened with an attack by the British army from the Chesapeake, which had been heavily



BATTLE OF NEW ORLEANS.

reinforced from Europe. General Jackson took the most energetic measures. Though he had but six thousand men, mostly Tennessee and Kentucky militia, yet he did not hesitate to strike the enemy a sudden blow on the night of the 23d of December, and on the 28th repulsed a fierce attack made by a portion of the enemy's force. On the 8th of January the real struggle commenced. Twelve thousand British veterans who had fought under Wellington, led by Sir Edward Pakenham, moved forward, and made a desperate and gallant assault on the Americans, who were protected by fortifications. The assailants were repulsed, with the loss of twenty-five hundred men killed, wounded,

Mobile Bay? What place did Jackson seize? How was New Orleans threatened? What did Jackson do on the 23d of December? What on the 28th? When did the great battle of New Orleans occur? Give an account of it.

and captured, General Pakenham himself being among the killed. The American loss was very small, being less than thirty in killed and wounded.

The news of this brilliant victory electrified the country.

11. *News of the treaty of peace* reached America a few days after the battle, and though no concessions had been made by England on the impressment question, yet the treaty was ratified by the Senate on the 18th of February. The war had lasted a little more than two years and a half.

12. During the war with Great Britain, the Dey of Algiers had violated the treaty of 1795. Accordingly, after the ratification of the treaty with England, Commodore Decatur was sent against Algiers, with three frigates and seven smaller vessels. He captured two Algerine ships of war, and compelled the Dey of Algiers to make a peace highly advantageous to the United States. Decatur also visited Tunis and Tripoli, and compelled them to make reparation for allowing British vessels to capture American merchantmen in their harbors during the late war with Great Britain.

13. On the 11th of December, 1816, Indiana, the nineteenth



SEAL OF INDIANA.

State, was admitted into the Union. This was the second State formed out of the Northwest Territory.

11. When did the news of peace reach America? How long had the war lasted?

12. As soon as peace was made with England, where was Commodore Decatur sent? What did he do at Algiers? What at Tunis and Tripoli?

13. When was Indiana admitted? What of Indiana?

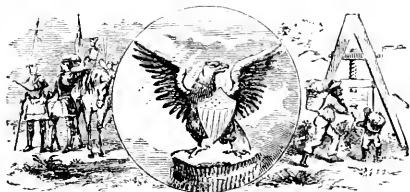
14. The Bank of the United States was chartered by Congress during the same year. The charter was to continue twenty years.

15. In the fall of 1816 another Presidential election took place. The candidates of the Democratic or Republican party were James Monroe, of Virginia, for President, and Daniel D. Tompkins, of New York, for Vice-President. The Federal party nominated for the same offices Rufus King, of New York, and John Howard, of Maryland. The election resulted in an overwhelming Democratic triumph.

CHAPTER VII.

ADMINISTRATION OF JAMES MONROE.

1. JAMES MONROE, the fifth President, was inaugurated on the 4th of March, 1817. His inaugural address gave great satisfaction to all parties. For a time party lines were almost extinct, and there dawned upon the country a short period which has since been known as the "Era of good feeling."



SEAL OF MISSISSIPPI.

2. Mississippi, the twentieth State, was admitted into the Union

14. When was the Bank of the United States chartered? How long was the charter to continue?

15. What was the result of the election of 1816? Who were the candidates of the Federal party?

1. When was Monroe inaugurated? What of his inaugural address? What of party lines? What dawned upon the country?

2. When was Mississippi admitted? What is said of Mississippi?

on the 10th day of December, 1817. This State was formed out of the territory ceded to the control of the general government by Georgia, in 1803. Its name, derived from the great river, means "Father of Waters."

3. *A war with the Seminole Indians* broke out in the latter part of 1817. General Andrew Jackson was sent against them in 1818, at the head of one thousand men. As the Spanish authorities in Florida were suspected of giving help to the Indians, Jackson invaded Florida, seized St. Marks and Pensacola, and sent the Spanish governor and his troops to Havana, in Cuba. He also seized two English traders, who had been inciting the Indians to hostility, and had them executed. Jackson's conduct was made a subject of inquiry by both Houses of Congress, but, after investigation, his course was approved by large majorities in both the Senate and the House of Representatives. The Spanish minister at Washington protested against these proceedings, but the matter was not pressed because negotiations were at that time pending for the cession of Florida to the United States.



SEAL OF ILLINOIS.

4. Illinois, the twenty-first State, was admitted into the Union on the 3d of December, 1818. Its name is derived from its

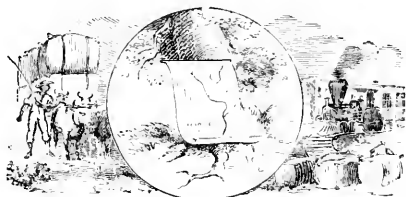
3. What war broke out in 1817? Who was sent against them? Of what were the Spanish authorities suspected? What places did General Jackson seize? What did he do with two English traders? What of Jackson's conduct? What did the Spanish minister at Washington do? Why was not the matter pressed?

4. When was Illinois admitted? What is said of that State?

principal river, and means "River of Men." It was the third State admitted from the Northwest Territory.

5. One of the most memorable events of the year 1819 is the passage of the first steamship across the Atlantic. This steamship, called the *Savannah*, though built in New York, was owned in Savannah, Georgia, and sailed from the last-named port in May, bound for Liverpool, England. The steamer made a successful voyage to Liverpool, and afterwards to St. Petersburg, in Russia, and was everywhere an object of great curiosity.

6. Alabama, the twenty-second State, was admitted into the



SEAL OF ALABAMA.

Union on the 14th of December, 1819. It was originally a part of Georgia. Its name, which is of Indian origin, signifies "Here we rest."

7. The application of Missouri, in February, 1819, for admission into the Union as a State brought about the agitation of the question whether the Federal government had any right to interfere with negro slavery in the Territories. A large number of the members of Congress from the non-slaveholding States opposed the admission of Missouri, because the constitution of the proposed new State recognized property in slaves. Other States

5. When did the first steamship cross the Atlantic? Tell all that is said about it.

6. When was Alabama admitted to the Union? What else is said about that State?

7. What brought about the slavery agitation? What did members from the non-slaveholding States do? Had other slaveholding States been admitted? How was the question settled?

had been admitted whose constitutions recognized this kind of property, but a large party in the North were in favor of admitting no more such States. The whole country was agitated by the dispute on this question, and the friends of the Union were everywhere alarmed. At last the dispute was settled for a time by an agreement, known as the "*Missouri Compromise*," that slavery should be excluded from all the remainder of the Louisiana Territory north of thirty-six degrees and thirty minutes; but Missouri was kept out for some time longer yet.



SEAL OF MAINE.

8. Meanwhile Maine, the twenty-third State, was admitted into the Union. This was on the 15th of March, 1820. Maine had been originally a part of Massachusetts.



SEAL OF MISSOURI.

9. Missouri, the twenty-fourth State, was admitted to the Union on the 10th day of August, 1821, after much violent op-

-
8. When was Maine admitted? Of what was Maine originally a part?
 9. When was Missouri admitted? What more can you say of Missouri?

position. The name of the State is derived from its principal river, and means "Muddy Water." It was the second State formed out of the Louisiana Territory purchased from France in 1803.

10. Mr. Monroe was re-elected President in 1820, and Mr. Tompkins was also re-elected Vice-President.

11. On the 22d of February, 1821, the President issued a proclamation announcing the cession to the United States by Spain of East and West Florida, together with all Spanish claims to any portion of Oregon. The United States paid for this cession five million dollars. The Territory of Florida was organized, and General Andrew Jackson was appointed its first governor.

12. The year 1824 was signalized by the visit of La Fayette to the United States. He travelled through all the States, and was everywhere received with every demonstration of esteem and affection. Congress, in order to express the gratitude of the country to La Fayette for his great services during the war for independence, voted him two hundred thousand dollars and twenty-three thousand acres of land in Florida. At the time of this visit La Fayette was nearly seventy years old.

13. It was during Monroe's administration that the *South American Republics* gained their independence of Spain, and were recognized as independent nations by the government of the United States. It was at this time that Mr. Monroe declared the "American continents are henceforth not to be considered as subjects for future colonization by any European power." This declaration has since been known as the "Monroe Doctrine."

10. What of the election of 1820?

11. What proclamation did the President issue on the 22d of February, 1821? What did the United States pay for this cession? Who was first governor of the Florida Territory?

12. How was 1824 signalized? How was La Fayette received? How did Congress express the gratitude of the country? How old was La Fayette at this time?

13. What of the South American Republics? What is meant by the Monroe Doctrine?

14. The policy of encouraging home manufactures by a *protective tariff* and of carrying on *internal improvements* by the Federal government, a policy known at the time as the "American System," and whose authorship is attributed to Mr. Clay, was soon the occasion of a permanent split in the Republican or Democratic party.

15. During Monroe's administration the country prospered greatly. Manufactures, commerce, and agriculture flourished wonderfully. Appropriations were made by Congress for constructing several military roads and especially a great national highway over the Alleghanies. The individual States also engaged in enterprises for their own internal improvement. New York took the lead in works of this kind. Through the efforts of De Witt Clinton, for many years governor of that State, the construction of the great Erie Canal, which connects the Great Lakes at Buffalo with the Hudson River at Albany, was undertaken by the State. The Erie Canal is three hundred and sixty-three miles in length and cost nearly eight million dollars. The passage of the first boat over it was hailed with great rejoicings throughout New York, for every one felt that it was the dawn of an era of great commercial prosperity for the State. This great work was begun and completed in the same years with Monroe's administration.

16. At the end of Monroe's second term he declined a re-election. There were four candidates for the Presidency, William H. Crawford, of Georgia, Henry Clay, of Kentucky, Andrew Jackson, of Tennessee, and John Quincy Adams, of Massachusetts. As none of the candidates received a majority of the votes cast

14. What occasioned a permanent split in the Republican or Democratic party?

15. What of the country during Monroe's administration? What appropriations were made by Congress? What did individual States do? Relate what is said about the Erie Canal.

16. How many candidates for the Presidency at the election of 1824? Who were they? On whom did the election of President devolve? Whom did that body choose? Who became Vice-President? How was he elected?

in the electoral colleges the election of a President devolved upon the House of Representatives, and that body elected John Quincy Adams, of Massachusetts. John C. Calhoun, of South Carolina, who had received a large majority of the votes cast in the Electoral College, was declared Vice-President.

CHAPTER VIII.

ADMINISTRATION OF JOHN QUINCY ADAMS.

1. JOHN QUINCY ADAMS, the sixth President of the United States, was inaugurated on the 4th of March, 1825. He was the son of John Adams, the second President.

2. Soon after Mr. Adams's accession to office a *controversy arose between him and the State of Georgia* with reference to certain Indian lands within the limits of that State. During the controversy the President threatened force. Governor Troup declared that if the Georgians could get their rights in no other way they would oppose force to force. The Federal government made no further effort to interfere with Governor Troup, and the lands were surveyed and occupied.

3. The 4th of July, 1826, was memorable from the fact of its being the fiftieth anniversary of the independence of the United States, and was rendered still more memorable by the death on that day of two of the most illustrious among the signers of the declaration of independence. These were John Adams, of Massachusetts, and Thomas Jefferson, of Virginia.

1. When was John Quincy Adams inaugurated? Whose son was he?
2. Give an account of the controversy between the President and the State of Georgia.
3. For what was the 4th of July, 1826, memorable? What two distinguished men died on that day?

4. The *protective tariff*, passed by Congress in 1828, was the occasion of violent political disputes. This was an act laying a tax on foreign goods imported into the United States so that American manufactures might be able to compete with the manufactures of Europe. The Eastern States favored this policy, but the Southern statesmen opposed it because they thought it unconstitutional as well as unjust and damaging to the agricultural interests of the South.

5. Another Presidential election took place during the excitement caused by the passage of the Tariff Act. The friends of the administration nominated Mr. Adams for President, and Richard Rush for Vice President. The opponents of the administration supported Andrew Jackson, of Tennessee, for President, and John C. Calhoun, of South Carolina, for Vice-President. The election resulted in the triumph of the opponents of the administration. Mr. Adams was a man of great intellect and unblemished character, but he had offended the South by favoring a high tariff. He had also given some offence to the New England States by asserting that in 1803 and 1804 those States had favored a dissolution of the Union, and that the Hartford Convention of 1814 had entertained the same design. The New England States, however, favored his tariff policy and gave him a warm support in the Presidential election.

6. During Mr. Adams's term the growth of the country was rapid. It was a period of great prosperity. The first railroad in the United States was built in 1826, and was used in carrying

4. What of the tariff of 1828? What was this? Who favored it? Who opposed it?

5. Whom did the friends of the administration nominate for President in 1828? Whom for Vice-President? Whom did the opponents of the administration support for the same offices? What was the result of the election? What of Mr. Adams's character? How had he offended the New England States? How had he displeased the South?

6. What of the growth of the country? When was the first railroad built? When was the first locomotive imported from England? Who first made the locomotive a success? Where was the first American locomotive built?

granite from the quarries of Quincy, Massachusetts ; the first locomotive was imported from England, in 1829. George Stephenson, an English engineer, was the man who first made the locomotive a practical success. The first successful American locomotive was built at Baltimore, in 1830, and was used for transporting passengers on what is now the Baltimore and Ohio Railroad.

CHAPTER IX.

ADMINISTRATION OF ANDREW JACKSON.

1. ANDREW JACKSON, the seventh President of the United States, was inaugurated on the 4th of March, 1829. He was one of the most remarkable men of his day. He was born in 1767, in the Waxhaw settlement, near the line that divides North and South Carolina. At the age of twenty-one he removed to Nashville, Tennessee, and soon rose to distinction. We have already seen what great services to his country were performed by him at different times.

2. The first important measure of the new administration was the removal of the Indian tribes that lived east of the Mississippi River to a portion of country lying west of that river. This was done that they might no longer be a source of trouble to the whites, who had now occupied the greater part of the territory east of the Mississippi. An act carrying this policy into effect was passed at the session of Congress which commenced December 7, 1829, and ended on the 31st of May, 1830. The removal was finally accomplished some years afterwards.

1. What is said about Andrew Jackson ?

2. What was the first important measure of his administration ? Why was this done ?

3. On the 4th of July, 1831, ex-President James Monroe died in the seventy-fourth year of his age, in New York, at the residence of his daughter, Mrs. Samuel L. Gouverneur.

4. In 1832 a bill was passed by Congress for the re-charter of the United States Bank. This the President vetoed, which made him unpopular with some of his former party friends. This same year another tariff act was passed, which increased the opposition to the protective policy.

5. The Black Hawk War broke out in the Northwest Territory in 1832. Black Hawk was chief of the Saes and Foxes, who refused to leave their lands on the Mississippi, though they had been bought by the United States some years before. General Scott commanded the United States forces who were sent against them. The war was soon terminated by the capture of Black Hawk and several other chiefs of less note. In this war Abraham Lincoln was captain of a company of Illinois volunteers, and Jefferson Davis was a lieutenant of United States regulars.

6. During the fall of 1832 occurred another Presidential election. The original Democratic or Republican party had now been divided into two parties, one of which was styled Democratic and the other National Republican. The party styled National Republican favored the policy of internal improvements by the government, the protective tariff, and the re-chartering of the United States Bank, all of which the Democratic party opposed. The candidates of the National Republicans were Henry Clay, of Kentucky, for President, and John Sergeant, of Pennsylvania, for Vice-President. The candidates of the Democratic party for

3. What distinguished man died July 4, 1831? Where did he die?

4. What bill passed Congress in 1832? What did the President do? What of a tariff?

5. What war broke out in 1832? Who was Black Hawk? Who was sent against them? How was the war terminated? What two men are mentioned as officers in that war?

6. What occurred in the fall of 1832? How had the original Democratic or Republican party become divided? Who were the candidates of the Republicans? Who of the Democrats? Who were elected?

the same offices were Andrew Jackson, for President, and Martin Van Buren, of New York, for Vice-President. The opposition to Jackson was very bitter, but he and Van Buren were elected by an overwhelming majority.

7. Meanwhile, a sovereign convention of the people of South Carolina had assembled and adopted what was known as the *Nullification Ordinance*, the leading features of which were: 1st, a declaration that the tariff act of 1832 was unconstitutional, and therefore null and void; 2d, a provision for testing its constitutionality before the courts of the State; and, 3d, a declaration that, if the measures thus adopted were resisted by the Federal government, the State of South Carolina would withdraw from the Union. This measure was to take effect on the 12th of February, 1833, if the protective policy should not be abandoned by Congress before that time.

8. At the session of Congress in December, 1832, the President recommended a reduction of the tariff. A few days afterwards he issued a proclamation against Nullification, in which he urged the people of South Carolina not to persist in the enforcement of their ordinance, as it would bring on a conflict between the Federal government and the people of South Carolina. Many regarded this proclamation as amounting to the denial of the right of a State to secede from the Union for any cause whatever. The President afterwards maintained that an erroneous construction had been placed upon the proclamation, and declared his adherence to the views of Mr. Jefferson, as set forth in the Virginia and Kentucky resolutions of 1798 and 1799.

9. Soon after Jackson's proclamation against Nullification was

7. What had the South Carolina Convention done? What were the leading features of the Nullification Ordinance? When was this measure to take effect?

8. What did the President recommend in December, 1832? What proclamation did he issue? How did many regard this proclamation? What did the President afterwards maintain?

9. What did Mr. Verplanck, of New York, introduce? What did the Legislature of Virginia do? Did South Carolina consent?

issued, Mr. Verplanck, of New York, introduced a bill for the further reduction of the tariff. The Legislature of Virginia sent Benjamin Watkins Leigh, a peace commissioner, to South Carolina, to urge the authorities of that State to suspend the execution of the ordinance of Nullification, at least until the 4th of March. South Carolina acceded to this request.

10. Meanwhile, Henry Clay, of Kentucky, introduced a compromise into Congress, which was satisfactory to all parties. It passed both Houses of Congress, and received the approval of the President on the 2d of March, 1833. The convention of South Carolina then reassembled, and repealed the ordinance of Nullification. Henry Clay's action in offering the compromise alienated many of the tariff men. When warned that it would cut him off from all chance of ever being President, his noble reply was, "I would rather be right than be President."

11. In the spring of 1833, President Jackson made a tour through New York and the New England States, and was everywhere received with every demonstration of esteem and honor.

12. Soon after the President's return to Washington, he ordered all the public money to be removed from the banks of the United States and to be placed in certain State banks. William J. Duane, the Secretary of the Treasury, refused to obey the order of the President, and Roger B. Taney was appointed Secretary in his place. This action of the President produced great excitement throughout the country. It was the cause of an open war between the President and the Senate, in which, for the first time in their lives, Clay, Calhoun, and Webster were cordially united in their opposition to the President. In defence of the President stood

10. What of Clay's compromise? What of the Carolina convention? When Clay was told that his action in this matter would cut him off from all chance of being President, what was his reply?

11. What happened in the spring of 1833? How was Jackson received?

12. What did the President do soon after his return to Washington? What did his conduct produce? What did it cause? What statesmen opposed the President? Who stood in his defence? What name was now assumed by

Thomas Hart Benton, of Missouri, and John Forsyth, of Georgia. All the opponents of the President's policy now assumed the party name of Whig. The Senate adopted a resolution censuring the President and declaring his conduct unconstitutional. To this the President replied by a paper, known as "The Protest," which was one of the ablest documents ever produced by him. The final result of the contest was the complete triumph of President Jackson. The resolution of censure was finally expunged from the journal of the Senate, by its own order to have black lines drawn around it.

13. A great fire in the city of New York occurred on the night of the 16th of December, 1835, which resulted in the destruction of 'over seventeen million dollars' worth of property.

14. *A war with the Seminole Indians* of Florida broke out on the 28th of the same month. The cause of the war was the attempt by the United States government to remove these Indians to the west of the Mississippi. It commenced by the murder of Honorable Wiley Thompson, United States agent to the tribe, and by the massacre of Major Dade and his command of one hundred men. On the next day an indecisive battle was fought between the Americans under General Clinch and the Indians under Osceola. The Indians then ravaged all the country south of St. Augustine. On the 7th of February, 1836, General Scott assumed the command. On the 29th of the same month, General Gaines, while hastening to the relief of General Clinch, who was besieged in Fort Drane, was attacked by the Indians, but repulsed them. The war with the Seminoles was very vexatious. The Indians, by lurking in the swamps and everglades, managed to keep up the struggle for seven years. In 1837, Osceola came

all the opponents of the President? What did the Senate do? How did the President reply? What was the final result? What became of the resolution of censure?

13. What occurred in New York on the night of the 16th of December?

14. What war broke out the same month? What was the cause of the war? How did it commence? What happened next day? Give an account

to the American camp under a flag of truce, but was seized by General Jessup and imprisoned in Fort Moultrie, where he died in 1838. In December, 1837, Colonel Zachary Taylor defeated the Indians at Lake Okechobee, after which the savages retired to the swamps, and kept up an intermittent war till 1842, when peace was made, and the Seminoles were removed to the country west of the Mississippi, known as Indian Territory.

15. The Creeks had aided the Seminoles. They had commenced hostilities by terrible massacres along the Chattahoochee, in Georgia and Alabama. General Scott brought them to terms in 1836, and they also were removed to Indian Territory.

16. The Cherokees, who lived in Upper Georgia, were also induced to go to the same Territory in 1837 by the payment of five million dollars, and by the firmness of General Scott, who was charged with their removal.



SEAL OF ARKANSAS.

17. Arkansas, the twenty-fifth State, was admitted to the Union on the 16th of June, 1836. It derived its name from a tribe of Indians now extinct. It was the third State formed from the Louisiana Territory, purchased from France in 1803.

18. In the fall of 1836 there was another Presidential election.

of the progress of the war. What happened in 1837? Where and when did Osceola die? What happened in December, 1837? When was peace made, and what was done with the Seminoles?

15. Give an account of the Creek War.

16. How were the Cherokees induced to go to the Indian Territory?

17. When was Arkansas admitted? What else can you say of Arkansas?

The candidates of the Democratic party were Martin Van Buren, of New York, for President, and Richard M. Johnson, of Kentucky, for Vice-President. The Whig or opposition vote was divided between several candidates. Van Buren and Johnson were elected.



SEAL OF MICHIGAN.

19. Michigan, the twenty-sixth State, was admitted on the 26th of January, 1837. An act for its admission was passed when Arkansas was admitted, but it was kept out until a dispute between it and Ohio about the boundary-line was settled. Michigan was one of the States carved out of the Northwest Territory.

CHAPTER X.

ADMINISTRATION OF MARTIN VAN BUREN.

1. MARTIN VAN BUREN, the eighth President, was inaugurated on the 4th of March, 1837.

2. Soon after the inauguration of the new President there occurred a great crash in business and money matters, caused by

18. Who were the candidates of the Democratic party at the election of 1836? Who were elected?

19. When was Michigan admitted? What more can you say of Michigan?

1. When was Martin Van Buren inaugurated?

2. What occurred soon after his inauguration? How did the President try to give relief?

reckless speculation and the expansion of the paper currency beyond all the legitimate wants of the country. The President tried to give relief to the merchants and bankers by suspending suits on bonds which had been given for the collection of duties.

3. Soon after, all the banks in New York City suspended specie payments, and this was followed by a like suspension of nearly all the banks in the country.

4. Mr. Van Buren called an extra session of Congress to meet the exigencies of the Treasury and to provide for the relief of the people. Congress passed an act authorizing the issue of Treasury notes to the amount of ten millions of dollars. The policy of the administration at this time adopted for the collection and transmission of the public funds was known as the "*Sub-Treasury System*."

5. Clay, of Kentucky, and Webster, of Massachusetts, led the opposition to the financial policy of the administration. Calhoun, of South Carolina, Benton, of Missouri, and Silas Wright, of New York, defended it.

6. The subject of the abolition of slavery in the District of Columbia agitated the country at this time. Ex-President John Quincy Adams led the agitation of this question. On the 28th of December, 1837, Mr. Calhoun introduced a series of resolutions to the effect that the Federal government was created by the States with a view to their increased security against all dangers, domestic as well as foreign; that the citizens of one State had no right to interfere with the domestic institutions of another State; and that the Federal government had no right to interfere with slavery either in the States or Territories of the Union. These resolutions were adopted by the Senate by a large majority.

3. What did the banks in New York City do soon after?

4. For what purpose did Mr. Van Buren call Congress together? What act did Congress pass? What was the Sub-Treasury System?

5. Who led the opposition? Who defended the administration?

6. What agitated the country at this time? Who led this agitation? What were Mr. Calhoun's resolutions? Were they adopted?

7. In September, 1838, James Smithson, an Englishman, made a donation to the United States amounting to nearly six hundred thousand dollars for the purpose of endowing the institute in Washington called the Smithsonian Institute.

8. In December, 1838, the slavery agitation was renewed in the House of Representatives, but was quieted for the time by a series of resolutions introduced by Mr. Atherton, of New Hampshire, and adopted by an overwhelming majority of the House of Representatives. The purport of these resolutions was, that under the Constitution of the United States Congress had no authority to interfere with slavery in the several States of the confederacy; that Congress had no right to do indirectly what it could not do directly, and therefore should not interfere with slavery either in the District of Columbia or in the Territories.

9. Henry Clay, who had given these resolutions a warm support, and most of the other prominent public men of the country, thought that this exciting agitation would now be abandoned. But the Abolition party cared nothing for constitutional restraints. The chief of their leaders proclaimed the Constitution to be "a covenant with death and an agreement with hell." Neither of the great parties of the country at this time was connected with the anti-slavery agitators. In fact, the mass of the American people at this time regarded the Abolitionists as men disloyal to the Constitution and as the foes of the Federal Union.

10. In the Presidential election of 1840 the principal issues were the Sub-Treasury System, extravagant appropriations, and all the leading measures of the administration. Martin Van Buren was renominated by the Democrats for the Presidency, but they did not agree upon a candidate for Vice-President. The

7. What did James Smithson do in 1838?

8. When was the slavery agitation renewed in the House? How was it quieted for the time? What was the purport of Mr. Atherton's resolutions?

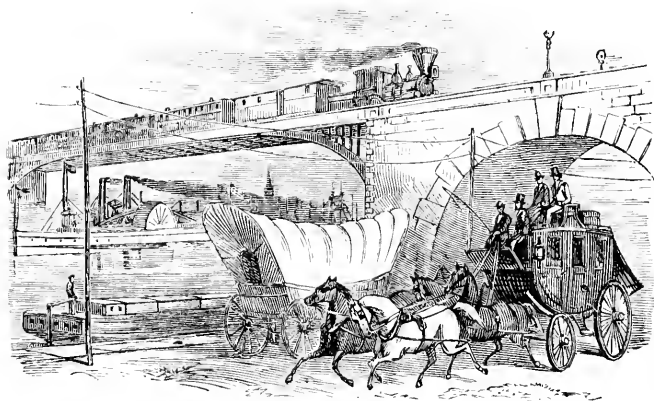
9. Who gave these resolutions a warm support? What of the Abolition party and its leaders?

10. What were the principal issues of the election of 1840? Who was nominated for President by the Democrats? Why did they not nominate a Vice-

Whigs nominated William Henry Harrison, of Ohio, for President, and John Tyler, of Virginia, for Vice-President. The election was an exciting one, and resulted in the complete triumph of the Whig candidates.

CHAPTER XI.

ADMINISTRATIONS OF HARRISON AND TYLER.



PUBLIC IMPROVEMENTS.

1. WILLIAM HENRY HARRISON, the ninth President of the United States, was inaugurated on the 4th of March, 1841. The new President, on the 17th of March, called an extra session of Congress, to meet on the last day of May, but he did not live

President? Whom did the Whigs nominate for President and Vice-President? What of the election?

1. When was Harrison inaugurated? What did the new President do? When did he die?

until the assembling of Congress. He was seized with a violent attack of pneumonia on the 27th of March, and died on the 4th of April, just one month from the day of his inauguration.

2. John Tyler, the Vice-President, now became the tenth President of the United States. Mr. Tyler retained the Cabinet that had been appointed by Mr. Harrison.

3. Soon after his accession the Whig Congress passed a bill establishing the *Fiscal Bank of the United States*. This President Tyler vetoed. Soon after, Congress passed another bill of like character, under the title of the "Fiscal Corporation of the United States." The President vetoed this bill also. This action of the President, refusing to carry out the policy of the majority of the party which elected him, resulted in the division of the Whig party, and all the members of the Cabinet resigned except Daniel Webster, who was Secretary of State. The Cabinet appointed in place of those who had resigned were Whigs of the strict-construction school, who sided with the President.

4. The President also differed with his party on the *Tariff question*. He vetoed two tariff bills, but approved a third, which was more in accordance with his own views.

5. An *important treaty* with Great Britain, which settled definitely the Northeastern boundary between the United States and the neighboring British possessions, was made in 1842. The negotiation was conducted by Daniel Webster, the Secretary of State, on the part of the United States, and Lord Ashburton on the part of Great Britain.

6. The Dorr Rebellion in Rhode Island occurred during the

2. Who now became President? What did he do in regard to his Cabinet?

3. What happened soon after his accession? What did Mr. Tyler do? What did Congress then do? What did the President do with this bill? What did the President's conduct bring about? What did the members of the Cabinet do? Who were appointed in their place?

4. On what else did the President differ from his party?

5. What important treaty was made with Great Britain in 1842? By whom were the negotiations conducted?

6. What caused the Dorr Rebellion in Rhode Island? How was it sub-

same year. It was caused by the dissatisfaction of some of the people, who wished to change the constitution of Rhode Island (which was the old charter granted by Charles II.). This insurrection was subdued with the loss of but one man. Dorr was tried for treason, convicted, and sentenced to imprisonment for life, but was pardoned in less than a year. The dissatisfaction of the people was appeased by the adoption of a new State constitution in 1843.

7. *The annexation of Texas* was a question which greatly agitated the country towards the close of Mr. Tyler's term of office. Texas had been claimed in 1818 by the United States as a part of Louisiana, but the government of the United States renounced its claim at the time of the cession of Florida by Spain. In 1820, *Moses Austin*, a native of Connecticut, obtained permission of Spain to establish a colony of emigrants from the United States in the limits of what is now known as the State of Texas. At his death his son *Stephen Austin* succeeded to his rights under this grant. This son was the founder of the city of Austin. Soon after this Stephen Austin returned to the United States for more emigrants. While he was absent *Mexico* and other *Spanish provinces* became *independent of Spain*, and Austin was obliged to visit the city of Mexico and obtain a confirmation of the grant made to his father. In this he succeeded, and the Mexican Congress in 1824 declared that Texas should, when it had a sufficient population, become *a State of the Mexican Republic*. Emigrants from the United States and from other countries now went to Texas in large numbers. In 1832, soon after the accession of *Santa Anna* to the Presidency of Mexico, the people of Texas

duced? What became of Dorr? How was the dissatisfaction of the people appeased?

7. What of the annexation of Texas? What can you say about claims to Texas? What did Moses Austin do in 1820? Who founded the city of Austin? What happened during Austin's absence? What was he obliged to do? Did he succeed? What did the Mexican Congress do? What happened in 1832? When Santa Anna became President of the Mexican Republic, what did the Texans do? When the people of Texas resisted the usurpations of

demanded admission into the Mexican Union as a separate State, and sent Austin as their agent to the Mexican Congress. Meanwhile, Santa Anna had overthrown the Mexican Constitution and made himself dictator. The people of Texas insisted upon their rights under the Mexican Constitution, and raised forces to resist the usurpations of Santa Anna. The Mexican general Cos marched against the Texans; but was defeated by them at *Gonzales*, and shortly after at *Goliad*, in the month of October, 1835. Austin at this time commanded the Texas forces, but in the latter part of the year he resigned his position, and *General Sam Houston* was made commander of the Texan forces. In December, 1835, the Texans captured *General Cos* and his army, numbering over one thousand men, in the town of *Bexar*, after a six days' siege. Santa Anna then marched against the Texans at the head of more than seven thousand men, and captured *Fort Alamo*, defended by one hundred and forty Texans, after a bombardment which lasted eleven days, but with a Mexican loss of sixteen hundred men. After the surrender the garrison was put to the sword. Towards the last of March, 1836, a battle was fought at *Goliad*, where Colonel Fannin, a Georgian, finding himself about to be overpowered, determined to surrender, if he could obtain honorable terms. Santa Anna made an agreement with him that, if he and his men would give up their arms, they should be permitted to return to the United States. As soon as the surrender was complete Santa Anna treacherously caused the whole force of more than three hundred men to be put to the sword. At *San Jacinto*, on the 21st of April, 1836, Santa Anna's army was attacked by a far inferior Texas force under General Houston, and totally defeated, with a loss of more than half their men in killed, wounded, and captured. Santa Anna himself was taken prisoner.

Santa Anna, who marched against them? Where was General Cos defeated? Who was made commander of the Texas forces? What great victory did the Texans gain in 1835? What did Santa Anna then do? What did Santa Anna capture? How did he treat the garrison? What treachery was Santa Anna guilty of in March, 1836? Give an account of the battle of San Jacinto.

A *treaty* was now entered into between Santa Anna and General Houston, under the terms of which the Mexican forces were withdrawn from the soil of Texas. The *independence* of Texas was now acknowledged by France, Great Britain, and the United States.

8. The people of Texas, in 1837, sought to be admitted into the American Union as a State. But their application was not granted at this time.

9. A *treaty for the annexation of Texas* was negotiated by Mr. Tyler on the 12th of April, 1844, but it was rejected by the Senate.

10. In the Presidential election which occurred in the fall of 1844, the prominent feature of the contest was the annexation of Texas, which the Democrats favored and the Whigs opposed. Henry Clay, of Kentucky, was the candidate of the Whigs for President, and Theodore Frelinghuysen, formerly of New Jersey, but then of New York, was their candidate for Vice-President. The Democratic party nominated for President, James K. Polk, of Tennessee, and for Vice-President, George M. Dallas, of Pennsylvania. The election resulted in the triumph of Polk and Dallas, the Democratic candidates. This was an endorsement of the policy of annexation.

11. A joint resolution providing for the annexation of Texas, which had been adopted by both Houses of Congress, was approved by President Tyler on the 1st of March, 1845, a few days before the expiration of his term of office.

What treaty was now entered into? By what countries was the independence of Texas acknowledged?

8. What did the people of Texas do in 1837?

9. When was a treaty for the annexation of Texas negotiated? What became of it?

10. What was the prominent feature of the Presidential election of 1844? Who were the candidates of the Whigs? Who of the Democrats? How did the election result?

11. When was a joint resolution for the annexation of Texas, which had been adopted by both Houses of Congress, approved by the President?

12. Florida, the twenty-seventh State, was admitted to the Union on the 3d of March, 1845, and at the same time an act



SEAL OF FLORIDA.

was passed providing for the admission of Iowa, though the latter State was not regularly admitted until later.

13. One of the most important events of Mr. Tyler's administration was the invention of the *electric telegraph* by Professor Samuel Morse, a native of Massachusetts. Congress gave him thirty thousand dollars to try if his invention would work. It was a complete success. The first telegraph line was stretched from Washington to Baltimore. The *first message* ever sent over the wires was by Miss Ellsworth, the daughter of the Commissioner of Patents, who had been Morse's most steadfast friend while in Washington. The words of the message were, "What hath God wrought!" The *first news* ever sent over the wires was the nomination of Mr. Polk to the Presidency.

12. When was Florida admitted to the Union? An act was passed for the admission of what State?

13. What was one of the most important events of Tyler's administration? Who was the inventor? How did Congress help him? Between what places was the first telegraph line? By whom was the first message sent over the wires? What were the words of the message? What was the first news?

CHAPTER XII.

ADMINISTRATION OF JAMES K. POLK.—WAR WITH MEXICO.



STORMING OF MONTEREY.

1. JAMES K. POLK, the eleventh President of the United States, was inaugurated on the 4th of March, 1845. In his inaugural he expressed his approval of the action of Congress on the Texas question. In regard to the Northwest boundary of the United States, about which there had arisen a dispute with Great Britain, he asserted that the title of the United States to the whole of Oregon as far north as $54^{\circ} 40'$ was clear and indisputable, and expressed a determination to maintain such title by force if necessary.

2. *The Oregon question* was settled in 1846 by a treaty, and

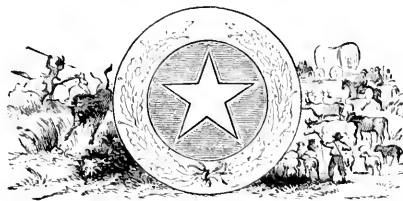
1. When was James K. Polk inaugurated? What did he say about the Texas question? What about the Northwest boundary?

2. When and how was the Oregon question settled?

the boundary was fixed at 49° instead of $54^{\circ} 40'$, as claimed by the United States.

3. Soon after Mr. Polk's accession to office General Almonte, the Mexican minister at Washington, demanded his passports and left the country. He did this because Mexico had never recognized the independence of Texas. All friendly intercourse now ceased between the United States and Mexico. The majority of the people of the United States considered that Mexico had no just claim to Texas, because, ever since the battle of San Jacinto, which was fought in April, 1836, no Mexican army had been in Texas, and the Texans had for nearly nine years maintained an independent government, free from interference on the part of Mexico.

4. On the 4th of July, 1845, Texas agreed to the terms of annexation, and on the 27th of December of the same year, Con-



SEAL OF TEXAS.

gress passed an act recognizing Texas as a State of the Federal Union. During her career as an independent republic Texas had four Presidents, viz. : David G. Burnett, General Sam Houston, General Mirabeau B. Lamar, and Anson Jones. At the time of

3. Soon after Mr. Polk's accession, what did the Mexican minister do? Why did he do this? What did the majority of the people of the United States think? Why did they think so?

4. When did Texas agree to the terms of annexation? When did Congress recognize her as a State? How many Presidents had Texas during her career as an independent State? Who were they? How many inhabitants had it at this time? What else can you say of Texas?

its admission Texas had a population of about two hundred thousand inhabitants. It is the largest State in the Union, and embraces two hundred and thirty-seven thousand square miles.

5. In the summer of 1845 the President sent General Zachary Taylor, with an army of about five thousand men, to defend the frontiers of Texas. This general took post in August at Corpus Christi, near the mouth of the Nueces River.

6. On the 8th of June, 1845, the country was called to mourn the death of ex-President Andrew Jackson.

7. Among the leading measures of Congress which met in December of this year were the repeal of the Whig tariff of 1842, and the enactment of another based upon the principles of free trade, the re-enactment of the Sub-Treasury System, the establishment of the Smithsonian Institute out of the funds bequeathed for that purpose in 1837, and a resolution for terminating the joint occupation of Oregon under the treaty at that time existing with Great Britain.

8. Internal improvement bills and a bill to pay United States citizens for French depredations on their commerce committed many years previously were vetoed by the President.

9. While Congress was in session military events of great importance were occurring on the frontiers of Texas. The country lying between the Nueces and the Rio Grande was disputed territory, being claimed by both Texas and Mexico. On the 13th of January, 1846, General Taylor was ordered to advance into the disputed territory. He did so, and on the 28th of March reached the east bank of the Rio Grande. On the bank of the river opposite the Mexican city of Matamoras he erected a fortress called Fort Brown.

5. What did the President do in the summer of 1845? Where did Taylor take post?

6. What great man died on the 8th of June, 1845?

7. What were among the leading measures of Congress which met in December of this year?

8. What bills were vetoed by the President?

9. Meanwhile, what of affairs in Texas?

10. On the 26th of April, General Ampudia, the Mexican commander at Matamoras, gave notice to General Taylor that he considered hostilities commenced. On the same day *Captain Thornton*, who had been sent up the river to reconnoitre two days before with sixty-three dragoons, fell into a Mexican ambuscade, and, after losing sixteen of his men, was compelled to surrender.

11. General Taylor having ascertained that the Mexicans had crossed the Rio Grande and were moving against Point Isabel for the purpose of cutting him off from supplies, left a small garrison at Fort Brown and marched with his main army to the relief of the threatened post. As soon as Taylor left *Fort Brown* the Mexicans assailed it, but the fort was bravely defended, and the assailants could make no headway, though the American commander, Major Brown, was killed.

12. Taylor having garrisoned Point Isabel, hastened, with about twenty-three hundred men, to the relief of Fort Brown. On the 8th of May, about noon, he encountered the Mexican army, numbering six thousand men, under General Arista, at a place called *Palo Alto*, and after a spirited action, in which the gallant Major Ringgold lost his life, Taylor forced the Mexicans to give way. On the next day Taylor again encountered the Mexican army heavily reinforced, and now numbering nearly eight thousand men, at *Resaca de la Palma*. The Americans immediately attacked and soon had the enemy in complete rout. It was in this battle that Captain May and his dragoons made their celebrated charge, capturing the Mexican artillery and General La Vega. In these two battles of the 8th and 9th of May the loss of the Mexicans was more than twelve hundred men, and that of the

10. What did General Ampudia do on the 26th of April? What can you say of Captain Thornton and his party?

11. Give an account of Taylor's movements. What was the result of the Mexican assault on Fort Brown?

12. What did Taylor do after garrisoning Point Isabel? Give an account of the battles of Palo Alto and Resaca de la Palma. What did Taylor do on the 18th of May?

Americans not more than two hundred killed and wounded. On the 18th of May, Taylor crossed the Rio Grande and took possession of *Matamoras*.

13. The news of these victories produced great excitement and enthusiasm throughout the United States. On the 11th of May the President sent in a message to Congress declaring that Mexico "had invaded our territory and shed the blood of our fellow-citizens on our own soil." Congress then *declared that war existed "by the act of Mexico,"* and authorized the President to accept the services of fifty thousand volunteers. More than three hundred thousand men responded to this call, and soon General Taylor's force was greatly increased by large numbers of volunteers.

14. In the latter part of August, General Taylor began his march into the interior, and on the 19th of September, with about six thousand five hundred men, he appeared before *Monterey*, the capital of New Leon, which was garrisoned by ten thousand Mexicans, commanded by General Ampudia. On the 21st of September the attack began, and on the 24th the city surrendered. A truce was then agreed upon between the two generals, but, on the 13th of October, Taylor was ordered by President Polk to resume hostilities.

15. Meanwhile, *General Kearney*, with another American force, conquered the whole of *New Mexico*. On the 25th of November he set out for California with four hundred dragoons, but learning on the way that California had already been taken possession of by the United States forces, he sent back three hundred of his men and proceeded on his way with only one hundred.

13. What did the news of these victories produce? What did the President do on the 11th of May? How many volunteers were called for? How many responded?

14. What did General Taylor do in the latter part of August? With how many men did he approach Monterey? By how many men was Monterey garrisoned? How did the attack result? What was then agreed upon? When was Taylor ordered to resume hostilities?

15. Tell about General Kearney's movements.

16. The conquest of California had been effected during the preceding summer by a land force commanded by *Colonel Fremont*, assisted by a naval force under the command of *Commodore Sloat* and *Commodore Stockton*.

17. Early in December, *Colonel Doniphan*, with nine hundred men, set out from Santa Fé to the southward, expecting to join General Wool, who had already moved forward to the conquest of the northern portions of Mexico. Doniphan's force marched a thousand miles through the enemy's country, gaining on the way two victories over superior forces, and finally entered *Chihuahua* (che-wah-wah), a city of forty thousand inhabitants. Here he expected to find General Wool, but Wool had joined General Worth, who was stationed at Saltillo (sahl-teel-yo) with the greater part of Taylor's army. Worth had occupied this place about the middle of November. In December, General Patterson had taken possession of Victoria. The port of Tampico had been seized by Commodore Perry.

18. Soon after Taylor had occupied Saltillo and Victoria he received orders to send the greater part of his army to General Scott, who was preparing for a campaign against the city of Mexico. Taylor was also ordered to fall back towards Monterey and only hold the ground already obtained. It was of course mortifying to General Taylor to be thus stopped in his career of victory, but like a good soldier he obeyed.

19. General Santa Anna, who had now been made President of Mexico, advanced with twenty thousand men against Taylor's diminished army. Taylor, with barely five thousand men, took up a strong position at the narrow mountain-pass of Angostura, or *Buena Vista* (bwā-nah vees-tah). The battle commenced on

16. By whom had the conquest of California been effected?

17. Give an account of Doniphan's movements. Of General Wool's movements. Of Worth's. Of Patterson's. What had Perry seized?

18. Where was Taylor ordered to send the greater part of his army? What else was he ordered to do? Did he obey?

19. What did General Santa Anna now do? How many men had Taylor?

the evening of the 22d of February, 1847, but night soon put an end to the conflict. The next morning the attack was renewed by the Mexicans with great spirit, and several times during the day the battle was almost lost to the Americans. But with determined obstinacy the little army held its ground, and when night came the Mexicans were repulsed at all points. In this battle Colonel Jefferson Davis, of the Mississippi Volunteers, and Captains Bragg and Sherman, of the regular artillery, especially distinguished themselves. The repulse at Buena Vista so disheartened the Mexicans that they made no further attempts to molest General Taylor, and they were forced to abandon the northern provinces of Mexico to the Americans.

20. General Scott, to whom the conquest of the city of Mexico had been intrusted, landed, on the 9th of March, 1847, his army, twelve thousand strong, a short distance south of *Vera Cruz*. The landing was effected without opposition. *Vera Cruz* was guarded on the water side by the strong castle San Juan de Ulloa (sahn hwan day oo-lo-ah). On the 27th of March, after a furious bombardment, the city and castle surrendered, and on the 29th they were occupied by the Americans.

21. General Scott now began the advance upon the city of Mexico. At the mountain-pass of *Cerro Gordo* he found the Mexican army, fifteen thousand strong, led by Santa Anna, strongly posted. On the 18th of April the Americans stormed the heights and, after a desperate battle, drove the Mexicans from the field, capturing three thousand prisoners, forty-three cannon, and five thousand stand of arms. On the 15th of May the American advance, under General Worth, occupied the city of Puebla.

Where did Taylor place his army? Describe the battle of Buena Vista. Who specially distinguished themselves? What effect had this repulse on the Mexicans?

20. Give an account of the capture of Vera Cruz.

21. What did Scott now begin? Give an account of the battle of Cerro Gordo. What city did the Americans occupy on the 15th of May?

22. On the 7th of August, General Scott, with eleven thousand men, set out for the city of Mexico. This city was defended by thirty thousand Mexicans, led by Santa Anna, and posted behind intrenchments which they considered impregnable. On the 20th of August the Americans stormed and carried the strong positions of *Contreras* and *Churubusco* (con-trâ-râhs and choo-roo-boos-ko). The New York and South Carolina regiments entered the works at Churubusco side by side, and vied with each other in planting the stars and stripes over the conquered Mexican fortifications.

23. Negotiations for peace followed these battles, but they came to nothing, and hostilities were resumed.

24. On the 8th of September, General Worth, with four thousand Americans, captured, after a desperate battle, a large stone building, called *Molino del Rey* (mo-le-no del-ray), though defended by an army of fourteen thousand Mexicans.

25. On the 13th of September the castle of *Chapultepec* (cha-pool-ta-pek) was carried by storm. On the 14th, General Scott, surrounded by a brilliant staff of gallant officers, at the head of the victorious army, made a triumphal entry into the city of Mexico, and the American flag floated proudly over the palace of the Montezumas. In the campaign of the Valley of Mexico the young officers Lee, Beauregard, and McClellan especially distinguished themselves.

26. The war was now practically ended. Santa Anna made an attempt to capture the American garrison at Puebla, but was met by General Lane, and defeated at Huamantla (wha-mant-la) on the 9th of October.

22. What was the size of the respective armies around the city of Mexico? Describe the battles of Contreras and Churubusco.

23. What of peace negotiations?

24. Tell what is said of the battle of Molino del Rey.

25. When was the castle of Chapultepec stormed? What did Scott do on the 14th of September? Who especially distinguished themselves in this campaign?

26. What of Santa Anna's attempt on the garrison at Puebla?

27. A *treaty of peace* was concluded at Guadalupe Hidalgo (guad-a-loop-ay he-dahl-go), February 2, 1848. This treaty was ratified by the United States Senate on the 10th of March, and by the Mexican Congress on the 30th of May. Peace was proclaimed by President Polk on the 4th of July, 1848.

28. By this treaty the United States acquired all the vast territory now comprised in New Mexico, Utah, and California, and Mexico abandoned also all claim to any part of Texas. Mexico received a compensation of fifteen million dollars, besides the cancelling of certain claims of American citizens, which amounted to three million more dollars. The cost of the war to the United States was twenty thousand lives and two hundred million dollars in money.

29. Soon after the treaty of peace was made it was discovered that California had the richest gold mines in the world. People from every nation now flocked to California in great numbers, and the population within four years reached nearly two hundred thousand.

30. Angry disputes about the territory acquired from Mexico began to agitate the Union even before the treaty was negotiated. The occasion of these disputes was that some of the Northern members of Congress desired to exclude slavery from this territory, while the Southern members claimed that this was a question over which Congress had no control.

31. In the midst of these exciting debates ex-President John

27. Where and when was a treaty of peace concluded? When was it ratified by the United States Senate? When by the Mexican Congress? When was peace proclaimed?

28. What did the United States acquire by the treaty? What did Mexico receive as a compensation? What did the war cost the United States?

29. What was discovered soon after the treaty of peace? What was the consequence?

30. What began to agitate the Union? What was the occasion of these disputes?

31. What distinguished man died in the midst of these debates? How old was he?

Quincy Adams was stricken with paralysis at his seat in the House of Representatives, on the 21st of February, 1848. He was borne to the Speaker's room, where he died two days after, on the 23d of February, in the eighty-first year of his age.

32. Another Presidential election occurred in the fall of 1848. The candidates of the Democratic party were General Lewis Cass, of Michigan, for President, and General William O. Butler, of Kentucky, for Vice-President. The nominees of the Whig party were General Zachary Taylor, of Louisiana, for President, and Millard Fillmore, of New York, for Vice-President. All those opposed to the extension of slavery now formed a new party, called *Free-Soilers*, and nominated Martin Van Buren, of New York, for President, and Charles Francis Adams, of Massachusetts, for Vice-President. The election resulted in the choice of Taylor and Fillmore, the candidates of the Whig party.

33. Two new States were admitted during Mr. Polk's administration, Iowa and Wisconsin. Provision had been made for the



SEAL OF IOWA.

admission of Iowa at the same time that Florida was admitted, but the admission did not actually take place until the 28th of December, 1846. Iowa was the fourth State formed from the original Louisiana Territory. Its name is of Indian origin, and

32. Who were the Democratic candidates in the election of 1848? Who the Whig? What new party was now formed? Who were the nominees of this party? How did the election result?

33. What two new States were admitted during Polk's administration? When had provision been made for the admission of Iowa? When did the

means "Drowsy Ones." Wisconsin, the thirtieth State, was admitted into the Union on the 29th of May, 1848. Its name,



SEAL OF WISCONSIN.

derived from its principal river, signifies "the gathering of the waters." Wisconsin was originally a part of the "Northwest Territory."

CHAPTER XIII.

ADMINISTRATIONS OF ZACHARY TAYLOR AND MILLARD FILLMORE.

1. GENERAL ZACHARY TAYLOR, the twelfth President of the United States, was inaugurated on the 5th of March, 1849, because the 4th came on Sunday. His inaugural address was conciliatory, and gave satisfaction to the true friends of the Union and the Constitution. General Taylor was a citizen of Louisiana, though he was born in Virginia and reared in Kentucky.

2. The Congress which assembled on the 5th day of December, 1849, remained in session longer than any previous Congress. This session lasted from the 5th of December, 1849, to the 30th

admission actually take place? What more can you say of Iowa? When was Wisconsin admitted? What else can you say of it?

1. What is said of General Taylor?

2. What of the Congress which met on the 5th of December, 1849? How was the session characterized?

of December, 1850, and was characterized by many angry discussions, which greatly alarmed the friends of the Union.

3. The subjects of public excitement were the admission of California as a State, the formation of Territorial governments for Utah and New Mexico, the settlement of the boundary between New Mexico and Texas, slavery in the District of Columbia, and the non-rendition of fugitives from service.

4. The *slavery* question was brought into special prominence in the debates on the admission of California as a State and the formation of Territorial governments for Utah and New Mexico. All of the Southern members of Congress were willing to settle the dispute about slavery on the principle of a division of the public domain between the North and the South, but the delegations from the Northern States would not agree to this settlement of the slavery question. The Southern members then insisted upon the establishment of the principle of non-interference by Congress with slavery either in the Territories or on the admission of new States into the Union. The Southern members also desired the passage of a law providing some efficient mode for the reclamation and rendition of fugitive slaves from one State to another, but this was bitterly opposed by many Northern members.

5. While these exciting debates were at their height, John C. Calhoun, of South Carolina, died. This was on the 31st of March, 1850. Calhoun was born in South Carolina in 1782. He was a man of powerful intellect and great influence, especially in the South. For forty years he was in public life. He was an able advocate of the right of a State to secede from the Union, and for this reason has been much disliked by a great many people at the North. But Mr. Calhoun was not the first who

3. What were the subjects of public excitement?

4. How was the slavery question brought into special prominence? What was the position of the two parties on this question?

5. What great statesman died on the 31st of March, 1850? What can you say of him? Why was he disliked at the North? Who had proclaimed ultra State rights doctrines before him? What did Webster say of Calhoun?

proclaimed the doctrine of ultra State rights. The same doctrine was proclaimed many years before by Roger Sherman, of Connecticut, one of the signers of the Declaration of Independence, and had many advocates in every section of the Union. Daniel Webster said of Calhoun, "He had unspotted integrity and honor unimpeached; nothing grovelling, low, or meanly selfish came near his head or heart." He was sixty-eight years old at the time of his death.

6. On the 9th of July, 1850, the whole country was filled with sorrow by the death of President Taylor after a few days of illness. For a second time in our country's history a President had died in office.

7. Millard Fillmore, the Vice-President, now succeeded to the high office left vacant by the death of General Taylor, and became the thirteenth President. He gave his cordial sympathy to the efforts of Clay and Webster to bring about a satisfactory settlement of the questions in dispute between the North and the South.

8. These exciting questions were settled in September, 1850, by the "*Omnibus Bill*," which had been introduced in the early part of the summer by Mr. Clay, of Kentucky. It provided that California should be admitted as a free State, that the Territories of Utah and New Mexico should be established without any slavery restriction, that the slave-trade in the District of Columbia should be abolished, that a law should be passed for the arrest and return of fugitive slaves, and that ten million dollars should be paid to Texas in consideration of her giving up all claim to New Mexico. Daniel Webster, of Massachusetts, gave to Mr. Clay his cordial support in bringing about this settlement, frequently called the "Compromise of 1850."

6. Who died on the 9th of July, 1850?

7. Who now became President? To what did he give his cordial support?

8. How were the exciting questions settled? What did the "Omnibus Bill" provide? Who assisted Mr. Clay in bringing about these measures? What is this settlement frequently called?

9. California, the thirty-first State, was admitted into the Union under this adjustment on the 9th of September, 1850.



SEAL OF CALIFORNIA.

10. The peaceful settlement of all the exciting questions which had disturbed the country gave great satisfaction to a large majority of the people of the United States. Mr. Clay, as the originator of the "Compromise Measures," had now the confidence and love of men of all parties. He never again took an active part in public affairs, but from this time gradually failed in health. He continued, however, to hold his seat until the 29th of June, 1852, when he died, after having passed his seventy-fifth birthday. Henry Clay was born in Virginia, but in early life removed to Kentucky, and was the great orator of the West. Alexander H. Stephens says of him, "The mid-day of the life of few public men was ever more stormy than his had been, while that of none ever closed with a more tranquil and glorious sunset."

11. Later in the year the country was again thrown into mourning by the death of Daniel Webster, of Massachusetts, which occurred on the 23d of October, 1852. He was born in New Hampshire in 1782, but, when a young man, removed to Massa-

9. When was California admitted into the Union?

10. What can you say of the peaceful settlement of all the questions that had disturbed the country? What of Mr. Clay? When did Mr. Clay die? What does Mr. Stephens say of his life?

11. What other great man died on the 23d of October, 1852? What can you say of Mr. Webster?

chusetts. He was one of the grandest orators that ever lived. He was strongly opposed to the extreme States' rights doctrines, but was always ready to advocate any measure of conciliation, and had a heart which embraced in its love every section of the Union. Many people were disappointed because he had not been nominated for President by the Whig convention, which met in June, 1852, and at the polls many thousands voted a ticket headed by his name, even after he was dead.

12. Clay, Calhoun, and Webster were considered the greatest statesmen of their day. Although they often differed widely in their views of public policy, they were all true patriots, and thoroughly devoted to the Union under the Constitution. They are frequently spoken of as "The Immortal Trio."

13. At the Presidential election of this year the Democratic party nominated General Franklin Pierce, of New Hampshire, for President, and William R. King, of Alabama, for Vice-President. The Whigs put in nomination General Winfield Scott, of Virginia, for President, and William A. Graham, of North Carolina, for Vice-President. Both these parties pledged themselves to stand by the "Compromise Measures of 1850." The Free-Soil party also nominated candidates. These were John P. Hale, of New Hampshire, for President, and George W. Julian, of Indiana, for Vice-President.

14. The election resulted in the overwhelming triumph of the Democratic candidates. The Free-Soil ticket received no electoral vote, and polled of individual votes only a little more than half of what it had polled in 1848.

12. What more is said of Clay, Calhoun, and Webster?

13. Who were the nominees of the Democratic party at the election of 1852? Who of the Whig party? To what did both parties pledge themselves? Whom did the Free-Soil party nominate?

14. How did the election result? What of the Free-Soil ticket?

CHAPTER XIV.

ADMINISTRATION OF FRANKLIN PIERCE.

1. FRANKLIN PIERCE, the fourteenth President of the United States, was inaugurated on the 4th of March, 1853.

2. During Pierce's administration several important questions arose with foreign powers. The first of these was a dispute with Mexico about the boundary-line, but this was settled by negotiation. The United States purchased from Mexico about thirty thousand square miles of territory lying south of the river Gila (he-lah). This is embraced in the limits of the present Territory of Arizona. This acquisition of territory, known as the Gadsden Purchase, cost the United States ten million dollars.

3. A sharp dispute with Austria as to whether that country had the right to seize in a neutral port one of her citizens who had been engaged in the Hungarian Revolution, but had subsequently expressed his intention to become an American citizen, was amicably settled in favor of the United States.

4. Japan, which had previously kept its ports closed to all foreign nations, was induced to make a commercial treaty with the United States in 1854. The Japanese expedition which brought about this treaty was commanded by Commodore Perry, a brother of the hero of Lake Erie.

5. The slavery agitation was renewed in Congress on the 4th of January, 1854, when the *Kansas and Nebraska Bill* was in-

-
1. When was Pierce inaugurated?
 2. What dispute arose with Mexico? How was it settled?
 3. How was a dispute with Austria settled?
 4. What was Japan induced to do? By whom was the Japanese expedition commanded?
 5. When was the slavery agitation renewed in Congress? What did this

troduced by Mr. Douglas, of Illinois. This bill provided that the people of those Territories were to decide for themselves at the time of their admission whether they would have slaves or not. A great many people in the North opposed this measure, claiming that it would be a repeal of the Missouri Compromise of 1820, according to which there was to be no slavery north of $36^{\circ} 30'$. On the other hand, the Democratic party claimed that the Missouri Compromise had long been ignored by their opponents, and that the act of 1850, providing for the territorial government of Utah, which was itself north of $36^{\circ} 30'$, had established the principle of non-interference of Congress with slavery in the Territories or in the States. They claimed that the Kansas and Nebraska bill merely sought to carry out the policy established by the "Compromise of 1850." The strict-construction Whigs agreed with the Democrats in this view.

6. After a protracted and bitter debate the Kansas and Nebraska bill passed the Senate by a majority of nearly two to one, and the House of Representatives by a majority of thirteen, after which it received the sanction of the President.

7. *A struggle for Kansas* now began. Settlers from the South and the North began to pour in in large numbers. Emigrant aid societies were formed in the North, and the emigrants sent out by them were supplied with arms. On the other hand, large numbers of armed Southerners, mostly Missourians, flocked into Kansas, and before long there arose difficulties between the settlers from the North and those from the South, and a state of anarchy known as the "*Kansas War*" continued for several years. During Pierce's administration the government generally managed to keep the peace by a faithful maintenance of the laws.

bill provide? Why did a great many people in the North oppose this measure? What did the Democratic party claim? Who agreed with the Democrats?

6. How did the Kansas and Nebraska bill pass the Senate? How the House?

7. Give an account of the Kansas troubles.

8. About this time there arose a new party, whose distinctive features were opposition to "alien suffrage" and to the election to office of Roman Catholics and men of foreign birth. The name assumed by them was the "American party," but it was generally styled the Know-Nothing party.

9. On the 17th of June all the elements of the anti-slavery party met in convention at Philadelphia, and organized under the popular name of *Republicans*. They held it to be the duty of Congress to prohibit in the Territories what they considered as "the twin relics of barbarism,—polygamy and slavery." They put forward as candidates John C. Fremont, of California, for President, and William L. Dayton, of New Jersey, for Vice-President.

10. The American party also held its convention at Philadelphia. They proclaimed opposition to alien suffrage, or, in other words, they favored a much longer residence of foreigners in the United States before they should be admitted to the rights of citizenship than the naturalization laws require. They abandoned their opposition to Roman Catholics. In regard to the slavery question they pledged themselves to stand by the Compromise measures of 1850, and nominated Millard Fillmore, of New York, for President, and Andrew J. Donelson, of Tennessee, for Vice-President.

11. The Democratic party met at Cincinnati and nominated for the Presidency James Buchanan, of Pennsylvania, and for the Vice-Presidency John C. Breckinridge, of Kentucky. The

8. What new party arose at this time? What did they call themselves? What were they generally called?

9. What happened at Philadelphia on the 17th of June? What did the Republican party hold to be the duty of Congress? Whom did they put forward as candidates?

10. Where did the American party hold its convention? What did they proclaim? In regard to the slavery question, to what did they pledge themselves? Whom did they nominate?

11. Where did the Democratic party meet? Who were their candidates? To what did they pledge themselves?

party pledged themselves to stand by the Compromise measures of 1850.

12. The result of the election was a complete triumph of the Democratic party. The vote by States stood nineteen for the Democratic ticket, eleven for the Republican, and one for the American candidates.

Topical Review of Part Third.

1. *Administration of Washington.*—George Washington, of Virginia, the first President of the United States, was inaugurated on the 30th of April, 1789, and served eight years. His election was unanimous. John Adams, of Massachusetts, was Vice-President during his administration. The leading events of Washington's administration were *troubles with the Creeks*, which were settled by treaty; the *defeat of the tribes of Indians* inhabiting the Northwest Territory, which was accomplished after several reverses; the *Whiskey Insurrection* in Pennsylvania, which was subdued without bloodshed; also, the *troubles with France*, caused by the conduct of Genet and Adet, ministers from the French Republic to the United States; and the *negotiation of important treaties* with England, Spain, and Algiers. By the treaty with Spain the United States secured for a period of ten years the free navigation of the Mississippi, which at that time belonged to Spain.

2. *Administration of John Adams.*—John Adams, of Massachusetts, the second President, was inaugurated on the 4th of March, 1797, and was in office four years. He was elected by the Federalists. Thomas Jefferson was at the same time elected Vice-President, though not by the Federalists, for, as the Constitution stood at that time, the one who received the next highest

12. What was the result of the election? What was the vote by States?

number of votes became Vice-President, and Jefferson was the second in the contest, and therefore the next highest office was conferred on him. The chief events of Mr. Adams's administration were the *troubles with France* and the *Alien and Sedition Acts*. Though war was never declared between the United States and France, yet several engagements did occur between their ships of war, which were to the advantage of the Americans. These troubles were settled by a treaty made in 1801 with *Napoleon Bonaparte*. The Alien and Sedition Acts made Mr. Adams very unpopular, and he was defeated by Thomas Jefferson in 1800.

3. *Administration of Thomas Jefferson*.—Thomas Jefferson, of Virginia, the third President of the United States, was inaugurated on the 4th of March, 1801. He served two terms, or eight years. Aaron Burr, of New York, was Vice-President during his first term, and George Clinton, also of New York, was Vice-President during his second term. Jefferson's election was a triumph of the Democrats, or Republicans, as they were then called. The *leading event* of Jefferson's administration was the cession of Louisiana, consummated by a treaty made with Napoleon Bonaparte on the 30th of April, 1803. Louisiana at that time embraced all the vast territory lying between the Mississippi River and the Rocky Mountains, the northern portion extending to the Pacific Ocean.

A war with the Tripolitans was brought to a successful issue. Injuries to American commerce, growing out of British "Orders in Council" and the "French Decrees," demanded the attention of Mr. Jefferson. The hostility to England was greatly increased by an unprovoked attack made by the British ship-of-war *Leopard* on the American frigate *Chesapeake*. An Embargo Act was passed by Congress, but was repealed on account of its unpopularity in the New England States.

4. *Administration of James Madison*.—James Madison, of Virginia, the fourth President of the United States, was inaugurated on the 4th of March, 1809. He also was elected by the Democrats, or Republicans, and continued in office eight years.

George Clinton, of New York, was Vice-President during Madison's first term, and Elbridge Gerry, of Massachusetts, during his second term. The leading event of Madison's administration was the *second war with England, commonly called the War of 1812*. This war was caused by the overbearing conduct of England toward the United States in claiming and enforcing the right to search American ships on the high seas. *Indian depredations* in the Northwest, which were attributed to the instigation of British agents, were punished by the defeat of the savages at Tippecanoe by General William Henry Harrison. The British government continuing its insolent course, war was declared by Congress on the 18th of June, 1812.

Events of 1812.—The chief events of this year were the surrender of Detroit to the British by General Hull and the defeat and surrender of another small American army. These reverses were scarcely offset by some insignificant American victories at other points. On the ocean the Americans gained brilliant triumphs. Their vessels captured the British war vessels *Guerriere*, *Alert*, *Frolic*, *Macedonian*, and *Java*, while their privateers inflicted great damage upon British commerce and captured three thousand prisoners.

Events of 1813.—The Americans were defeated at the river Raisin, but were victorious at York, in Upper Canada, at Fort Meigs, and at Fort Stephenson, near Sandusky. Other important successes of the Americans were the repulse of the British at Sackett's Harbor, Perry's grand naval victory on Lake Erie, and Harrison's great triumph over the British and Indians at the river Thames, in Canada. The Creek Indians who took up arms in Georgia and Alabama were defeated in a series of battles fought by the Georgians and Tennesseans under Generals Floyd, Coffee, and Andrew Jackson, the last named being the commander in that quarter. During this year the Americans and British both gained victories on the ocean. The Americans lost the *Chesapeake* and *Argus*, but captured the *Peacock* and the *Boxer*. The American frigate *Essex* inflicted considerable damage on

British commerce, but British fleets in the Delaware and Chesapeake destroyed many American merchant vessels, and burned Georgetown, Frenchtown, Havre de Grace, and Fredericktown, but were repulsed at Norfolk.

Events of 1814.—The Americans were defeated at La Cole Mill, in Canada, but were successful at Chippewa, Lundy's Lane, and Fort Erie. The most brilliant victory gained by the Americans during this year was the battle at Plattsburg, on Lake Champlain, in which General Macomb defeated the British army, while Commodore McDonough defeated and captured the British fleet. A British army under General Ross captured Washington City and burned the government buildings, but the enemy were defeated in an attack upon Baltimore, General Ross being among the killed. In the summer and fall of this year assembled the Hartford Convention, the leaders of which have been accused of an intention to bring about a withdrawal of the New England States from the Union. Their grievances were removed by the cessation of hostilities. Peace was signed at Ghent, in Belgium, on the 24th of December. Before the news of peace reached America, General Jackson had gained at New Orleans the most brilliant victory of the war on the 8th of January, 1815.

Soon after the peace an expedition, under Commodore Decatur, chastised the Barbary Powers on the northern coast of Africa.

5. *Administration of James Monroe.*—James Monroe, of Virginia, the fifth President of the United States, was inaugurated on the 4th of March, 1817. Daniel D. Tompkins, of New York, was elected Vice-President. This was another triumph of the Democratic or Republican party. Monroe continued in office eight years. During his first term Florida was ceded by Spain to the United States, together with all Spanish claims to any portion of Oregon.

In 1820 the Union began for the first time to be agitated by the question as to whether the Federal government had any right to interfere with slavery in the Territories. The question was settled for the time by the Missouri Compromise.

In 1824, La Fayette visited the United States, and was everywhere greeted with enthusiastic demonstrations of love and esteem.

6. *Administration of John Quincy Adams.*—John Quincy Adams, of Massachusetts, the sixth President, was inaugurated on the 4th of March, 1825. He was chosen by the House of Representatives, since there was no election by the people. John C. Calhoun, of South Carolina, was elected Vice-President in the usual way. The chief events of Mr. Adams's administration were the *controversy* of the government *with the State of Georgia (in which the Georgians finally carried their point)* and the *Tariff Act of 1828*, which was violently opposed in the South. Mr. Adams was in office four years.

7. *Administration of Andrew Jackson.*—Andrew Jackson, of Tennessee, the seventh President, was inaugurated on the 4th of March, 1829, and served eight years. John C. Calhoun was Vice-President during his first term, and Martin Van Buren, of New York, during his second term. Jackson was elected by the Democrats.

The leading events of Jackson's administration were the inauguration of the policy of removing the Indian tribes that lived east of the Mississippi to a portion of the country lying west of that river, the President's war on the United States Bank, the successful war with the Northwest Indians, the controversy with the South Carolina authorities about the tariff and nullification, which was settled by a compromise, and the war with the Seminole Indians.

8. *Administration of Martin Van Buren.*—Martin Van Buren, of New York, the eighth President of the United States, was inaugurated March 4, 1837, and served four years. His election was a triumph of the Democratic party. Richard M. Johnson, of Kentucky, was at the same time elected Vice-President. Soon after the inauguration of Mr. Van Buren there occurred a great commercial crisis, which occasioned great distress throughout the country. During this term the country was also agitated by the

question of the abolition of slavery in the District of Columbia, but the agitation was for the time quieted.

9. *Administration of William Henry Harrison.*—William Henry Harrison, of Ohio, the ninth President, was inaugurated on the 4th of March, 1841. His election was a triumph of the Whig party. He died the next month after his inauguration, and was succeeded by John Tyler, the Vice-President.

10. *Administration of John Tyler.*—John Tyler, the tenth President, was inaugurated on the 6th of April, 1841, and continued in office three years and eleven months. During his term the following important events occurred: 1st, the quarrel of the President with the party which had elected him on the *Bank and Tariff questions*; 2d, the *treaty* with Great Britain, which settled definitely the Northeastern boundary between the United States and the neighboring British possessions; 3d, the Dorr Rebellion; and, 4th, the annexation of Texas.

11. *Administration of James K. Polk.*—James K. Polk, of Tennessee, the eleventh President, was inaugurated on the 4th of March, 1845. George M. Dallas, of Tennessee, was at the same time elected Vice-President. This election was a triumph of the Democratic party. Polk continued in office four years. The chief event of Polk's administration was the Mexican War. This grew out of the annexation of Texas. The Americans, under General Taylor, won the battles of Palo Alto, Resaca de la Palma, Monterey, and Buena Vista. New Mexico was conquered by General Kearney, and California by a land force under Colonel Fremont, assisted by a naval force under Commodores Sloat and Stockton. Colonel Doniphan, another American officer, captured Chihuahua, a wealthy city of forty thousand inhabitants. General Scott, with an army of twelve thousand Americans, captured the city of Vera Cruz, won the victory of Cerro Gordo, and entered the city of Puebla. On being reinforced, he marched against the city of Mexico, gained the important victories of Contreras, Churubusco, Molino del Rey, and Chapultepec, and on the 14th of September, 1847, entered the city of Mexico in tri-

umph. By the treaty of peace the United States acquired undisputed claim to the State of Texas, besides the extensive territories of New Mexico and Upper California. Another important measure of Polk's administration was the settling of the boundary between Oregon (which at that time embraced Washington Territory also) and the neighboring British possessions.

Immediately after the Mexican War the Union was agitated by angry disputes over the territory lately acquired. The slavery question was the cause of the disputes.

12. *Administration of General Zachary Taylor.*—Zachary Taylor, of Louisiana, the twelfth President of the United States, was inaugurated on the 5th of March, 1849. His election was a triumph of the Whig party. Millard Fillmore, of New York, was elected Vice-President. The disputes on the slavery question still agitated Congress and the country. President Taylor died on the 9th of July, 1850, and was succeeded by Mr. Fillmore, the Vice-President.

13. *Administration of Millard Fillmore.*—Millard Fillmore, of New York, the thirteenth President, was inaugurated on the 10th of July, 1850. He gave a cordial support to the "Compromise Measures of 1850," which for a while quieted the dispute on the slavery question.

14. *Administration of Franklin Pierce.*—Franklin Pierce, of New Hampshire, the fourteenth President, was inaugurated on the 4th of March, 1853. He was elected by the Democrats. William R. King, of Alabama, was elected Vice-President. Pierce served four years. Some of the leading events of his administration were, 1st, the purchase from Mexico of a large tract of territory within the present limits of Arizona; 2d, the renewal of the slavery agitation on the passage of the Kansas and Nebraska bill, and the troubles which followed in Kansas; and, 3d, the formation of all the elements of the anti-slavery party into one organization styled the Republican party.

15. In the fall of 1856, James Buchanan, of Pennsylvania, the candidate of the Democratic party, was elected President to suc-

ceed Mr. Pierce, and John C. Breckinridge, of Kentucky, was at the same time elected Vice-President.

States Admitted.

During Washington's administration there were admitted Vermont, on the 4th of March, 1791, Kentucky, on the 2d of June, 1792, and Tennessee, on the 1st of June, 1796.

During Jefferson's administration, Ohio, on the 29th of November, 1802.

During Madison's administration, Louisiana, on the 8th of April, 1812, and Indiana, on the 11th of December, 1816.

During Monroe's administration, Mississippi, on the 10th day of December, 1817, Illinois, on the 3d of December, 1818, Alabama, on the 14th of December, 1819, Maine, on the 15th of March, 1820, and Missouri, on the 10th day of August, 1821.

During Jackson's administration, Arkansas, on the 15th of June, 1836, and Michigan, on the 26th of January, 1837.

During Tyler's administration, Florida, on the 3d of March, 1845, at which time provision was made for the future admission of Iowa.

During Polk's administration, Texas, on the 27th of December, 1845, Iowa, on the 28th of December, 1846, and Wisconsin, on the 29th of May, 1848.

During Fillmore's administration, California, on the 9th of September, 1850.

Other Important Events.

The first successful application of steam to the propulsion of vessels by Robert Fulton, of New York, in 1807, during Jefferson's administration.

The great Erie Canal was constructed during Monroe's administration.

The first railroad was built in the United States in 1826, during the administration of John Quincy Adams.

The first telegraph line was stretched from Washington to Baltimore in 1844, during Tyler's administration.

PART FOURTH.

FROM THE BEGINNING OF BUCHANAN'S ADMINISTRATION TO THE PRESENT TIME.

CHAPTER I.

ADMINISTRATION OF JAMES BUCHANAN.

1. JAMES BUCHANAN, of Pennsylvania, the fifteenth President of the United States, was inaugurated on the 4th of March, 1857. John C. Breckinridge, of Kentucky, was at the same time inaugurated Vice-President.

2. The state of affairs in Utah and Kansas first engaged the attention of the new administration.

3. The trouble in Utah arose from the Mormons, a sect of religionists who tolerated a plurality of wives. They had been driven from Illinois, and had settled in the valley of the Great Salt Lake some years before the acquisition of Utah by the United States. On the organization of a government for the Territory of Utah, Mr. Fillmore had appointed as governor Brigham Young, the Mormon leader. About the time of the accession of Mr. Buchanan to the Presidency, intelligence was received at Washington that serious difficulties had arisen between the governor, Brigham Young, and certain subordinate officers of the

1. When was James Buchanan inaugurated? Who was at the same time inaugurated as Vice-President?

2. What first attracted the attention of the administration?

3. Give an account of the troubles in Utah.

Federal government. The Mormons were supposed to be preparing to resist the execution of the laws of the United States in the Territory. Early in the summer of 1857, Colonel Albert Sydney Johnston was sent into Utah at the head of a sufficient force to execute the laws. When Young heard of the approach of the United States forces he called out the forces of Utah and prepared to resist. But the difficulty was settled peaceably, and Alexander Cumming was installed as governor. His administration of affairs not only maintained the dignity of the United States, but also gave satisfaction to the people of the Territory.

4. The Kansas trouble was not so easily settled. Affairs in that Territory grew worse continually, and there was a state of actual war between the rival settlers from the North and South. The administration seemed powerless to prevent this state of affairs. Mr. Robert J. Walker, of Mississippi, was sent to Kansas for the purpose of bringing about a better understanding between the settlers, but to no purpose. The Free-Soil party refused to take part in the formation of a constitution under the act of Congress, and would not vote on its ratification when it was submitted to all the legal voters of the Territory for their adoption or rejection, the result of which was the formation and ratification of a constitution tolerating slavery. When Kansas applied for admission into the Union under the Lecompton Constitution (as it was called) there ensued a bitter and exciting debate in Congress. The bill for admission passed the Senate, but failed in the House. A committee of conference was finally raised, which reported a new bill for the admission of Kansas under conditional terms as to boundary and public domain first to be approved by them. This bill was agreed to, and the Kansas controversy was ended. No serious difficulty arose in the Territory afterwards.

4. What of the Kansas trouble? When Kansas applied for admission under the Lecompton Constitution, what ensued? What of the bill for admission? What did a committee of conference do?

5. During the debates on the admission of Kansas there occurred a serious split in the Democratic party, which was destined to give the victory in the next election to the opponents of conservatism.

6. Soon after Buchanan's inauguration a decision was rendered by the Supreme Court of the United States to the effect that Congress had no power to prohibit slavery in any of the Territories of the Union. This decision was rendered in the celebrated "Dred Scott" case. Instead of quieting the slavery agitation it only aroused the opponents of slavery still more. By their influence the Legislatures of several Northern States passed laws which practically nullified the laws of Congress as to the return of fugitive slaves to their owners.



SEAL OF MINNESOTA.

7. Minnesota, the thirty-second State, was admitted to the Union on the 11th of May, 1858. A large part of this State was embraced in the Louisiana purchase of 1803. St. Paul was settled in 1846 by emigrants from the Eastern States. The Territory was organized in 1849. There was no contest over the admission of Minnesota. The name Minnesota signifies "Cloudy Water."

8. The 16th day of August, 1858, is notable for the comple-

5. What occurred during the debates on the admission of Kansas?

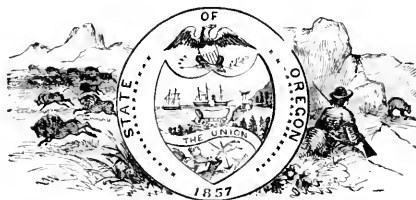
6. What of the Dred Scott decision? Did this quiet the agitation? What did the Legislatures of several Northern States do?

7. When was Minnesota admitted? Tell what is said about Minnesota.

8. For what is the 16th day of August, 1858, notable?

tion of the Ocean Telegraph between Great Britain and the United States.

9. The same month is notable for the appearance of a large and magnificent comet.



SEAL OF OREGON.

10. Oregon, the thirty-third State, was admitted into the Union on the 14th of February, 1859. It is said to have derived its name from the Spanish *oregano*, or wild marjoram, which is abundant on its coast. It constituted a part of the Louisiana purchase.

11. On the 17th of October, 1859, occurred the celebrated *John Brown raid*. This Brown had distinguished himself in the "Kansas War," where murderous atrocities of all kinds had been committed by both parties. He was known as "Ossawatimie Brown," from the scene of one of his exploits. Urged on by some abolition society, and furnished by them with money and arms, he, with twenty-one followers, seized the United States arsenal at Harper's Ferry, in Virginia. He hoped to be able to stir up from this point a general insurrection of the slaves in Virginia and throughout the whole South. But his mad scheme totally failed. He met with no encouragement from the negroes, his forces were scattered by the United States marines, led by Colonel Robert E. Lee, and he himself was captured with six of

9. For what else is the same month remarkable?

10. When was Oregon admitted? Tell all that is said here about Oregon.

11. Give an account of the John Brown raid. What became of Brown and his associates?

his associates. Brown and these associates were tried under the laws of Virginia and paid upon the gallows the penalty of their crime.

12. *The effect of this raid* was to inflame the people of the South, for although the great majority of the Northern people condemned the conduct of Brown, yet the official authorities in some of the States that were under the control of the Free-Soil (or, as they styled themselves, Republican) party publicly applauded that conduct.

13. When the Presidential election of 1860 took place the conservative elements of the country were hopelessly divided among themselves, while the Republicans, embracing in their ranks not only Free-Soilers, but also the most fanatical abolitionists, were united and enthusiastic.

14. The candidates of the Republican party were Abraham Lincoln, of Illinois, for President, and Hannibal Hamlin, of Maine, for Vice-President. Their platform of principles was, that Congress was bound to prohibit slavery in every Federal Territory.

15. One wing of the Democracy nominated for the Presidency Stephen A. Douglas, of Illinois, and for Vice-President, Herschel V. Johnson, of Georgia. Their platform was, that Congress had no right to interfere with the subject of slavery in any Territory, but that the settlement of that question rested entirely with the white inhabitants of the Territory.

16. The other wing of the Democratic party nominated John C. Breckinridge, of Kentucky, for President, and Joseph Lane,

12. What was the effect of this raid?

13. What was the state of affairs when the Presidential election of 1860 took place?

14. Who were the candidates of the Republican party? What was their platform?

15. Who were the nominees of one wing of the Democratic party? What was their platform of principles?

16. Whom did the other wing of the Democratic party nominate? What was their platform?

of Oregon, for Vice-President. Their platform was, that Congress was bound to protect the rights of slaveholders in all the Territories.

17. The American or, as they styled themselves, the Union Constitutional party nominated John Bell, of Tennessee, for President, and Edward Everett, of Massachusetts, for Vice-President. Their platform was, the "Constitution of the Country, the Union of the States, and the enforcement of the laws." As all the others made the same profession and this platform did not touch the question at issue, the influence of the American party was small.

18. The election took place on the 6th of November, 1860, and resulted in the triumph of the Republicans.

19. Had all the conservative elements of the country been united, the defeat of the Republicans would have been as complete as it was in 1856. This is evident from the popular vote. This was: for Lincoln, 1,857,610; for Breckinridge, 847,953; for Douglas, 1,365,976; for Bell, 590,631. The total conservative vote was 2,804,560, which if united on one candidate would have secured his election. Mr. Lincoln was elected without having received a majority of the popular vote of the States or of the people.



ABRAHAM LINCOLN.

20. As soon as the result of the election became known South Carolina called a convention of the people, which passed an ordi-

17. Whom did the American party nominate? What was their platform? What of this platform?

18. When did the election take place? How did it result?

19. What would have been the result if the conservative elements of the country had been united? How did the popular vote stand?

nance of secession on the 20th of December, 1860. *One of the reasons* assigned for this action of the State was, that most of the Northern States had failed to fulfil their constitutional obligations in the rendition of fugitive slaves. *Another reason*, and one that had great influence with the Southern people, was, that Iowa and Ohio had refused to surrender fugitives from justice charged with murder, and with attempting to incite servile insurrection at the time of the John Brown raid. But the *chief reason* was the danger to the rights of the States that the Southern people thought was to be dreaded from the avowed principles of the Republican party.

21. The example of South Carolina was followed by six Southern States: by Mississippi on the 9th of January, 1861; by Florida on the 10th; by Alabama on the 11th; by Georgia on the 19th; by Louisiana on the 26th; and by Texas on the 1st of February.

22. Delegates from the seven seceding States met at Montgomery, in Alabama, on the 4th of February, 1861, and organized a new Union and formed a new Constitution, under the name of "The Confederate States of America." The new Constitution was modelled after that of the United States. A provisional government was instituted for one year, with Jefferson Davis, of Mississippi, for President, and Alexander H. Stephens, of Georgia, Vice-President. The Constitution for the permanent government was to take effect on the 22d of February, 1862.

23. The policy of secession was strongly opposed by many in the South, and none had been more earnestly opposed to it than

20. What did South Carolina do when the result of the election became known? What did the convention do? What were the reasons assigned?

21. By whom was the example of South Carolina followed? Mention the six States and the dates of their secession.

22. Where did delegates from the seven seceding States meet? When? What did they do? What was established? Who were made President and Vice-President? When was the permanent government to take effect?

23. By whom was the policy of secession opposed? What of Mr. Stephens?

Mr. Stephens, of Georgia, the Vice-President of the Confederate States. The love of the Union was very strong in the hearts of a large majority of the Southern people, and thousands who voted for secession did so because they felt that in no other way could



JEFFERSON DAVIS.



ALEXANDER H. STEPHENS.

the rights of the States be secured against the centralizing tendencies of the Republican party. Others who believed just as strongly in the right of a State to withdraw from the Union were in favor of trying every other means before resorting to such extreme measures.

24. Virginia made special efforts to bring about a reconciliation between the Northern and Southern States. At her suggestion an informal *Peace Congress* of all the States was called to meet in Washington. Twenty States responded to this call, thirteen Northern and seven Southern. Ex-President John Tyler, of Virginia, presided over the Peace Congress. Nothing was accomplished by this effort at pacification.

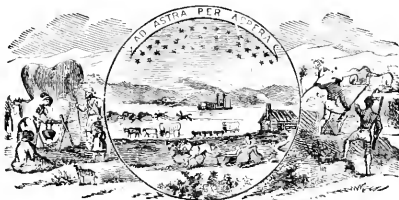
What about the love of the Union? Why did thousands vote for secession? What were others in favor of?

24. What State made special efforts to bring about a reconciliation? What was done at her suggestion? How many States responded to the call? Who presided over the Peace Congress? What was accomplished?

25. The Confederate government at Montgomery sent commissioners to Washington to treat with the Federal authorities for a peaceful adjustment of all matters pertaining to the common property and the public debt. President Buchanan received them as private gentlemen, but refused to receive them in their official capacity.

26. The seceded States had already taken possession of all the Federal forts and arsenals within their limits, except Fort Sumter in Charleston harbor, Fort Pickens at Pensacola, and the forts near Key West, Florida. President Buchanan made no attempt to retake these forts. He held that a State could not rightfully secede, but he also believed that Congress had no power under the Constitution to resort to coercive measures against the regularly constituted authorities of a State.

Such was the state of affairs when Mr. Buchanan's term of office expired.



SEAL OF KANSAS.

27. One more important event of Buchanan's administration was the admission of Kansas into the Union as the thirty-fourth State, which occurred on the 29th of January, 1861. Kansas was also a part of the Louisiana purchase. Its name signifies "Smoky Water."

25. What did the Confederate government at Montgomery do? How did President Buchanan receive them?

26. What had the seceded States already done? Did President Buchanan attempt to retake the forts? What view did he hold?

27. What other important event occurred January 29, 1861? What more can you say of Kansas?

CHAPTER II.

INAUGURATION OF ABRAHAM LINCOLN.—BEGINNING OF THE WAR BETWEEN THE STATES.

1. ABRAHAM LINCOLN, the sixteenth President of the United States, was inaugurated on the 4th of March, 1861. In his inaugural he declared that it was his purpose to collect the public revenues at the ports of the seceded States, and also to recover all the forts, arsenals, and other public property before held by the Federal authorities.

2. On the 12th of March, John Forsyth, of Alabama, Martin J. Crawford, of Georgia, and Andrew B. Roman, of Louisiana, the Confederate commissioners, addressed a note to Mr. Seward, the Secretary of State, declaring that the people of the Confederate States earnestly desired a peaceable solution of all questions at issue between them and the government of the United States. They also declared that it was neither the interest nor the wish of the people whom they represented to make any demand not founded in strictest justice, or to do any act that would injure their late confederates. Mr. Seward replied to the commissioners verbally and informally through Justice John A. Campbell, of the Supreme Court of the United States, who was a citizen of Alabama, and was on terms of personal friendship with the commissioners, and was exceedingly desirous of effecting a reconciliation. Mr. Seward's reply, made through Justice Campbell, was that he was in favor of peace, and that Fort Sumter would be evacuated in less than ten days, even before a letter could go from Washington to

-
1. When was Abraham Lincoln inaugurated? What did he declare?
 2. What did the Confederate commissioners do on the 12th of March? What did they declare? What else did they declare? How did Mr. Seward reply? What did he say?

Montgomery. He assured them that notice would be given of any design to alter the status at Fort Pickens, in Florida.

3. Meanwhile, great activity prevailed in the navy-yard at New York. Early in April a squadron of seven ships, carrying two hundred and eighty-five guns and two thousand four hundred men, was fitted out at New York and at Norfolk, Virginia. When the commissioners heard of this they feared that this armament was designed for the relief of Fort Sumter. When Justice Campbell, at their request, addressed a letter to Mr. Seward asking information on this point, his reply was, "Faith as to Sumter fully kept; wait and see."

4. At this very time the fleet was on its way to reinforce the fort. Mr. Seward gave notice of this fact not to the commissioners but to Governor Pickens, of South Carolina, saying that he intended to "reinforce Fort Sumter, peaceably, if permitted; but forcibly, if necessary." Soon after this Justice Campbell, believing in the right of the Southern cause, resigned his seat on the Supreme Court bench.

5. *Fort Sumter* was at this time commanded by Major Robert Anderson, of the United States army, with less than one hundred men. General Gustave T. Beauregard commanded the Confederate force of six thousand men stationed in the other forts and batteries around Charleston harbor. When the Confederate authorities at Montgomery learned of the approach of the fleet with reinforcements, they instructed General Beauregard to demand of Major Anderson the evacuation of the fort. Major Anderson refused to comply, and on the morning of the 12th of April,

3. Meanwhile, what prevailed at the navy-yard at New York? What happened early in April? What did the commissioners fear? What was Mr. Seward's reply to their note?

4. What of the fleet at this very time? To whom did Mr. Seward give notice? What did he say? What did Justice Campbell do soon after?

5. By whom was Fort Sumter at this time commanded? Who commanded the Confederate troops in Charleston harbor? When the Confederate authorities heard that the fleet was on its way to reinforce Fort Sumter, what did they do? What did Major Anderson do? When did the Confederates

1861, the Confederates opened fire on Fort Sumter. On the morning of the 13th, after a terrific bombardment, the fort surrendered. The garrison were allowed to depart with all the honors of war, carrying with them the flag which they had so gallantly defended. Strange to say, no life was lost on either side during all this bombardment.

6. The news of the fall of Fort Sumter produced the wildest excitement throughout the North. On the 15th of April, President Lincoln issued a proclamation calling for seventy-five thousand troops, and convening Congress to meet in extra session on the 4th of July. The Confederate authorities at Montgomery met this call of Mr. Lincoln's by a call for volunteers to repel aggressions.

7. On the 19th of April, as a Massachusetts regiment was marching through Baltimore, on its way to Washington, it was attacked by a mob. Three soldiers were killed and several wounded. The soldiers returned the fire, killing and wounding quite a number. This was the first blood shed during the war. This affair happened on the eighty-sixth anniversary of the battle of Lexington.

8. The border slave States of Delaware, Maryland, Virginia, North Carolina, Tennessee, Kentucky, Arkansas, and Missouri, embracing more than half the population of the Southern States, had hitherto kept aloof from the secession movement, and were resolved not to side with the seceded States unless coercion should be used. When Mr. Lincoln called on them for their proportion of troops they all returned defiant replies. Virginia passed an

open fire? When did the fort surrender? What were the garrison allowed to do? Was any life lost in this bombardment?

6. What effect did the fall of Sumter produce throughout the North? What did President Lincoln do on the 15th of April? What did the Confederate authorities do?

7. Give an account of the riot in Baltimore on the 19th of April.

8. What had the border slave States hitherto done? When Mr. Lincoln called on them for their proportion of troops, what did they do? What

ordinance of secession on the 17th of April, Arkansas on the 6th of May, North Carolina May 20, and Tennessee on the 8th of June. In Delaware, Maryland, Kentucky, and Missouri secession had to encounter a powerful opposition, and the result was that these four States remained in the Union.

9. The Southern cause was greatly strengthened by the adhesion of Virginia, Arkansas, North Carolina, and Tennessee, which now joined the new Confederacy. The seat of government of the Confederate States was transferred from Montgomery, Alabama, to Richmond, Virginia, on the 21st of May.

10. The Northern States responded promptly and enthusiastically to Mr. Lincoln's call. Men of all parties rallied to the support of the government. The most bitter abolitionists were now zealous to maintain that very Union which they had once denounced as "a covenant with death and an agreement with hell." States-rights Democrats, who believed and had always proclaimed the right of secession, sided with their section and marched side by side with Republicans, who claimed that the Union was superior to the States, and denied the right of any State to withdraw from the Union for any cause whatever. All united in declaring that the Confederate authorities had by firing on Sumter brought upon themselves the responsibility of the war.

11. The people of the South were equally enthusiastic. The Confederates maintained that the capture of Fort Sumter was merely an act of self-defence, and that the government of the United States had begun the war by sending a hostile fleet with

States passed ordinances of secession? Which of the border States remained in the Union? Why did they remain?

9. How was the Southern cause greatly strengthened? When was the seat of government transferred to Richmond, Virginia?

10. How did the people of the Northern States respond to Lincoln's call? What did men of all parties do? What did they all unite in declaring?

11. What of the people of the South? What did the Confederates maintain? What of the best men of both sections? What did the most ardent Union men of the South do?

the avowed intention to reinforce the fort at all hazards. They claimed that they stood upon the well-established principle that "the aggressor in a war is not the first who uses force, but the first who renders force necessary." Just as the best men of the North rallied around the Federal government, so the best men of the South flew to arms in defence of the sacred rights of the States which they believed to be threatened with destruction. The most ardent Union men who had opposed secession to the very last believed it their duty to obey the voice of their respective States, and ranged themselves with the most extreme secessionists under the banners of the new Confederacy.

12. Everybody saw that a bitter and desperate struggle was at hand. The Federal and Confederate governments each hurried forward troops to Virginia in the East, and to Kentucky and Missouri in the West, which, it was evident, were destined to be the theatre of the war.

13. For four years the sad spectacle was to be presented to the world of "States dissevered, discordant, belligerent; of a land rent with civil feuds and drenched in fraternal blood." Each party to this dreadful conflict believed firmly in the justice of its cause. The loftiest patriotism swayed the soldiers of each section; for the soldier of the North and the soldier of the South fought each for what he deemed the cause of country and of right. They proved this faith by the heroic valor with which they fought and laid down their lives on many a bloody field. Let none dishonor the memory of either.

14. *Comparative Strength of the Combatants.*—The States which remained in the Union had a population of twenty-three millions, of whom more than twenty-two millions were whites.

12. What did everybody now see? What did the Federal and Confederate governments do?

13. What now began? What did each party believe? What swayed the soldiers of each section? How did they prove their faith?

14. What was the population of the States that remained in the Union? What within the Confederate States? What were the States that remained

Within the limits of the Confederate States there were eight million inhabitants, of whom five million were whites, and three million negro slaves. The States that adhered to the Union were thus enabled to put into the field armies vastly larger than those that could be mustered by the seceded States. The United States had also entire possession of the navy, which had been the common property of all the States before secession. With this navy they were enabled to blockade the ports of the Confederate States, while their own ports were open and free to the commerce of the world. They could keep up the strength of their armies not only by enlisting great numbers in the Northern States, but also by procuring thousands of recruits from Europe. The ports of the Confederate States were soon so effectually blockaded that they could get few supplies and no troops from abroad, and were obliged to depend upon their own limited resources.

15. When the United States Senators and Representatives assembled in July at the call of President Lincoln, they provided for raising an army of five hundred thousand men and for fitting out a formidable navy. They declared that they prosecuted the war not for any purpose of conquest, nor with any design of interfering with the established institutions of the Southern States, but only for the purpose of maintaining the supremacy of the Constitution and of preserving the Union, with all the dignity, equality, and rights of the several States unimpaired.

16. On the 24th of May a New York regiment, led by Colonel Ellsworth, took possession of Alexandria, in Virginia. On entering the place Ellsworth was slain by a Mr. J. W. Jackson, who was also himself immediately killed.

In the Union able to do? Of what else had the United States entire possession? What were they able to do with this navy? How could they keep up the strength of their armies? On what were the Confederates obliged to depend?

15. When the United States Senators and Representatives assembled in July, what did they do? What did they declare?

16. What happened at Alexandria, Virginia, on the 24th of May?

17. *Grafton*, in Northwest Virginia, was occupied by a Federal force on the 29th of May, and on the 3d of June a small Confederate force was dispersed at *Philippi* by a much larger Federal force.

18. The first engagement of any note took place on the 10th of June, at *Big Bethel Church*, near Fortress Monroe, in South-eastern Virginia. In this affair the Confederates, under Colonel D. H. Hill, defeated the Federals led by General Benjamin F. Butler.

19. The campaign in West Virginia was conducted on the Federal side by General George B. McClellan. On the 11th of July a part of the army led by Colonel Rosecrans captured nine hundred Confederates at *Rich Mountain*. On the 14th of the same month the Confederate General Garnett, at the head of about two thousand men, while retreating from Laurel Hill, was defeated at *Carrick's Ford* by a Federal army of nearly eight thousand men. Garnett was killed and his men scattered. The Confederates retreated to Monterey, a village in the mountains of Virginia, where they were reinforced by a body of troops under General Henry R. Jackson, of Georgia. Soon after the Confederates advanced again and fortified a position at the foot of the Alleghany Mountains, near the Greenbrier River. The Federal forces seized and fortified the gaps at Cheat Mountain. On the 17th of July, three days after the battle of Carrick's Ford, another Confederate force, under General Wise, defeated a Federal force at *Scary Creek*.

17. Where did the Federals have a success on the 29th of May? Where on the 3d of June?

18. Where did the first engagement of note take place? What was the result?

19. Who led the Federals in West Virginia? What happened at Rich Mountain on the 11th of July? What happened on the 14th? Where did the Confederates receive reinforcements? What did they do soon afterwards? What did the Federals fortify? What happened on the 17th of July at Scary Creek?

20. Meanwhile, in Eastern Virginia, in the neighborhood of Washington City, both the Federal and Confederate authorities were making every effort to collect large armies. About the middle of July the Federal army, nearly sixty thousand strong, began to advance, led by General Irwin McDowell. On the 18th



BATTLE OF MANASSAS.

their advance division, led by General Tyler, was repulsed by the Confederate advance, under General Longstreet. On the 21st of July occurred the first great battle of the war near *Manassas Junction*, at *Bull Run*. The Confederates were about thirty thousand strong, and were led by Generals Beauregard and Joseph E. Johnston. At first they were greatly outnumbered and were being gradually pushed back, but by desperate efforts they were

20. Meanwhile, what was going on near Washington City? What happened about the middle of July? What happened on the 18th? When and where

rallied on a plateau, in rear of their first position, by General T. J. Jackson, assisted by Generals Bee, Bartow, and others. While Bee was encouraging his men he shouted to them, "There's Jackson standing like a stone wall," and from that time Thomas J. Jackson became known as "Stonewall Jackson." After a desperate struggle, in which Bee and Bartow were both slain at a moment when the Confederates were hard pressed, reinforcements from Winchester came shouting on the field. The whole aspect of affairs was now changed. The Federals were checked and began a retreat, which was soon converted into a panic-stricken rout. The fugitives did not cease their flight until they were safe within their fortifications at Washington. The Confederate loss in this battle was about two thousand men, and that of the Federals three thousand in killed, wounded, and prisoners, twenty-eight cannon, ten battle-flags, five thousand muskets, and five hundred thousand cartridges.

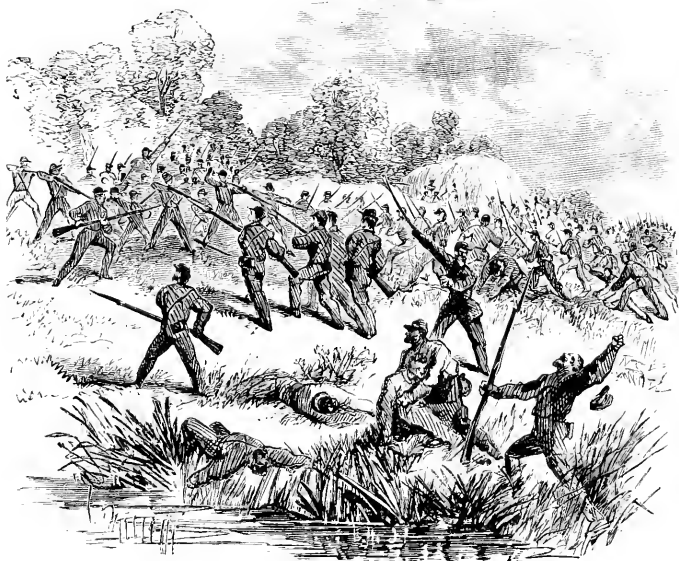
21. Both governments now realized that a terrible war was upon them, and set to work forming large armies. General Winfield Scott, the Federal commander-in-chief, resigned his command on account of his age and declining strength, and General George B. McClellan, who had gained considerable reputation by his campaign in West Virginia, was appointed to the command of the Federal Army of the Potomac. He immediately set to work to organize, arm, and discipline a magnificent army. By the fall the Army of the Potomac numbered more than one hundred and fifty thousand men. The Confederate Army of Northern Virginia was also largely reinforced, but never at any time reached one hundred thousand.

22. The main armies in Virginia did not encounter each other

was the first great battle of the war fought? Describe the battle of Manassas or Bull Run. What were the losses? Who gained the victory?

21. What did both governments now realize? Who was appointed to command the Federal Army of the Potomac? What did McClellan immediately do? What did the Army of the Potomac number by the fall? What of the Confederate army?

again during the year 1861. But on the 21st of October about two thousand Federals, under General Baker, were thrown across the Potomac at *Ball's Bluff*, near *Leesburg*, where they were assailed by the Confederates, under General Nathan G. Evans, utterly defeated and driven into the river. General Baker was himself



BATTLE OF LEESBURG.

among the slain. The only other affair of this year in Eastern Virginia was at *Dranesville*, where a Federal brigade gained a slight advantage on the 20th of December.

23. In Western Virginia active operations continued throughout the year. On the 26th of August, General Floyd surprised and routed a Federal force, under Colonel Tyler, at Cross Lanes,

22. What happened at Ball's Bluff, near Leesburg, on the 21st of October? What at Dranesville on the 20th of December?

23. What of Western Virginia? What happened on the 26th of August?

inflicting on them a loss of two hundred men and losing none himself. On the 10th of September, at *Carnifax Ferry*, on the *Gauley River*, General Floyd, in a strong position, with about two thousand Confederates, held his ground from three o'clock in the afternoon until night against ten thousand Federals, commanded by General Rosecrans. During the night Floyd retreated. He had had but one man killed, and had inflicted on his opponent a loss of about two hundred in killed and wounded, but, on account of his retreat, the Federals claimed the victory. A few days after this General Robert E. Lee, who had been operating in the vicinity of Cheat Mountain, arrived with reinforcements for Floyd, whereupon Rosecrans, in his turn, retired. After General Lee's forces had left the vicinity of Cheat Mountain, General Reynolds came down from his fortified camp on Cheat Mountain, and on the 3d of October attacked the Confederates under General Henry R. Jackson in their position at *Greenbrier River*. Reynolds met with a severe repulse, and fell back to his fortifications. On the 12th of December the Federals under General Milroy attacked the Confederates, consisting of Virginia and Georgia troops, under Colonel Edward Johnson, at *Alleghany Summit*, but encountered a bloody repulse.

24. *In the West*, during 1861, active operations were confined to the State of Missouri. At the beginning of the war Governor Jackson and the State authorities had attempted to maintain a neutral position between the parties at war. This had been prevented by Captain Lyon, the Federal officer in command at St. Louis, who, on the 25th of April, seized the State arsenal, and on the 10th of May routed the State militia. Soon after this Captain Lyon was promoted to the rank of brigadier-general. Civil war now

Relate what is said of the battle of Carnifax Ferry. What happened a few days after this battle? What happened at Greenbrier River on the 3d of October? What at Alleghany Summit on the 12th of December?

24. To what State were active operations in the West confined? What had Governor Jackson and the State authorities attempted at the beginning of the war? How was this prevented? How was Lyon promoted? What now

occurred in Missouri, in which most of the citizens of the southern part of the State sided with the Confederacy, but a very large majority of the people of the whole State took part with the government of the United States. Governor Jackson sided with the Confederates. On the 5th of July, General Price, in command of Missouri troops, assisted by General McCulloch, commanding a Confederate force from Arkansas and Texas, defeated a Federal force at *Carthage*. On the 10th of August, at *Oak Hill* or *Wilson's Creek*, the Confederates gained a far more important victory, the Federal General Lyon being among the slain. On the 20th of September, General Price captured *Lexington*, Missouri, with more than three thousand Federal prisoners. On the 7th of November, General Grant, after gaining some success, was defeated by the Confederates under General Pillow at *Belmont*.

25. The State authorities of Kentucky had endeavored, like those of Missouri, to hold a position of armed neutrality between the States at war, but the attempt had failed in their case as it had in the case of Missouri. During the fall a portion of the people of the State organized a provisional government and attempted to ally the State with the Confederacy, but failed; for the regular State Legislature and the vast majority of the people of the State sided with the United States.

26. *Operations along the coast* were not very extensive during this year. On the 29th of August a Federal land and naval force captured the forts on *Hatteras Inlet*, off the coast of North Carolina. The fleet was commanded by Commodore Stringham, and the land force by General B. F. Butler. Another expedition,

occurred in Missouri? How were the people divided? What victory did the Confederates gain on the 5th of July? What one on the 10th of August? What happened at Lexington on the 20th of September? What happened on the 7th of November?

25. What of the State authorities of Kentucky? What of the attempt? What did a portion of the people do during the fall? Why did they fail?

26. What of operations along the coast? What victory did the Federals gain on the 29th of August? By whom was the fleet commanded? Who commanded the land force? What other victory was gained by Commodore

under Commodore Dupont and General T. W. Sherman, captured the earthworks at *Port Royal*, South Carolina, on the 7th of November. *Hilton Head* was occupied and made a centre of naval operations against the Southern ports.

27. In November, General Robert E. Lee was sent by the Confederate government to take charge of the defences on the coast of Georgia and South Carolina.



GENERAL ROBERT E. LEE.

28. Naval operations of the year were, on the part of the United States, confined to the efforts to enforce the blockade of the Southern coasts, and on the part of the Confederates to the exploits of private armed ships to injure the commerce of their foes. Several small vessels ran the blockade, and, getting out to sea, in less than a month captured and ran into Southern ports

more than twenty prizes. The *Sumter* and *Nashville*, commanded respectively by Raphael Semmes, of Alabama, and Robert B. Pegram, of Virginia, regular officers, who had resigned their positions in the Federal navy, captured merchandise to the value of many millions and greatly crippled the foreign trade of the Northern States.

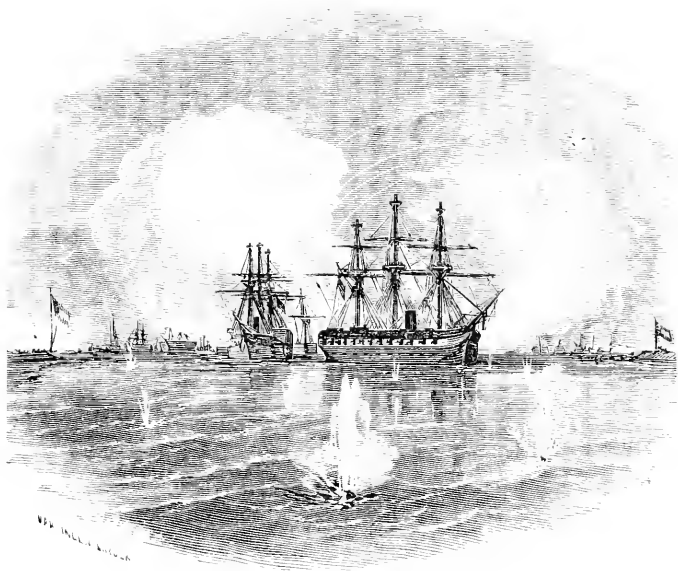
29. Towards the close of the year an event happened which came near involving the United States in a war with England.

Dupont and General T. W. Sherman? What place did they make the centre of naval operations?

27. Who was sent out by the Confederate authorities to take charge of the Confederate coast-defences?

28. To what were naval operations on the part of the United States confined? To what on the part of the Confederates? What did several Confederate privateers do? What was accomplished by the *Sumter* and *Nashville*?

29. What event happened towards the close of the year? Give an account



BOMBARDMENT OF PORT ROYAL.

Mason and Slidell, two Confederate ambassadors to the court of Great Britain, were forcibly taken from the British steam-packet *Trent* by Captain Wilkes, commanding the United States steam-frigate *San Jacinto*. The British government demanded satisfaction for the act, and immediately began preparations for war. The United States government disavowed the act of Captain Wilkes and restored the ambassadors to a British vessel, whereupon the matter was settled.

30. At the close of 1861 the advantage was greatly in favor of the Confederate States, both in the number and importance of the victories achieved and in the number of prisoners captured.

of the affair. What did the British government demand? What did the United States government do?

30. On which side was the advantage at the close of 1861?

CHAPTER III.

LINCOLN'S ADMINISTRATION (CONTINUED).—SECOND YEAR OF THE WAR BETWEEN THE STATES.

1. At the beginning of 1862 the Confederates had in the field about three hundred thousand men, while the Federals had not less than eight hundred thousand.

2. On the 1st of January, 1862, General "Stonewall" Jackson set out from *Winchester*, in Virginia, with a little more than ten thousand men, drove the Federals out of *Bath* and *Romney*, destroyed a considerable portion of the *Baltimore and Ohio Railroad*, and made some important captures, after which he returned to *Winchester*. On this expedition the sufferings of the soldiers from the intense cold and exposure were exceedingly severe.

3. On the Atlantic coast the Federals gained several important victories. On the 8th of February a land and naval force, under General Burnside and Commodore Goldsborough, captured *Roanoke Island* with its garrison. On the 14th of March, General Burnside took possession of *Newbern*, North Carolina. In the same month an expedition captured *St. Augustine*, *Fernandina*, and other places in Florida. On the 11th of April, General Gillmore captured *Fort Palaski*, near Savannah, Georgia, and on the 26th of the same month *Fort Macon*, in North Carolina, was surrendered to the Union forces under Commodore Goldsborough.

4. The most important military movements of the year were

-
1. What was the size of the armies at the beginning of 1862?
 2. Give an account of Stonewall Jackson's expedition which set out from Winchester on the 1st of January. What of the sufferings of the soldiers?
 3. What happened on the Atlantic coast? Mention these Federal successes in their order.
 4. What were the most important military movements of the year?

those connected with the *campaign in the West* and the *campaign in Virginia*.

5. The *Western campaign* began early in the year. On the 19th of January the Federals, under the command of General George H. Thomas, gained a complete victory over the Confederates, commanded by General Felix K. Zollicoffer, at *Fishing Creek*, or *Mill Spring*, in Kentucky. General Zollicoffer was killed and his army routed. On the 6th of February *Fort Henry*, on the Tennessee, with a small garrison, surrendered to Commodore Foote, commanding a fleet of United States gunboats. On the 16th of February, General Grant, with an army of thirty thousand men, after a bloody battle, which continued three days, in the midst of snow and ice, captured *Fort Donelson*, on the Cumberland River, and its garrison of nine thousand men, about two thousand having been killed and wounded, and two thousand having escaped. Grant was assisted in this affair by Commodore Foote with his fleet of gunboats.

6. The *effect* of this stunning blow was that General Albert Sydney Johnston, who had for months, with a small army, held his ground in Kentucky in the face of overwhelming forces of the Federals, was forced to retreat from Kentucky, and even to abandon Nashville, in Tennessee, and retire to the borders of Alabama and Mississippi, leaving part of his force to hold East Tennessee and a small portion of Middle Tennessee.

7. The Confederate forces under Albert Sydney Johnston and Beauregard were now concentrated at Corinth, Mississippi. Johnston hoped for reinforcements from beyond the Mississippi, but the Confederate forces on the west of that river could not be brought over because they were themselves hard pressed by the Federals. On the 7th and 8th of March was fought the bloody

5. When did the Western campaign begin? What happened on the 19th of January? On the 6th of February? Give an account of the battle of Fort Donelson.

6. What was the effect of this stunning blow?

7. Where were the Confederate forces now concentrated? What did John-



BATTLE OF PEA RIDGE.

battle of *Elk Horn*, or *Pea Ridge*, in Arkansas, in which the Confederates, numbering twenty thousand, under Price, Van Dorn, and McCulloch, were finally forced to give way before the Federal army, twenty-five thousand strong, led by General Curtis. The gallant General McCulloch was killed in this battle. On the 21st of March the Confederates gained a victory at Valverde (*val-ver-dā*), in New Mexico.

8. Early in April the Union or Federal army under Grant was moved to *Pittsburg Landing*, on the Tennessee River. Another Union army under General Buell was ordered to move from Nash-

ton hope for? Why was he disappointed? Give an account of the battle of Elk Horn, or Pea Ridge. What happened at Valverde, in New Mexico, on the 21st of March?

8. What happened early in April? Who was ordered to join Grant?

ville and join Grant. Johnston and Beauregard, who, as we have already mentioned, had concentrated their forces at Corinth, resolved to strike a blow before the two Federal armies could be united. Moving rapidly forward, they fell upon Grant's army at Shiloh on the 6th of April, and drove them under the shelter of their gunboats, capturing between five and six thousand prisoners, thirty-six cannon, and an immense amount of army stores. But General Albert Sydney Johnston was killed, and Buell's army reached the field of battle that night. Early next morning the Federals, now largely outnumbering the Confederates, moved forward to the attack. After holding his ground successfully from sunrise until afternoon, Beauregard withdrew his army in perfect order and unpursued to the intrenchments at Corinth, carrying with him most of the spoil of the Federal camp captured on the previous day. In this desperate two days' battle the Confederates numbered forty thousand men, and the Federals at least sixty thousand. The losses were on the Confederate side over ten thousand, and on the Federal side more than fifteen thousand, men. This was the greatest battle of the war up to that time, and was indecisive.

9. On the 8th of April the Confederate fortifications at *Island No. 10*, in the Mississippi River, were captured, together with the garrison and seventy cannon, by the Federal gunboats, assisted by the land forces under General Pope.

10. The *capture of New Orleans* was a still greater Federal success. Commodore David G. Farragut (far-ra-gū), with a powerful fleet of armed vessels, after bombarding for six days Forts Jackson and St. Philip, which defended the passage to New Or-

What did Johnston and Beauregard resolve to do? Give an account of the first day's battle at Shiloh. What of General Johnston? Give an account of the second day's fight. What was the size of the opposing armies and their losses in the battle of Shiloh?

9. What victory did the Federals gain on the 8th of April?

10. What was a still greater Federal success? Describe the capture of New Orleans.

leans, boldly ran past their guns, defeated the small Confederate fleet of rams, fire-rafts, etc., and approached New Orleans, which was abandoned by the Confederates. On the 28th of April, General B. F. Butler brought up his land forces and took possession.

11. On the 29th of May, General Beauregard, feeling unable with his army of only thirty thousand effective troops to resist Halleck's army of one hundred thousand, retired from Corinth to Tupelo, in Mississippi. In consequence of this retreat *Fort Pillow* was abandoned on the 4th of June, and *Memphis* fell into the hands of the Federals after the destruction of a small Confederate flotilla which defended the city.

12. Soon after this, in consequence of the failure of General Beauregard's health, he was succeeded by General Braxton Bragg. There was now a short lull in the fighting between the main armies in the West.

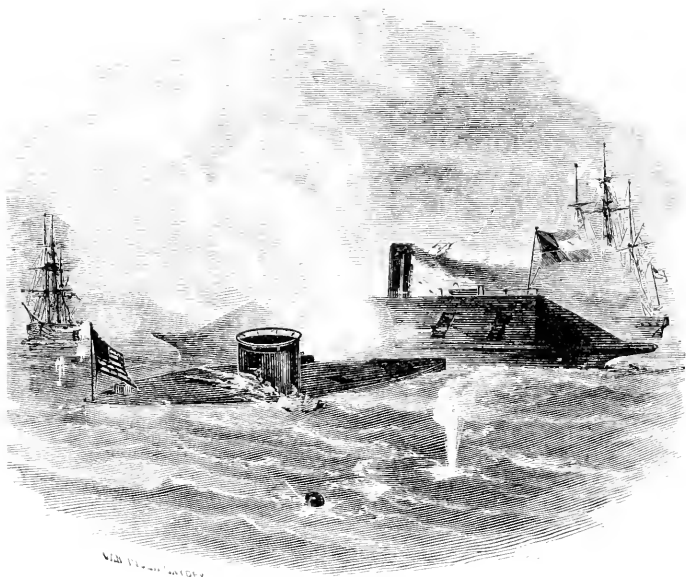
13. We will now note the *progress of events in Virginia* during the same period.

Ever since the defeat at Manassas, or Bull Run, General McClellan had been busy organizing a mighty army. Early in the spring nearly two hundred thousand Federal troops began to advance upon the different Confederate positions in Virginia. At that time the Confederates in every part of Virginia numbered very little more than sixty thousand men. When McClellan advanced towards Manassas with an army one hundred and twenty thousand strong, General Joseph E. Johnston, whose force numbered not more than thirty thousand men, retired behind the Rapidan.

11. What did Beauregard do on the 29th of May? What happened in consequence of this retreat?

12. By whom was Beauregard succeeded soon after this?

13. Turning now to the East, what had General McClellan been engaged in ever since the defeat of the Federal army at Manassas? What did the Federal troops do early in the spring? What did the Confederates in Virginia number at this time? When McClellan advanced upon Manassas, what did General Joseph E. Johnston do?



MONITOR AND VIRGINIA.

14. Just about this time a Confederate iron-clad vessel, named the *Virginia*, fell upon the Federal fleet in *Hampton Roads*, near *Norfolk*, destroyed the United States war-vessels *Cumberland* and *Congress*, and put the Federal fleet to flight. This was on the 8th of March. On the next day an iron-plated, turreted vessel called the *Monitor*, which had just arrived from New York, attacked the *Virginia*, and so damaged her that she was obliged to return to her moorings.

15. After the retreat of Johnston from Manassas, General McClellan changed his plan and conveyed his troops by transports down the Chesapeake Bay to Fortress Monroe, intending to ad-

14. Give an account of the naval battle in Hampton Roads on the 8th of March. On the 9th.

15. After the retreat of Johnston, what did McClellan do? What was the

vance upon Richmond by way of the Peninsula, as that part of Virginia is called which lies between the York and James Rivers. The only Confederate force in the Peninsula at this time was General Magruder's corps of eleven thousand men. When Johnston became aware of McClellan's design he concentrated all his available forces at Yorktown. McClellan's advance was so delayed that he did not enter Yorktown until early in May. Johnston now retired up the Peninsula towards Richmond. Several encounters occurred between the Confederate rear-guard and the Federal advance, the most important of which was the battle of *Williamsburg*, on the 5th of May. This affair was indecisive, both sides claiming the victory. Johnston continued his retreat towards Richmond, and ordered the Confederate troops at Norfolk to evacuate that city and unite with his army. *Norfolk* was accordingly abandoned on the 11th of May. At the same time the Confederate iron-clad *Virginia* was destroyed to prevent its falling into the hands of the Federals.

16. On the 15th of May the Federal fleet of iron-clad gun-boats, led by the monitors *Galena* and *Aroostook*, made a formidable bombardment of the Confederate works at *Drewry's Bluff*, which defended Richmond against attack by the waters of the James River. The Federal fleet was completely repulsed.

17. Meanwhile, reinforcements from every quarter began to pour in to swell the ranks of Johnston's army, until it numbered nearly seventy thousand men. On the 31st of May the battle of *Seven Pines*, or *Fair Oaks*, was fought. The Confederates attacked the Federal army and defeated the left wing, capturing ten cannon,

only Confederate force on the Peninsula at this time? When Johnston became aware of McClellan's design, what did he do? How was McClellan's advance delayed? As Johnston retired up the Peninsula, what occurred? What of the battle of *Williamsburg*? What did Johnston order the Confederate troops at Norfolk to do? What became of the iron-clad *Virginia*?

16. What happened on the 15th of May?

17. What now began to swell the ranks of Johnston's army? What battle occurred on the 31st of May? Give an account of it. What of General Johnston? Who succeeded him?

six thousand muskets, and a quantity of tents and camp equipage. The Federal right, however, remained firm, and the battle was indecisive. The losses were nearly seven thousand killed, wounded, and prisoners on the Federal side, and four thousand on the Confederate. General Johnston was himself so badly wounded that he was obliged to retire from active service for several months. General Robert E. Lee now took command of the Confederate army defending Richmond.

18. When McClellan, with one hundred and twenty thousand men, began his campaign up the Peninsula, the *Federal plan of operations* was, that Fremont should come down from the northwest, Banks from the Shenandoah Valley, and McDowell from Fredericksburg, thus increasing the army of McClellan by more than sixty thousand men.

19. But *Stonewall Jackson* in his celebrated *Valley campaign*, one of the most brilliant and dashing on record, kept the co-operating armies too busy to carry out the part that had been assigned them. On the 23d of March, just after McClellan had made his landing on the Peninsula, Jackson, who had been left in the valley to watch the movements of the Federals, feeling the necessity of making some diversion in favor of Johnston, with less than four thousand men vigorously attacked the Federal army of eleven thousand, commanded by Generals Shields and Banks, at *Kernstown*, near Winchester. Jackson was repulsed, but drew off his troops in good order, having succeeded in retaining



STONEWALL JACKSON.

18. When McClellan began his Peninsula campaign, what was the Federal plan of operations?

19. Who broke up this plan? What did Jackson do on the 23d of March? What was the result? Did Jackson accomplish his object? How was Jack-

the army of General Banks in the valley,—the very object for which he fought the battle. After General Johnston had concentrated the main Confederate army near Richmond, he sent General Ewell with a division of troops to reinforce Jackson. As soon as the reinforcements arrived Jackson moved rapidly up the valley, and falling upon the advance of Fremont's army under Milroy at the village of *McDowell*, on the 8th of May, completely defeated the Federals and drove them beyond the mountains. He then marched down the valley, crushed the left wing of Banks's army at *Front Royal* on the 23d of May, forced Banks out of Winchester on the 25th, and drove him across the Potomac, capturing nearly four thousand prisoners and many cannon, together with a large amount of military stores. General McDowell, instead of marching to the assistance of McClellan, sent Shields to co-operate with Fremont in an effort to surround and capture Jackson's force; but that skilful officer passed between these converging armies before they could unite, his rear-guard under Ewell repulsed Fremont at *Cross Keys* on the 8th of June, and on the next morning, with his entire force, Jackson defeated Shields at *Port Republic*, pursuing him ten miles and capturing eight of his cannon.

20. The *results* of this campaign were wonderful. With only fifteen thousand men Jackson had outgeneralled and beaten in *detail* three major-generals and sixty thousand men, who, if concentrated into one army, ought to have annihilated the whole Confederate force. He had prevented the junction of McDowell with McClellan, alarmed the Federal authorities for the safety of Washington, and saved Richmond. In all these rapid movements

son strengthened after the Confederate army was concentrated at Richmond? As soon as the reinforcements arrived, what did Jackson do? Relate Jackson's movements and victories after his defeat of Milroy at McDowell. What did General McDowell do? How did Jackson elude his pursuers? What did his rear-guard under Ewell do? What did Jackson himself do next day?

20. What of the results of this campaign? Tell what Jackson had accomplished.

his army had marched more than four hundred miles. "Jackson's foot-cavalry," as the other soldiers called them, were now the pride of the Confederate army in Virginia.

21. Soon after Lee took command of the Confederate army at Richmond, he sent to Jackson the divisions of Generals Whiting and Lawton for the purpose of leading the Federals to believe that Jackson intended an advance upon Washington. Then, while the Federal generals in the valley were expecting an attack and fortifying against it, Jackson quietly slipped away, and, on the evening of the 26th of June, appeared on the rear of the right flank of McClellan's army, while Lee, with the main Confederate army, was ready to fall upon the Federal front. The position of the Federals had been made known to Lee by *General Stuart*, who had, with a small body of cavalry, made the entire circuit of McClellan's army in safety.

22. Under the direction of Lee himself there now occurred a series of bloody encounters, known as *The Seven Days' Battles*. On the afternoon of the 26th of June, while the Confederates were getting into the position from which they intended to make the attack, occurred the battle of Mechanicsville and Beaver Dam Creek. On the next day (June 27) Lee crossed the Chickahominy and, uniting with Jackson, attacked that part of the Federal army that was on the north side of the river. This combat, known as the battle of *Gaines's Mill*, or *Cold Harbor*, resulted in the complete defeat of the Federal army, who with difficulty were able to cross the Chickahominy and join their comrades on the south side. McClellan was now obliged to retreat towards the James River. This retreat was marked by the battles of *Savage's Station* (June 29), *Frazer's Farm* and *White Oak Swamp*, on the

21. What did Lee do soon after he took command at Richmond? While the Federal generals were expecting an attack, what did Jackson do? How had the position of the Federals been made known to Lee?

22. What now occurred? Which was the first of these battles? Describe the next day's battle at Gaines's Mill. What was McClellan now obliged to do? By what was this retreat marked? What had Lee accomplished? What

30th, and *Malvern Hill*, on the 1st of July. At the last-named battle the Confederates were repulsed, but when, the next morning, they advanced to renew the attack, the Federals were gone. They had retired to Harrison's Landing, on the James River, where they found refuge under the protection of their gunboats.

With not quite eighty thousand men Lee had defeated McClellan's army, numbering one hundred and ten thousand effective troops, had captured fifty-two cannon, thirty thousand stand of small arms, an immense amount of army stores, and over ten thousand prisoners. The losses were about twenty thousand on each side; but the siege of Richmond was raised, and the discouragement at the North was as great as after the defeat at Manassas. Lincoln issued a call for three hundred thousand more men.

✓ 23. After the failure of McClellan's Peninsula campaign, the armies that had been defeated by General Jackson in the valley were united with McDowell's force, and the whole placed under the command of Major-General John Pope. McClellan was ordered to send his army around by Aquia Creek to unite with the forces under General Pope, who was then to begin a new advance upon Richmond from the north. Lee sent Jackson to meet Pope, and soon after followed with his entire force. On the 9th of August, Jackson defeated the advance of Pope's army at *Cedar Run*. Lee now moved northward, and united with Jackson, who, having got into the rear of the Federals, was fighting against great odds. On the 29th and 30th of August was fought the *second battle of Manassas*. Pope's army, which had been reinforced by a part of McClellan's army, was utterly defeated, and driven back to the fortifications near Washington. Pope's

were the losses on each side? What of the siege of Richmond? What did Lincoln issue?

23. What was done after the failure of the Peninsula campaign? What was McClellan ordered to do? What was Pope to do? What did Lee do? What happened at Cedar Run on the 9th of August? What did Lee now do? What battle was fought on the 29th and 30th of August? Give an account

rear-guard was again attacked by Jackson on September 1, at *Chantilly*, or *Ox Hill*, and forced back in disorder. Here the Union Generals Kearney and Stevens were killed. *Pope's campaign* had cost the Federals thirty thousand men, including eight generals and nine thousand prisoners, besides thirty cannon and thirty thousand stand of small arms. Pope's shattered command was now united with the Army of the Potomac, which had reached Washington, and the whole was put under McClellan.



GENERAL M'CLELLAN.

24. Lee now crossed the Potomac into *Maryland*, and advanced as far as *Frederick*. Since it was necessary to open the line of communication through the valley, Lee sent Jackson's corps against Harper's Ferry. McClellan having found a copy of Lee's order of march, hastened with his whole army to the relief of Harper's Ferry. Lee finding it necessary to defend the passage of the *South Mountain* in order to secure the safety of Jackson's corps, sent General D. H. Hill, and afterwards General Longstreet, to oppose the passage of the Federals at Boonsboro' Gap, in the South Mountain, while General Howell Cobb was likewise ordered to hold Crampton's Gap as long as possible. The force under Hill and Longstreet held their ground until darkness closed the fight, but Cobb's small force, after a gallant fight, was forced to yield the unequal contest and withdraw. This battle occurred September 14. But Lee

of this battle. What happened at Chantilly, or Ox Hill? What had Pope's campaign cost the Federals? What was done with Pope's shattered command? Under whose command were the Federal armies again placed?

24. What did Lee now do? Where did he send Jackson's corps? What did McClellan find? What did Lee now find it necessary to do? Describe the battle of *South Mountain*. What happened on the morning of the 15th of Sep-

had gained the needed time for his Harper's Ferry operations. On the morning of the 15th *Harper's Ferry* surrendered to Jackson, with its garrison of nearly twelve thousand men, besides seventy-three cannon and thirteen thousand stand of small arms. Jackson was now ordered to join Lee, who was concentrating his forces behind Antietam Creek. Here, on the 17th of September, was fought the great battle of *Sharpsburg*, or *Antietam*. Lee with less than forty thousand Confederates held his ground against nearly ninety thousand Federals led by General McClellan, repulsing every assault with the most consummate skill. During the whole of the next day the two armies remained facing each other, but neither renewed the battle. During the night of the 18th, Lee, having ascertained that McClellan was being heavily reinforced, withdrew his army across the Potomac into Virginia. His loss at Antietam was ten thousand men, that of McClellan twelve thousand. On account of Lee's retreat the Federals claimed the victory, but the Confederates also claimed it because they had repulsed every attack, had offered battle during all the next day, and had retired unmolested on the second night after the battle. It was really an indecisive battle, in which great gallantry was displayed on both sides.

25. On the night of the 19th McClellan sent Porter's corps of fresh troops across the Potomac in pursuit of Lee, but General A. P. Hill, being sent against him by Lee, attacked Porter's troops near *Shepherdstown* on the morning of the 20th, and drove the Federals into the Potomac with great slaughter. No other attempt was made to molest Lee.

26. The Federal army remained on the north of the Potomac

tember? What was Jackson now ordered to do? Give an account of the battle of Antietam, or Sharpsburg? What was done the day after the battle? What did Lee do on the night of the 18th? What were the losses on both sides? On what grounds did both parties claim the victory? What was really the case?

25. Give an account of the battle of Shepherdstown.

26. What did the two armies now do? What had Lee's army done since

and did nothing until November. The Confederate army went into camp to recuperate and rest near Winchester, Virginia. Since the 25th of June it had marched over three hundred miles on half rations and poorly clad, had vanquished three powerful armies in numerous battles and skirmishes, had inflicted on the Federals a loss of nearly seventy-six thousand men, and had captured one hundred and fifty-five cannon and nearly seventy thousand stand of small arms, besides military stores to the amount of millions of dollars. While the army was resting near Winchester, General Stuart, commander of Lee's cavalry, set out with about eighteen hundred cavalry, crossed the Potomac above Williamsport, pushed on to Chambersburg, in Pennsylvania, where he destroyed a large amount of supplies, and, passing entirely around McClellan's army, recrossed into Virginia below Harper's Ferry.

27. *The Confederate armies in the West* had during the same time been attempting to recover Tennessee and Kentucky. The way for an advance was opened by the successful cavalry raids of Colonels Morgan and Forrest. The first named of these officers moved into Kentucky, captured Lebanon and Cyntiana, with twelve hundred prisoners, re-entered Tennessee, and captured Clarksville, with a large amount of military stores. Forrest crossed the Tennessee River at Chattanooga early in July, captured McMinnville and Murfreesboro', with the garrison of the latter place. General Bragg



GENERAL BRAGG.

the 25th of June? While the Confederate army was resting near Winchester, what bold exploit did General Stuart perform?

27. What had the Confederate armies in the West been doing in the mean while? How was the way for an advance opened? Relate Morgan's exploits. Relate those of Forrest. What did General Bragg do soon after? What did

soon after these cavalry raids moved northward from Chattanooga with fifty thousand Confederates, flanking Buell's army and forcing its retreat into Kentucky, while General Kirby Smith, with seven thousand men, advanced from Knoxville into Kentucky. On the 30th of August, the same day that Lee won the second battle of Manassas, General Kirby Smith utterly defeated ten thousand Federals under Generals Nelson and Manson at *Richmond*, Kentucky, inflicting on them a loss of one thousand men in killed and wounded, and five thousand prisoners, besides nine cannon and ten thousand stand of small arms. Smith then entered Lexington, and moving northward, alarmed the Federals for the safety of Cincinnati. Bragg entered Kentucky on the 5th of September (the same day that Lee entered Maryland). On the 17th he captured the town of *Mumfordsville*, with four thousand prisoners, several cannon, and four thousand stand of small arms. He then moved forward and entered *Frankfort*, the capital of Kentucky, where he inaugurated a provisional governor. A few days after this General Buell, who had been heavily reinforced, began to advance upon Bragg. When Bragg entered Kentucky he had looked for the co-operation of General Van Dorn, who was expected to defeat the Federals in Northern Mississippi and then advance into Kentucky. But Van Dorn was unable to carry out his part of the proposed plan. At *Iuka*, in Northern Mississippi, General Price was defeated on the 19th of September. On the 4th of October, Generals Van Dorn and Price, with nearly thirty thousand men, attacked the Federals under Rosecrans, numbering twenty thousand, in their fortified position at *Corinth*, but were repulsed with the loss of about five thousand men. When Bragg found that he

General Kirby Smith do? What victory did Kirby Smith win the same day that Lee won the second Manassas? When did Bragg enter Kentucky? What place did he capture on the 17th? What did he do after this? What happened a few days after? When Bragg entered Kentucky, what had he expected? Why was he disappointed? What happened at Iuka on the 19th of September? What at Corinth on the 4th of October. When Bragg found

could not receive the hoped-for assistance from Price and Van Dorn, he prepared to retire into Tennessee. As Buell pressed upon him very rapidly he found it necessary to fight a battle to cover his retreat and to enable him to secure the rich spoils which he had captured in Kentucky. Accordingly, at *Perryville*, on the 8th of October, he halted and gave battle. Though greatly outnumbered, he not only repulsed the Federals but forced one wing back about two miles, capturing fifteen cannon and inflicting on the Federals a loss of four thousand men, while his own loss was only twenty-five hundred. The Federals claimed a victory because Bragg retreated during the night, while the Confederates claimed to be victorious because this battle secured their retreat from Kentucky without further molestation, and enabled them to carry off the great supplies of every description which had been captured.

Bragg had failed to recover Kentucky, but he had succeeded in forcing back Buell, who had been threatening Chattanooga, in Tennessee, and even Atlanta, in Georgia; he had recovered a large part of Middle Tennessee, and by the capture of Cumberland Gap he had secured the possession of East Tennessee.

28. *In the East* active operations were resumed on the 2d of November, when the Federal army again crossed the Potomac into Virginia. General Ambrose E. Burnside now superseded McClellan in command of the Federal army, and commenced a march upon Richmond by way of Fredericksburg, which place he hoped to reach before Lee's army could get there; but when he reached that position he found Lee ready to oppose his advance. On the 13th day of December occurred the great battle of

that he could not get the hoped-for assistance, what did he do? What did he find it necessary to do? Describe the battle of Perryville. On what grounds did each side claim the victory? What had Bragg failed to do? What had he succeeded in doing?

28. When were active operations resumed in the East? Who superseded McClellan? What did Burnside commence? Describe the battle of Fredericksburg. What did this victory secure for the Confederates?

Fredericksburg. Burnside's army, one hundred and twenty thousand strong, assaulted the heights held by Lee with nearly sixty thousand men, and met with a terrible repulse, losing more than thirteen thousand men, while the Confederate loss was about four thousand. This victory secured to the Confederate Army of Virginia a period of rest from the attacks of the Federals.

29. Towards the close of the year the Federals in Mississippi attempted to capture Vicksburg. But their plans failed. General Van Dorn captured *Holly Springs*, with two thousand prisoners, and destroyed Grant's depot of supplies, thus forcing General Grant to retreat. General Sherman, who was to co-operate with Grant, encountered the Confederates under Pemberton at *Chickasaw Bayou*, on the 29th of December, and was repulsed with the loss of two thousand men, while the total Confederate loss was only two hundred and seven.

30. The last great battle of the year 1862 was fought between the armies of Bragg and Rosecrans (who had succeeded Buell), near *Murfreesboro'*, Tennessee, the attack being made by Bragg. Rosecrans had set out from Nashville with forty-seven thousand men, expecting to crush Bragg's army, numbering thirty-five thousand, but Bragg anticipated him, and on the 31st of December began the attack, driving back the Federal right wing in confusion, capturing four thousand prisoners and thirty-one cannon, but failed to carry the position occupied by the left wing of the Federal army. On the 2d of January the fight was renewed, but without decisive results. On the 3d of January, Bragg ascertained that Rosecrans was being reinforced. Accordingly, he moved his army back in the direction of Tullahoma and Shelbyville, carrying off all the spoil which he had captured. In this

29. What did the Federals attempt in Mississippi towards the close of the year? How was Grant forced to retreat? Where was Sherman defeated?

30. Where and between whom was the last great battle of the year fought? Give an account of the first day's battle. When was the battle renewed, and with what result? What did Bragg do on the night of January 3? What were the losses in this battle?

battle of Murfreesboro', or Stone River, the Federal loss was fourteen thousand, the Confederate ten thousand.

31. *On the coast* the Federals gained some successes the first part of the year, but these have already been noted. On the 16th of June, General H. G. Wright led a force of six thousand men against the Confederate works at *Secessionville*, on James' Island, but was repulsed with great loss. On the 22d of October a Federal army was defeated at *Pocotaligo*, in South Carolina, while attempting to seize the Charleston and Savannah Railroad.

32. During this year the small navy, particularly the two war-vessels, the Florida and the Alabama, did immense damage to the Federal commerce.

33. In the early part of 1862 the Federals had gained many brilliant victories, and had overrun and occupied large portions of the territory of the Confederates; but at the close of the year, though the Confederates had recovered but little of their lost ground, yet their troops were triumphant on almost every field, and the Federals were everywhere held in check. Each side counted up its successes, and hoped for better results for the next year.



SEAL OF WEST VIRGINIA.

34. At the close of this year forty-eight counties of Western and Northern Virginia, the people of which had sided with the

31. Give an account of the battle of Secessionville.

32. What was accomplished by the Confederate navy during this year?

33. What was the state of affairs in the early part of 1862? What at the close of the year? What did each side do?

34. What happened in Western and Northern Virginia at the close of this

Federal government, formed a provisional government and applied for admission into the Union. The application was granted by the United States Congress, and West Virginia was recognized as a State in the following spring (April 20, 1863), and fully admitted exactly two months later.

CHAPTER IV.

LINCOLN'S ADMINISTRATION (CONTINUED).—THIRD YEAR OF THE WAR BETWEEN THE STATES.

1. ON the 1st of January, 1863, President Lincoln issued a *proclamation emancipating the slaves* in all the States that had seceded from the Union. Although this measure was not in accordance with the Constitution, yet it was justified by the friends of the administration on the plea of military necessity. By this proclamation it was expected to weaken the power of the Confederacy by holding out to the negroes the promise of freedom, and thus causing them to become the enemies of their masters.

2. At the beginning of 1863 the Federal armies were larger than in the previous year, and the Confederate armies were smaller. The efforts of the Federals were chiefly directed to the capture of Vicksburg, in Mississippi, and Richmond, in Virginia. Along the coast also both parties were quite active.

3. We will first treat of *operations* on the *coast* in the first

year? When was West Virginia recognized as a State by the United States Congress? When was it fully admitted?

1. What did President Lincoln do on the 1st of January, 1863? On what plea was this measure justified? What was expected to be accomplished by this proclamation?

2. What can you say of the respective armies at the beginning of this year? To what were the efforts of the Federals chiefly directed? What of both parties along the coast?

months of the year. On the 1st of January, 1863, General John B. Magruder, by a night attack on the Federal fleet and garrison, recaptured *Galveston*, Texas, destroyed the Federal ship *Westfield*, captured another vessel, the *Harriet Lane*, drove off the rest of the Federal fleet, and raised the blockade on that part of the coast. On the afternoon of January 11 the Confederate war-steamer *Alabama*, commanded by Commodore Semmes, attacked and captured the Federal war-steamer *Hatteras* and her crew of one hundred and eighteen men. In ten minutes after her capture the *Hatteras* sank, and was thus lost to her captors. On the 21st of the same month, at *Sabine Pass*, Major O. M. Watkins, with two Confederate gunboats, chased out to sea and captured a Federal gunboat and a schooner, with thirteen cannon, one hundred and twenty-nine prisoners, and one million dollars' worth of stores. On the 31st of January the Confederate naval force in the harbor of *Charleston*, South Carolina, commanded by Captain D. N. Ingraham, attacked the Federal blockading fleet, and for the time dispersed and drove them entirely out of sight. On the 27th of February, near Savannah, Georgia, four Federal iron-clad gunboats, under Commodore Worden, attacked the Confederate steamer *Nashville*, that had got aground near Fort McAllister, and succeeded in setting her on fire and destroying her. On March 3 four Federal iron-clad gunboats and three mortar-schooners, commanded by Commodore Dupont, attacked *Fort McAllister*, but were repulsed. On the 6th of April a strong Federal fleet, consisting of nine iron-clads and five other gunboats, commanded by Commodore Dupont, assailed *Fort Sumter*, in Charleston harbor, but were repulsed, after having several of their vessels damaged and one of them (the *Keokuk*) sunk.

3. What victory did the Confederates gain on the 1st of January, 1863? What on the afternoon of January 11? What happened at Sabine Pass on the 21st of the same month? What in Charleston harbor January 31? What did a Federal fleet do near Savannah, Georgia, on the 27th of February? What happened at Fort McAllister on March 3? What at Fort Sumter April 6?

4. The *campaign in Virginia* began on the 29th and 30th of April, when General Joseph Hooker, who had superseded General



GENERAL HOOKER.

Burnside, crossed the Rappahannock with one hundred and thirty-two thousand men. Lee had only fifty thousand men with which to meet this force, as Longstreet was absent with the greater part of his corps in Southeastern Virginia. When Hooker crossed the Rappahannock he exultingly declared that Lee would be obliged either to fly or fight a battle in which his army would certainly be destroyed. But instead of retreating Lee resolved to make the

attack himself. Taking advantage of the dense woods to conceal his movements, he detached Stonewall Jackson with his corps to move around to the Federal rear, while he himself kept up a show of fight in front. On the afternoon of the 2d of May, Jackson, having gained the Federal rear by a circuit of more than fifteen miles, burst upon their right flank and routed it. On the next day Hooker's main force was attacked by Lee and driven back at *Chancellorsville*. On the 4th, General Sedgwick, who was advancing to attack Lee's army in the rear, was overwhelmed at Salem Church and driven back in confusion. On the night of the 5th, Hooker retreated across the Rappahannock, leaving behind seventeen thousand men,—killed, wounded, and prisoners,—fourteen

4. When did the campaign in Virginia begin? How many men had Lee with which to meet this force? What did Hooker declare when he crossed the Rappahannock? Instead of retreating, what did Lee do? Whom did he send against the Federal rear? What happened on the 2d of May? What on the next day? What on the 4th? What did Hooker do on the night of the 5th? What was his loss? What the Confederate loss? What great general did the Confederates lose? What is this three days' conflict called?

cannon, and thirty thousand stand of small arms. The Confederate loss was ten thousand men. Among these was one especially whom they could ill afford to lose, the famous Stonewall Jackson, whose skill and courage had so often won victory and renown for the Confederate arms. This terrible three days' conflict is known as the battle of *Chancellorsville*. Both armies remained quiet after this battle until the first part of June.

5. Meanwhile, the Federals *in the West* were making vigorous efforts to capture Vicksburg and Port Hudson, which commanded the navigation of the

Mississippi. The army operating against Vicksburg was commanded by General Ulysses S. Grant. After the failure of Grant and Sherman to capture Vicksburg, in December, 1862, General John McClelland, with thirty thousand men, a large part of them from Sherman's army, assisted by Admiral Porter's fleet, after a five hours' desperate conflict, captured *Arkansas Post*, on the Arkansas River, and its



NAVIGATION IN THE MISSISSIPPI RAYONS.

garrison of five thousand men, commanded by General T. J. Churchill, besides seventeen cannon, three thousand stand of small arms, and a great quantity of munitions and commissary

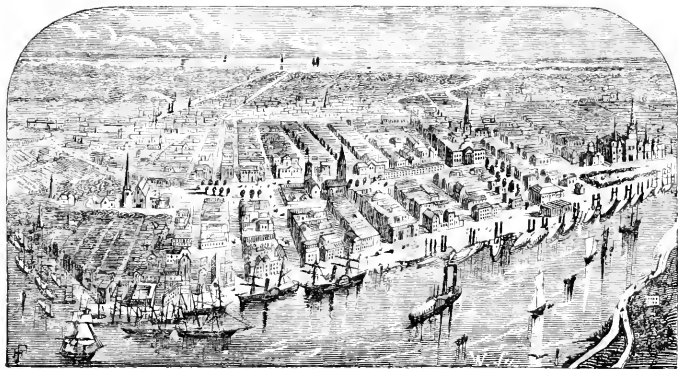
5. Meanwhile, what were the Federals in the West doing? Who commanded the army operating against Vicksburg? What post did General McClelland capture on the 11th of January? What did General Grant do

stores. This was on the 11th of January. During the months of February and March General Grant made many attempts to approach Vicksburg,—first by Williams's Canal, next by Lake Providence, then by Yazoo Pass, then by Steele's Bayou, then by Milliken's Bend and New Carthage Cut-off. In all these efforts he failed. But he was not a man to be discouraged by failures. He adopted the bold plan of sending his army down the west bank of the Mississippi to Grand Gulf, and running his transports past the Vicksburg batteries down to the same point. Then he intended to cross the Mississippi at Grand Gulf, and, moving up from that point, attack Vicksburg in the rear. In this he completely succeeded. From Grand Gulf he began his march upon Vicksburg, defeating the forces of Pemberton at *Raymond* on the 12th of May; at *Baker's Creek*, or *Champion Hill*, on the 16th of May; and at the *Big Black* on the 17th. The Confederate army of nearly thirty thousand men now retired into Vicksburg, where they were closely besieged by the Federal army. They had lost in the series of battles just named six thousand men killed, wounded, and prisoners, besides thirty-three cannon and a large number of small arms. The entire Federal force, both on land and water, now besieging Vicksburg numbered considerably more than one hundred thousand men. On the 19th and 22d of May two grand assaults were made on the Confederate fortifications, but were repulsed, with a loss to the Federals of four thousand men. Grant now determined to keep Pemberton's army shut up in Vicksburg until it should be starved into a surrender.

6. Meanwhile, General Banks had advanced from New Orleans with about fifteen thousand men, and was closely besieging *Port*

during February and March? With what result? What bold plan did he adopt? Did he succeed? What victories did he now gain? What had the Confederates lost in this series of battles? What was the size of the Federal army besieging Vicksburg? What was the result of assaults made on the 19th and 22d of May? What did Grant now determine to do?

6. Meanwhile, what had General Banks done? What was the result of an



VIEW OF NEW ORLEANS—LAKE PONTCHARTRAIN IN THE DISTANCE.

Hudson, which was defended by six thousand Confederates under General Gardner. On the 27th of May he assaulted the Confederate works, but was repulsed with the loss of two thousand men, while the Confederates did not lose three hundred in all. On the 10th and 14th of June he again assaulted and was again repulsed.

7. On the 22d of June, General Dick Taylor, hoping to make a diversion in favor of Port Hudson, captured *Brashear City*, Louisiana, with one thousand prisoners, a strong fort, ten large cannon, and supplies valued at nearly six million dollars.

8. Efforts were now made by the Confederate government to assemble an army for the relief of Vicksburg and Port Hudson, by sending a large portion of General Bragg's army to Mississippi under the command of General Joseph E. Johnston. The effect of this transfer of troops from Tennessee to Mississippi was that Bragg's position in Tennessee was weakened, while the force sent

assault made on the 27th of May? What of the assaults made on the 10th and 14th of June?

7. What happened at *Brashear City* on the 22d of June?

8. What efforts were now made by the Confederate government? What was the effect of this transfer of troops?

to Mississippi was not strong enough to accomplish the purpose for which it was designed.

9. The Confederate government now resolved on *an invasion of Pennsylvania*, with the double design of freeing Virginia from the presence of hostile troops, and also of breaking up the entire Federal plan of campaign for the summer, both in the East and in the West. Accordingly, on the 3d of June, General Lee, at the head of an enthusiastic army of eighty thousand men of all arms, an army which had never yet acknowledged defeat, commenced his forward march. On the 9th of June, after the Federals on the north of the Rappahannock had discovered that Lee's army was making a movement of some sort, a large force of their cavalry under Generals Gregg and Buford, strongly supported by infantry, crossed the Rappahannock and attacked General Stuart at *Fleetwood*, near Brandy Station, but after a severe engagement the Union troops were driven back across the river. General Lee flanking Hooker's army, moved northward with confidence. On the 14th of June, General Early, of Ewell's corps, stormed and carried the Federal works at *Winchester*, while General Rodes, on the same day, captured *Martinsburg*. The *fruits of these two victories* were more than four thousand prisoners, twenty-nine cannon, two hundred and seventy wagons and ambulances, with four hundred horses, besides a large amount of military stores. On the 23d of June, General Ewell, with the advance of Lee's army, crossed the Potomac, and on the 27th of June the Confederate army entered *Chambersburg*, Pennsylvania. Some divisions entered *York* and *Carlisle*, and were advancing on Harrisburg, when they received orders to join the main army

9. On what did the Confederate government now resolve? With what design? What did General Lee do on the 3d of June? Describe the cavalry battle of the 9th of June at Fleetwood, near Brandy Station. What two victories did the Confederates win on the 14th of June? What were the fruits of these two victories? When did the advance of Lee's army cross the Potomac? When did they enter Chambersburg, Pennsylvania? What did some other divisions do? What orders did they receive? What had these move-

near Gettysburg. These movements of Lee's army had forced the Federal Army of the Potomac to abandon Virginia and hasten to the defence of Pennsylvania. While on the march General Hooker, at his own request, was relieved of the command, and General George G. Meade was appointed in his place. With one hundred thousand men Meade hastened forward to check the advance of Lee.

10. At *Gettysburg*, on the 1st of July, the Confederate advance corps under Generals Hill and Ewell encountered the advance corps of the Federals led by Generals Reynolds and Howard, and after a spirited battle drove them through Gettysburg, inflicting upon them the loss of five thousand in killed and wounded, besides capturing five thousand prisoners and several cannon. General Reynolds was among the slain. The first day's battle was thus a brilliant success for the Southern arms. Had the advantage gained been pushed that evening, no doubt their triumph would have been complete. During the night of the first the whole Federal army came up, and was concentrated on a high range of hills south and east of the town, and opposite the position carried and held by the Confederates. So strong was the Federal position that Lee hesitated about attacking it, but when he looked upon his gallant army, so full of spirit and eager for the fray, he hesitated no longer. The order to advance was given, and Longstreet's corps on Lee's right,



GENERAL MEADE.

ments of Lee's army forced the Federals to do? Who succeeded Hooker in command of the Federal army? With how many men did he advance against Lee?

10. Where and when did the advance corps of the two armies encounter each other? Give an account of the first day's battle. What happened during

after a bloody fight, succeeded in piercing the Federal lines and retaining its position within them, while General Ewell also succeeded in carrying some of the strong positions which he assailed. The Confederates now hoped, and with reason, that on the next day one more vigorous effort would give them the crowning victory of the campaign. The morning of the 3d was spent by both sides in busy preparation. In the afternoon, after a furious bombardment, the charging column of Confederates under Pickett advanced, and succeeded in entering the Federal works and getting possession of some of their batteries, but after a gallant struggle were forced to fall back with severe loss to the position from which they had made the assault. The Confederate army had suffered too severely to renew the assault, but was well able to meet any attack that might be made; while the Federal army, which had but barely held its own, was not able to assault Lee's position. Had the battle of Gettysburg occurred in Virginia, it would have been considered indecisive, but occurring where it did, it was a decisive Federal victory.

11. Lee could not remain longer in Pennsylvania, because he could not procure supplies, and there was danger that a force might be sent which would interrupt his communications and perhaps cut off his army from the fords of the Potomac. He remained at Gettysburg during the 4th, waiting to see if the Federals would attack his position, and feeling perfectly able to repulse any assault. As the Federals did not attack, the Confederates busied themselves all that day in burying their dead and in moving such of their wounded as were in a condition to be moved. The Confederate army began to retire on the night of the 4th, but the rear of the column did not leave its position near Gettysburg until after daylight on the 5th. They retired

the night of the 1st? Describe the second day's fight. Describe the battle of the 3d. What was now the condition of the two armies?

11. Why could not Lee remain longer in Pennsylvania? How long did he remain at Gettysburg? How did the Confederates busy themselves during the 4th? When did they begin to retire? Were they molested? Had they lost

without molestation by the Federals. Their defeat had happened in such a way that they had not lost one bit of their confidence in themselves or their leader. At *Williamsport*, on the 6th of July, the Confederate wagon and ambulance train, which had been sent ahead of the army, under the escort of General Imboden, was attacked by the Federal cavalry, but the Federals were repulsed, and were soon after themselves attacked by General Stuart and pursued for several miles. On the 7th of July the Confederate army reached the Potomac, and finding the river so much swollen by the rains that the trains with the wounded and prisoners could not be got across, Lee took up a position extending from Williamsport to Falling Waters, and waited for the subsiding of the river and the construction of bridges. On the 12th of July, General Meade appeared before Lee's position, but, instead of attacking, began to fortify his own position. On the night of the 13th Lee withdrew his army across the Potomac into Virginia without being interrupted by the Federals.

12. The losses in the Pennsylvania campaign were very heavy. The Confederates lost eighteen thousand in killed and wounded and about ten thousand unwounded prisoners, the greater part of this loss being inflicted upon them in the battles around Gettysburg. The Federal losses during the campaign were about equal to those of the Confederates, amounting to more than twenty-three thousand at Gettysburg, and more than five thousand at Winchester and Martinsburg. Of this number ten thousand were unwounded prisoners, nearly six thousand being captured at Gettysburg, and more than four thousand at Winchester and Martinsburg. In artillery, the Federals lost three cannon at Fleet-

any confidence in themselves or their leader? What occurred at Williamsport on the 6th of July? What did Lee do when he reached the Potomac? When did Meade appear before Lee's position? Did Meade attack? What did he do? What did Lee do on the night of the 13th?

12. What was the Confederate loss in the Pennsylvania campaign? What the Federal? How many unwounded prisoners on both sides included in this loss? What were the losses in artillery?

wood, twenty-nine at Winchester and Martinsburg, and sixteen at Gettysburg, while the Confederates lost but three cannon in the whole campaign.

13. Meanwhile, *great disasters* had befallen the Confederate arms in the West. Vicksburg, after a long and gallant defence, was surrendered to General Grant on the 4th of July, with two hundred cannon and twenty-seven thousand prisoners. On the 9th, Port Hudson, which had been bravely defended to the last, surrendered to General Banks, with seventy-three cannon and six thousand prisoners.

14. We will now notice *operations in Kentucky, Tennessee, and Georgia*. While Bragg and Rosecrans confronted each other before Tullahoma, in Middle Tennessee, many expeditions and partial actions took place. On the 5th of March, General Van Dorn, with a large cavalry force, attacked the Federals under Colonel Coburn at *Spring Hill*, in Middle Tennessee, and captured the whole force. On the 8th of May, Colonel Streight, who had been sent with nearly two thousand Federal cavalry to destroy the machine-shops of Rome and Atlanta, was defeated by General Forrest near *Rome*, in Georgia, and compelled to surrender his entire command. During the month of July, General John H. Morgan, with about two thousand men, crossed the Ohio River below Louisville and pushed across the southern portions of Ohio and Indiana, doing great damage to the Federals and causing general consternation among the inhabitants; but his command was at last attacked by superior numbers and the greater portion of it captured (July 26), Morgan himself being among the prisoners, but he afterwards escaped.

In June, Rosecrans began to advance on Bragg, whose army had been very much weakened by the transfer of troops to Mis-

13. Meanwhile, what great disasters had befallen the Confederate arms in the West?

14. What will we now notice? What happened at Spring Hill, in Middle Tennessee, on the 5th of March? What on the 8th of May, near Rome, Georgia? Give an account of Morgan's raid in July. What did Rosecrans do in

issippi. Bragg was obliged to retire to Chattanooga. Before he could be reinforced he found that he must either abandon Chattanooga or run the risk of being shut up and besieged as Pemberton had been at Vicksburg. Accordingly, on the 8th of September he evacuated Chattanooga, which was occupied by the Federals. On the same day Cumberland Gap surrendered to General Burnside, who advanced and occupied Knoxville.

15. Soon after leaving Chattanooga, Bragg was reinforced by part of Longstreet's corps from Lee's army, and with his force now increased to fifty thousand men he advanced to encounter Rosecrans's army of fifty-five thousand. The two armies met at *Chickamauga* Creek, on the extreme northern border of Georgia. In the battle which occurred here on the 19th and 20th of September the Federals were utterly defeated, with the loss of twenty thousand men, of whom eight thousand were prisoners, besides fifty-one cannon and fifteen thousand stand of small arms. The loss of the Confederates was about fifteen thousand. The Federal army was pursued to Chattanooga, and there besieged by Bragg.

16. While Bragg was in front of Chattanooga, Longstreet was ordered with his corps to proceed against General Burnside in East Tennessee. He accordingly advanced to the northward, defeated Colonel Wolford at *Philadelphia Station* on the 20th of October, and on the 6th of November defeated the main army under Burnside at *Campbell's Station*, forcing the Union troops back to their fortifications at Knoxville, which he proceeded to invest.

17. Bragg was now investing Chattanooga and cutting off the

June? What was Bragg obliged to do? Before he could be reinforced what did he find? When did he abandon Chattanooga? What happened at Cumberland Gap on the same day?

15. How was Bragg reinforced soon after leaving Chattanooga? What did he now do? Where did the two armies meet? Describe the battle of Chickamauga.

16. While Bragg was before Chattanooga what was Longstreet ordered to do? What two victories did Longstreet gain?

supplies of the Federal army. But relief came to the besieged, for the two corps of Hooker and Howard were sent to them from Meade's army in Virginia. In November the Federals were still further reinforced by Sherman's army from Mississippi. General Grant took command of the Federal armies around Chattanooga, which now numbered not less than eighty thousand men. Bragg's army, numbering much less than forty thousand men after its losses at Chickamauga and the departure of Longstreet's corps, was encamped on Missionary Ridge. On the 24th of November, Hooker's corps of the Federal army carried the works on *Lookout Mountain*, which, through some bad management, was defended by a single brigade only. On the 25th occurred the battle of *Missionary Ridge*. The left wing of the Confederates, which was their weakest point, was routed and driven from the field, but the right, under Hardee, held its ground firmly, and, after the left had given way, retired in order, and by its firm bearing saved the Confederate army from destruction. The Confederate loss in this disastrous fight was nine thousand men (of whom six thousand were prisoners) and forty cannon. The Federal army lost nearly seven thousand men. General Hooker was sent in pursuit of the retreating Confederates, but at a gap in Taylor's Ridge, near the village of *Ringgold*, General Cleburne halted his division and inflicted a repulse upon the Federals which cost them nearly a thousand men. The Confederate loss in the battle of Ringgold was less than two hundred. The pursuit was pressed no farther. Grant drew back his forces to Chattanooga, and sent Sherman to the assistance of Burnside at *Knoxville*. Here Longstreet was

17. What was Bragg doing at Chattanooga? How did relief come to the besieged? How were the Federals still further reinforced in November? Who now took command of the Federal armies around Chattanooga? What did the Federal army now number? What did Bragg's army number? What did Hooker's corps do the 24th of November? Describe the battle of Missionary Ridge. What were the losses of the two armies? Where was the pursuit checked? How? What was the Confederate loss in the battle of Ringgold? What did Grant do? What happened at Knoxville on the 30th of November? What at Strawberry Plains?

repulsed, in an assault on the 30th of November, with heavy loss, after which, hearing of Sherman's approach, he abandoned the siege and retired towards Virginia. At *Strawberry Plains* he defeated a Federal force which attempted to pursue him.

18. The armies in Virginia were not idle all this time. Early in October Lee set out from his camp on the Rappahannock, with the intention of placing his army on the line of Meade's communications. When Meade became aware of these movements he retreated rapidly as far as *Centreville*, near Washington. Lee then returned to his former position on the Rappahannock, after destroying the railroad which Meade had used for the transportation of his supplies, and having inflicted on the Federals a loss of three thousand men, mostly prisoners, while his own loss was not half so many. After Meade had returned to his former position on the Rappahannock, General Russell, commanding a division in his army, captured some Confederate works at *Rappahannock Station*, taking four cannon and sixteen hundred prisoners. In the latter part of November Meade crossed the Rapidan and advanced to attack Lee, but the Confederates were ready and waiting for him at *Mine Run*, and on the night of December 1 the Federal army retired to its position north of the Rapidan.

19. During the summer and fall *operations on the coast* continued active. Land and naval forces attacked the defences of Charleston, but without success. On the 18th of July, General Strong led an assault on *Fort Wagner*, on Morris Island, but was repulsed with a loss of fifteen hundred men, while the Confederate loss was less than one hundred. By means of heavy guns the Federals battered Fort Sumter into a heap of ruins, but the Confederate garrison still held the work and repulsed an attempt to storm it. Gillmore threw shells into Charleston, but all his efforts

18. What happened in October? What did Meade do? What did Lee accomplish by this movement to the rear of Meade's army? What success had the Federals at Rappahannock Station? Relate the affair of Mine Run.

19. What of operations on the coast during the summer and fall? Give an account of the Federal repulse at Fort Wagner on the 18th of July. What is

accomplished nothing. At *Sabine Pass*, on the coast of Texas, on the 8th of September, a small Confederate fort, manned by two hundred and fifty men under the command of Captain Odium, repulsed a Federal force consisting of an army of four thousand men and a fleet of four gunboats. The Federal loss was two gunboats, which were captured by the Confederates, together with fifteen heavy rifled cannon, besides fifty killed and wounded and two hundred prisoners. Through the bad management of the Federal commander, General Franklin, his four thousand men were of no more assistance to the fleet than if they had been a thousand miles away. In this affair the Confederates did not lose a single man.

20. At the close of 1863 the Federal government had recovered control of the Mississippi River, had overrun the State of Tennessee, had regained almost all of Arkansas and portions of Louisiana, Mississippi, and Florida. Hence the people of the North were ready to continue the war. On the other hand, the Confederates had gained some brilliant victories, and were equally determined to fight it out to the end, whatever that might be.

said of Fort Sumter? Did Gillmore accomplish anything? Describe the Confederate victory at Sabine Pass on the 8th of September. What was the Federal loss? To what was their defeat owing? What was the Confederate loss?

20. What was the state of affairs at the close of 1863?

CHAPTER V

LINCOLN'S ADMINISTRATION (CONTINUED).—FOURTH YEAR OF THE WAR BETWEEN THE STATES.

1. AT the beginning of 1864 the Federal armies numbered fully a million men, while the Confederate armies numbered not more than two hundred and fifty thousand.

2. Active operations commenced in February by the *invasion* of *Florida* by an army of six thousand Federals, led by General Seymour. At *Olustee, or Ocean Pond*, on the 20th of February, they were met by five thousand Confederates under Generals Colquitt and Finnegan. Colquitt led the attack on the Federals and completely defeated them. This defeat compelled the Union forces to abandon the invasion of Florida.

3. On the 3d of February, General William T. Sherman set out from Vicksburg, Mississippi, to clear that State of the Confederates. He was to be supported by a cavalry raid from Tennessee. As he advanced with fifty thousand men, General Polk, whose force was too small for any effective resistance, retired before him, and Sherman advanced as far as Meridian, and even contemplated an assault on Mobile from the rear. His plans were frustrated by General Forrest, who, on the 22d of February, with a body of Confederate cavalry, defeated a large force of Federal cavalry, which was to co-operate with Sherman, at *Okalona*. Forrest drove the Federals, who were commanded by General Grierson,

1. What was the size of the armies at the beginning of 1864?

2. Where did active operations begin? Describe the battle of Olustee. What did this defeat compel the Federals to do?

3. What did General Sherman do on the 3d of February? How was he to be supported? How were Sherman's plans frustrated? What happened at Okalona on the 22d of February? What did Sherman do in consequence of this battle? Describe Forrest's movements.

in complete rout back to Memphis, capturing many prisoners and ten cannon. In consequence of this battle Sherman returned to Vicksburg. Forrest continued active movements in Tennessee and Kentucky, and on the 12th of April captured *Fort Pillow* by assault.

4. *On the west of the Mississippi*, in Louisiana and Arkansas, the Confederates gained still more brilliant successes. When Sherman returned to Vicksburg a large part of his army was united with that of General Banks, in Louisiana, swelling his force to forty thousand men. In co-operation with General Steele, from Arkansas, with seven thousand more men, Banks intended to drive the Confederates entirely out of Louisiana and Arkansas, and complete their overthrow in Texas. He therefore moved northward from New Orleans, while Steele moved southward from Little Rock. The Confederate army under General Dick Taylor attacked the Federals at *Mansfield*, or Sabine Cross-Roads, on the 8th of April, and again at *Pleasant Hill* on the 9th, forcing General Banks to retreat to New Orleans. When Steele heard of the defeat of Banks he retreated, closely pursued by General Kirby Smith. Instead of succeeding in their plans the Federals had been defeated, with a total loss of fourteen thousand men,—killed, wounded, and prisoners,—thirty-five cannon, eleven hundred wagons, one gunboat, and three transports. The Confederates, whose whole strength was only about twenty-five thousand, recovered nearly all of Louisiana and Arkansas, and lost less than five thousand in killed, wounded, and missing. Thus ended the *Red River expedition*.

5. On the *North Carolina coast*, on the 20th of April, General

4. What was done with a large part of Sherman's army after his return to Vicksburg? What did Banks expect to do in co-operation with General Steele? What did the Confederate army under Dick Taylor do? When Steele heard of the defeat of Banks, what did he do? What was the loss of the Federals on the Red River expedition? What had the Confederates done?

5. What victory did the Confederates win on the North Carolina coast on the 20th of April?

Hoke, with about six thousand men, assisted by the iron-clad gun-boat Albemarle, captured *Plymouth*, with its garrison, with much artillery and stores.

6. Early in March there occurred in Virginia the great cavalry raid of Kilpatrick and Dahlgren, whose object was to surprise Richmond, enter the city, then release the Federal prisoners there confined, and leave them to burn the city and kill the Confederate President and Cabinet. They completely failed, and Dahlgren was killed on his retreat. On his person were found the papers which revealed the whole plot.

7. In March General Ulysses S. Grant was made lieutenant-general in command of all the forces of the United States. Two grand campaigns were now planned,—one against Richmond, in Virginia, under Grant himself; the other against Atlanta, in Georgia, under the leadership of General William Tecumseh Sherman. Both campaigns began on the same day. On the 4th of May, while the Army of the Potomac was crossing the Rappahannock, Grant, seated on a log by the side of the road, wrote a telegram to Sherman bidding him to start.

8. We will first treat of the *Virginia campaign* of the spring and early part of the summer. The Federal plan was that Grant's army, one hundred and forty thousand strong, should advance from the north upon Richmond; Generals Crook and Sigel were to capture Staunton and Lynchburg and come down upon the Confederate rear; while General Butler, with thirty thousand men, was to move up the James River, take Petersburg, and approach Richmond from the south.

9. It was in this campaign especially that General Lee exhibited talents which entitle him to rank among the great generals

6. Give an account of the raids of Kilpatrick and Dahlgren in Virginia.

7. Who was appointed in March to command all the United States forces? What two grand campaigns were now formed? When did both campaigns begin?

8. What was the plan of the Federal campaign in Virginia?

9. What did Lee exhibit in this campaign? With how many men did he

of the world. With sixty-four thousand men he moved forward promptly to meet Grant's large army, and in the *Wilderness*, not far from the old battle-field of Chancellorsville, he fell upon the Federal lines. During the 5th and 6th of May the battle raged with great fury. Longstreet was wounded as he was pressing back the Federal lines, and was unable to resume his command for several months. At the close of the second day's battle Grant found himself completely checked. He had lost twenty thousand men, and Lee eight thousand.

10. On the night of the 7th Grant attempted by a flank march to Lee's right to seize *Spottsylvania Court-House* and get between the Confederate army and Richmond, but when he reached that point he found the Southern army barring his way. He had been foiled by the skill with which the great Confederate leader had penetrated his design. There now occurred several days of skirmishing and desperate fighting. At early dawn on the 12th of May General Hancock, leading some of Grant's best troops, surprised and captured an exposed part of the Confederate works, taking three thousand men of the old Stonewall Division and thirty cannon, and was on the point of breaking through Lee's lines when General John B. Gordon with two brigades, rushing into the breach, checked the advancing Federals. The Confederates made repeated efforts to retake the captured salient, but failed, though they recovered twelve of the captured guns. On the other hand the Federal efforts to dislodge Lee's army all failed, and the day ended in a Confederate success. After this repulse Grant remained quiet several days waiting for reinforcements. After these were received, finding that he could not move Lee

move to meet Grant? Where did he encounter him? Describe the battle of the Wilderness.

10. What did Grant attempt on the night of the 7th? What did he find in his way? What now occurred? What did General Hancock do at early dawn of the 12th of May? Who checked the Federal advance? Describe the fight that then occurred. What did Grant do after receiving reinforcements?

from his position, he drew off and again attempted to get between Lee and Richmond.

11. Again he was foiled, for he found Lee at the *North Anna* (May 23) ready to dispute his advance. After some severe fighting, in which he accomplished nothing, Grant made still another attempt, and found the Confederate army drawn up at Cold Harbor, still barring the way to Richmond. During the movements from Spottsylvania Court-House to Cold Harbor General Stuart, the commander of Lee's cavalry, was defeated and mortally wounded at *Yellow Tavern* (May 11) by the Federal cavalry under General Philip Sheridan. General Wade Hampton succeeded Stuart in command of the cavalry.

12. On the 3d of June, Grant's army assaulted Lee's position at *Cold Harbor*, but after an action which lasted only twenty minutes, the Federals were repulsed with the loss of ten thousand men, while the Confederate loss was not much over one thousand. When Grant ordered his army to renew the assault, the soldiers refused to obey the command. The campaign of one month had cost the Federals sixty thousand men. The Confederate losses during the same time were eighteen thousand men.

13. The other Federal generals who were to co-operate with Grant succeeded no better. On the 6th of May, while Lee and Grant were fighting in the Wilderness, Butler began his advance with thirty thousand men, but Beauregard hastened up from Charleston, South Carolina, with all the forces that could be spared, and reached Petersburg about the time that Butler landed at Bermuda Hundreds, between Petersburg and Richmond. On

11. How was he again foiled? When he made another attempt, where did he find the Confederate army drawn up? What happened at Yellow Tavern on the 11th of May? Who succeeded Stuart in command of Lee's cavalry?

12. What happened on the 3d of June? Describe the battle of Cold Harbor. What had the campaign of one month cost the Federals? What was the Confederate loss?

13. Did the Federal generals who were to co-operate with Grant succeed any better? What did Butler do on the 6th of May? Who hastened to the

the 16th of May, Beauregard, with fifteen thousand men, totally defeated Butler near *Drewry's Bluff*, and drove the Federals back to *Bermuda Hundreds*, with the loss to them of five thousand men. He then shut them up in their fortifications so closely that they could be of no assistance to Grant.

The conjoint movement of Crook and Sigel was arrested by General Breckinridge, who, with a greatly inferior force, assisted by the cadets of the Virginia Military Institute, routed Sigel at *New Market*, in the valley, on the 15th of May.

14. After Grant's repulse at Cold Harbor, on the 3d of June, he found it necessary to abandon his attempt upon Richmond from the north. He now resolved to cross the James River and seize *Petersburg* before Lee should be aware of his purpose. But he failed in this also; for his advance was held in check at *Petersburg* by some local troops, and when his main army arrived, there stood Lee's veterans before him. On the 17th and 18th of June Grant assaulted, but was again repulsed, with the loss of ten thousand men, while the Confederate loss was small.

15. While Grant was preparing to cross the James, he ordered General Sheridan with his cavalry to seize Gordonsville and Charlottesville, destroy the railroads at those places, and unite with General Hunter in a movement from the valley. But Sheridan did not succeed, for he was met at *Trevillian's Station* on the 12th of June by General Wade Hampton and defeated. Hunter succeeded no better. He was met at *Lynchburg* by Early and Breckinridge, and forced to retire on the 18th of June. Early followed him so closely that his retreat became a disorderly flight.

defence of Petersburg? What did Beauregard do on the 16th of May? How was the conjoint movement of Crook and Sigel arrested?

14. What did Grant now find it necessary to do? What did he resolve to do? Why did he fail in this? What was the result of assaults made on the 17th and 18th of June?

15. While Grant was preparing to cross the James what did he order Sheridan to do? Why did not Sheridan succeed? What of Hunter? Tell what

While Grant was fighting at Petersburg, a force of eight thousand cavalry under Wilson and Kautz was sent to destroy the Confederate communications with the South and West, but were totally defeated, losing many in killed and wounded, more than one thousand men captured, thirteen cannon, and thirty wagons. After the failure of Grant's assaults on Petersburg, the remainder of June and the greater part of July were spent by the two armies in strengthening their respective positions.

16. We will now notice *operations in Georgia*. The campaign in that State began on the same day with the campaign in Virginia (May 4), when General Sherman, with one hundred thousand men, began to advance upon the Confederate position at Dalton, which was defended by General Joseph E. Johnston with forty-three thousand men. Sherman's superiority of numbers enabled him to engage the Confederate army with a force larger than their own, and at the same time send a large force to threaten their communications. His plan throughout the whole campaign was to bring Johnston to battle on such terms as would insure his decisive defeat, and then advance and occupy Atlanta. Johnston's plan was to avoid a general engagement, except where the advantage of position was on the side of the Confederates, and at the same time to delay Sherman's march as much as possible. If no opportunity presented itself of defeating



GENERAL JOE JOHNSTON.

is said of the cavalry raid of Wilson and Kautz? How was the remainder of June and the greater part of July spent by the two armies?

16. When did the campaign in Georgia begin? With how many men did Sherman advance? How many had Johnston? What did Sherman's superiority of numbers enable him to do? What was his plan throughout the campaign? What was Johnston's plan? If no opportunity was presented of defeating Sherman, what did he intend to do?

Sherman, he intended to fall back to his lines near Atlanta, where his position would be as strong as Lee's before Richmond and Petersburg, and there, with the advantage on his side, he expected to defeat the Federal army.

17. On the 8th and 9th of May there was fighting at *Dalton*, in which the Confederates had the advantage, but Sherman was able to swing his right so far around Johnston's left that the Confederate army was obliged to fall back to *Resaca*. Here, on the 14th and 15th of May, there was fought a considerable battle



GENERAL SHERMAN.

between portions of the two armies, which was in the main to the advantage of the Confederates, but Sherman made another flanking move, and Johnston withdrew across the Oostenaule, and took up a position near Cassville, where he hoped to have a favorable opportunity of fighting a battle. Being disappointed in this, he crossed the Etowah on the morning of the 20th. Here his army rested for three days. On the 24th of May,

General Wheeler, commanding the Confederate cavalry, gained a brilliant success near *Cassville*.

18. Johnston having ascertained that Sherman's forces had crossed the Etowah far to the Confederate left, marched promptly to meet them, and took up a position extending from Dallas to the railroad. There now occurred a series of partial engagements, which Johnston and Sherman in their respective narratives of this campaign agree in calling the battle of *New Hope*

17. What happened at Dalton on the 8th and 9th of May? Why was the Confederate army obliged to fall back? What happened at Resaca on the 14th and 15th of May? When did Johnston withdraw across the Etowah? What happened on the 24th of May at Cassville?

18. Where did Johnston next take up a position? What now occurred?

Church. The first of these was on the 25th of May, between Hooker's corps and Stewart's division of Hood's corps. In this the Federals were repulsed, with the loss of at least two thousand men, while the Confederate loss was only four hundred. The second was on the 27th, between the Fourth Corps of the Federal army and Cleburne's division of Hardee's corps, near Little Pumpkin Vine Creek. The Federals were again repulsed, and the respective losses were nearly the same as in the affair of the 25th. The next day, at Dallas, General Bate, with two brigades, made an assault, but was repulsed, with the loss of three hundred men, while the Federal loss was trifling.

For several weeks there was constant skirmishing between the two armies. All this time the Federals kept shifting position, first in one direction and then in another, in the effort to turn the flanks of the Confederates, all of which movements were skilfully met by General Johnston. In one of these skirmishes, on the 14th of June, General Leonidas Polk, one of Johnston's corps commanders, was killed.

19. Soon after this Johnston took up a strong position at *Kenesaw Mountain*. Heavy skirmishing continued, in which partial attacks were made by both sides, invariably resulting in the repulse of the attacking party. On the 27th of June General Sherman made a general attack on the Confederate lines on Kenesaw Mountain, and was repulsed, with a loss of between three and five thousand men, while the loss in Johnston's army was only five hundred and twenty-two.

20. While all this fighting was going on in Georgia, General

Give an account of the battle of the 25th of May. Of the 27th. What happened next day at Dallas, on the extreme Confederate left? What was now the state of affairs for several weeks? Who was killed in one of these skirmishes?

19. Where did Johnston next take up a position? Give an account of Sherman's repulse at Kenesaw on the 27th of June.

20. While all this fighting was going on in Georgia, what did General Forrest do in Mississippi? What was the Federal loss in men and stores?

Forrest, in Mississippi, attacked the Federal General Sturgis (June 10) at *Tishamingo Creek*, near Guntown, and completely overwhelmed him. Out of twelve thousand men the Federals lost five thousand in killed, wounded, and prisoners. They also lost their entire train of wagons and all their artillery (twenty cannon).

21. On the 2d of July, five days after the battle of Kenesaw Mountain, Johnston ascertained that Sherman was about to get between his position and Atlanta. He therefore retired to a new line near the Chattahoochee, and afterwards crossed that river and placed his army in the lines near Atlanta. Johnston now resolved to hold Atlanta with the Georgia State troops, and with his whole army fall upon the Federal flank and rear. After Sherman had crossed the Chattahoochee, Johnston, while preparing to carry out his plan, was superseded by General John B. Hood, a brave and gallant officer, but one who lacked the necessary skill and experience. The army turned over to Hood numbered fifty-one thousand men, its losses having been more than counterbalanced by the reinforcements received. Its losses during the campaign were ten thousand in killed and wounded and about four thousand from other causes, most of the latter being soldiers absent on account of sickness. The Federal loss during the same time was about twenty thousand in all, but this loss had been repaired by reinforcements.

22. There now occurred a series of battles known as the *Battles of Atlanta*. On the 20th of July, Hood attacked the Federals on Peach Tree Creek, but was repulsed. On the 22d of July, General Hood, leaving a force to hold Atlanta, marched with his

21. What did Johnston ascertain five days after the battle of Kenesaw Mountain? What did he do? What did Johnston resolve to do? By whom was Johnston succeeded before he could carry out his plan? What did the army turned over to Hood number? What were its losses during the campaign? What were the Federal losses during the same time?

22. What now occurred? Give an account of the battle of July 20. Of July 22. Who claimed the victory on that day? What did Sherman do on

main army around to Decatur, and fell upon the Federal left and rear, driving them from their works and capturing twenty-two cannon, eighteen stand of colors, and fifteen hundred prisoners; but Sherman bringing forward fresh troops checked the Confederates in their victorious onset and recovered nine of his captured guns. Both generals claimed the victory; but Sherman made no other attempt to flank Atlanta on that side. Two gallant officers lost their lives on this day, General Walker on the Confederate, and General McPherson on the Federal, side. On the 27th of July, Sherman began his attempt to flank Atlanta on the left. On the 28th, General Hood assaulted the Federal right, but was repulsed. On the 5th of August, General Schofield's corps of the Federal army made an assault on the portion of the Confederate line held by General Bate, at Utoy Creek, and met with a bloody repulse. The losses in this series of battles were about ten thousand on the Confederate and seven thousand on the Federal side.

23. While these battles were going on at Atlanta, General Sherman sent out two cavalry columns, one five thousand strong, under General Stoneman, and the other four thousand, under General McCook, with orders to meet at Lovejoy Station, on the Macon Road, and destroy the Confederate communications. This expedition proved a failure, for McCook was attacked at *Newnan* and defeated, while Stoneman, who went as far as *Macon*, was defeated there by General Cobb, and pursued so closely by General Iverson that he and one thousand of his men were captured and the rest of his force dispersed. This expedition cost Sherman three thousand of his best cavalry. Soon after, General Wheeler made a raid on the Federal communications, doing much damage.

the 27th? What of Hood's assault on the 28th? What happened on the 5th of August at Utoy Creek? What were the losses around Atlanta?

23. While these battles were going on at Atlanta, what did General Sherman do? What of this expedition? What can you say of McCook's force? What of Stoneman? What did this expedition cost Sherman? What did Wheeler do?



RICHMOND.

24. We left the armies in Virginia facing each other in their works before Petersburg. General Lee feeling strong enough to hold his lines at Petersburg and Richmond, sent Early and Breckinridge through the valley to threaten Washington and Baltimore. Early moved rapidly down the valley with about thirteen thousand men, entered Maryland, and caused great alarm for the safety of Washington and Baltimore. At *Monocacy Bridge*, on the 9th of July, he encountered the foe, and Gordon's division routed the Federals under General Lew Wallace. Early then advanced rapidly upon Washington, hoping to reach the city and capture it before the garrison could be reinforced. But Washington was saved by the arrival of two full corps from Grant's army, whereupon Early retired and camped near Winchester. Supposing that Early was returning to Richmond, Grant ordered the two corps that had saved Washington back to Petersburg, intending to strike Lee a blow before the arrival of Early. But instead of retiring

24. How did we leave the armies in Virginia? What did Lee send Early and Breckinridge to do? What did Early do? What happened at Monocacy Bridge? What did Early then do? How was Washington City saved? Why did Grant now order these two corps back to Petersburg? What did Early

to Richmond Early advanced to *Martinsburg*, where he defeated General Crook (on the 24th of July), and drove his force across the Potomac, with the loss of twelve hundred men, including General Mulligan, who was killed. Early then sent a cavalry expedition under General McCausland, which routed a small Federal force at Carlisle, in Pennsylvania, and having captured the town of *Chambersburg* in that State, burned the greater part of it (July 30). The Confederates justified the burning of this town on the plea of retaliation for the partial burning of Lexington, and for the many depredations of Hunter and other Federal officers in the valley. These movements of Early excited the greatest alarm in Pennsylvania, and the two corps that had started for Petersburg were sent back to keep Early in check. On the same day that Chambersburg was burned (July 30) Grant suffered a bloody defeat at Petersburg, in an affair known as the *Mine Explosion*. A fort on the Confederate front was *mined* and blown up, but when the Federal troops moved forward to the assault they were met by such a withering fire that they were driven back in utter confusion, and in a few minutes suffered a loss of more than four thousand men. The Confederate loss in this affair was about three hundred men.

25. Between the 13th and 20th of August, General Hancock was defeated in an attack on the Confederate lines north of the James. On the 19th and 20th of August there was desperate fighting on the *Weldon Railroad* between Mahone and the Federals under Warren, but neither side gained any decisive advantage. On this occasion the Confederates captured twenty-five hundred prisoners, including General Hays. On the 25th of

do at Martinsburg? What did McCausland's cavalry expedition do? How did the Confederates justify the burning of this town? What did these movements of Early cause? Describe the affair of the Mine Explosion at Petersburg.

25. What happened north of the James between the 13th and 20th of August? What happened on the 19th and 20th of August on the Weldon Road? What at Ream's Station on the 25th of August?

August, General A. P. Hill defeated Hancock's corps of Grant's army at *Ream's Station*, inflicting on them very heavy loss, and capturing many prisoners, nine cannon, and three thousand small arms.

26. It was now near the end of summer, and no decisive advantage had been gained by the Federal arms either in Virginia or Georgia. Many in the Northern States thought that the war was a failure, and that success was impossible. But the fortune of war soon after began to change. The Confederates had fought gallantly, but their losses were heavy, and they had no way of repairing them. They had brought out their last man, and had none to take the place of those killed. On the other hand, the Federal losses were constantly repaired by fresh troops, and their armies were growing stronger every day.

27. On the 25th of August, while the Confederates in Virginia were winning the battle of *Ream's Station*, General Sherman, in Georgia, began a movement which resulted in placing his army near *Jonesborough* along the *Macon Road*, in rear of Atlanta. When Hood detected this movement, he ordered Hardee with his own corps and that of S. D. Lee to assault the Federal position (August 31). Failing to dislodge the Federals, he returned to Atlanta with the corps of S. D. Lee and prepared to evacuate that city. Next day (September 1) Hardee's corps was attacked at *Jonesborough* by six corps of the Federal army, and, although his line was pierced and some of his best troops, with eight of his cannon, captured, yet by hard fighting he succeeded in holding his ground until night closed the struggle. That night he withdrew to *Lovejoy Station*, where, on the morning of the next day, he was joined by the main army under Hood, who had abandoned

26. What did many at the North think at this time? What change soon came about? What can you say about Confederate losses? What about Federal losses?

27. On the very day that the Confederates in Virginia were winning the battle of *Ream's Station*, what did General Sherman do? What did Hood order Hardee to do on the 31st of August? What happened on the 1st of Sep-

Atlanta to the Federals on the night of September 1. Sherman advanced to *Lovejoy Station*, and a portion of his army made an assault on the Confederate lines, which was easily repulsed, whereupon Sherman withdrew to Atlanta, where his troops could enjoy a rest after their long and hard-fought campaign. The *capture of Atlanta* was the first decisive victory won by the Federal armies in 1864. The losses in the battles around Jonesborough and Lovejoy were about thirty-five hundred on the Confederate side and two thousand on the Federal.

28. *The next Federal successes were in the Valley of Virginia.* General Sheridan was put in command of all the Federal troops in this region, amounting to thirty thousand infantry and ten thousand cavalry. The Confederate army in the valley numbered thirteen thousand, of which only two thousand were cavalry, and was commanded by General Jubal A. Early. On the 19th of September, Sheridan attacked the Confederates near *Winchester*, and though bravely resisted, at last succeeded in driving them from the field with heavy loss. On the 22d of September, Sheridan routed Early at *Fisher's Hill*, and compelled him to abandon the valley. General Sheridan then marched through the valley, spreading ruin and desolation over that beautiful region. About the middle of October, after Early's losses had been repaired by reinforcements from Lee's army, he again advanced down the valley, and camped near Fisher's Hill. He now formed the bold plan of surprising Sheridan's army in their camp at *Cedar Creek*. Just at dawn on the 19th of October,

tember? What did Hardee do that night? What happened at Lovejoy? What can you say of the capture of Atlanta? What were the losses in the battles around Jonesborough and Lovejoy?

28. Where were the next Federal successes? How large a force did Sheridan command? How large was the Confederate army in the valley? What happened on the 19th of September? What at Fisher's Hill on the 22d of September? What did Sheridan then do? How had Early's losses been repaired by the middle of October? What bold plan did Early form? Describe the assault on Sheridan's camp. Did the Confederates improve their victory?

General Gordon, leading three divisions of Early's army, fell upon the Federal left and rear, while General Kershaw led two divisions



GENERAL GORDON.

against their right and front, completely routing two corps of the Federals and forcing the third one to abandon the field, capturing fifteen hundred prisoners and twenty-four cannon. The victory, however, was not improved, for instead of pressing the pursuit, the Confederates halted and began to plunder the captured camp. When the Federals found that they were no longer pursued, they rallied and reformed their lines.

They were greatly encouraged by the arrival of Sheridan at ten o'clock, who had been absent at Winchester when the battle commenced. Sheridan resolved to retake his captured camp. He advanced for this purpose at three o'clock in the afternoon, attacked and routed the Confederates, who lost fifteen hundred prisoners and twenty-three cannon, beside the twenty-four which they had captured in the morning. In this campaign of one month Sheridan had lost seventeen thousand men, but he had killed, wounded, and captured more than half of Early's army and forty-four cannon. Towards the close of the fall the greater part of the remains of Early's army was placed under the command of General Gordon and ordered back to Petersburg.

29. In the latter part of October Grant made two attempts to push forward his lines, one on the north and the other on the south side of the James, but was foiled at both points.

When the Federals found they were not pursued, what did they do? How were they encouraged? What did Sheridan resolve to do? Describe his attack on the Confederates. What had Sheridan lost in his campaign of one month? What had he accomplished? What was done with the remnant of Early's army?

29. What is said of Grant's attempts to push forward his lines

30. In the months of September and October *General Price advanced with a small Confederate army into Missouri* and penetrated far into the interior of the State, but on the 23d of October he was attacked by General Rosecrans on the Big Blue, defeated with great loss and driven back into Arkansas.

31. In September, Hood projected a *campaign into Tennessee*, with the purpose of forcing General Sherman to retire from Georgia. On the 28th of September, Hood began to move towards the Chattahoochee. After crossing this river he sent General French to capture *Allatoona*, October 5, where there had been accumulated a vast amount of supplies for Sherman's army. This post was defended by General Corse with a small force, but the position was a strong one, and the Confederates were repulsed with considerable loss. Hood then moved northward to Resaca, destroying the railroad for twenty miles; then captured Dalton, with its garrison, and destroyed the railroad to Tunnel Hill. Sherman left one corps to hold Atlanta while with the rest of his army he marched northward to bring Hood to battle. Failing in this, he sent General Thomas into Tennessee with a force sufficient to oppose Hood, while he himself returned to Atlanta. He then destroyed the railroad from Dalton to Atlanta, burned the foundries and mills in Rome and other places, and destroyed the city of Atlanta. Then, on the 13th of November, he set out to march through Georgia. On the 19th of the same month, Hood entered Tennessee with about forty-five thousand men. At *Franklin*, on the 1st of December, he attacked the Federals under General Schofield, numbering twenty thousand men. After a desperate battle Hood succeeded in entering the Federal works,

30. Give an account of Price's Missouri campaign.

31. What did Hood do in September? When did Hood begin to move towards the Chattahoochee? Tell what is said about the battle of Allatoona. What did Hood do after this? What did Sherman do? Failing to bring Hood to battle, what did he do? After returning to Atlanta, what did he do? When did he set out on his march through Georgia? When did Hood enter Tennessee? Give an account of the battle of Franklin. Where did the decisive

and Schofield retreated towards Nashville. Hood's loss in this affair was at least five thousand men, that of Schofield twenty-three hundred, of whom eleven hundred were prisoners. The decisive battle of the campaign occurred at *Nashville* on the 15th and 16th of December, when General George H. Thomas, with at least sixty thousand men, attacked Hood's army, which, with its cavalry absent, numbered not more than thirty thousand. Hood's army was routed, with a loss of more than twelve thousand men and fifty-three cannon, besides a vast amount of small arms and military supplies of all kinds. The pursuit of the scattered remnants was checked by the swollen rivers and the undaunted courage of the rear guard, consisting of four thousand infantry under General Walthall and a part of Forrest's cavalry, which succeeded in joining Hood at Columbia. Hood at length recrossed the Tennessee, having lost more than half his army.

32. Meanwhile, Sherman was on his march through Georgia with an army of sixty-five thousand men, and, as there was no army in the State to oppose him, he appeared near Savannah on the 10th of December. On the 13th, Hazen's division, nearly four thousand strong, captured *Fort McAllister*, which was stoutly defended by Major George W. Anderson, with one hundred and fifty men. On the 20th, Sherman occupied Savannah, which had been abandoned by the Confederates.

33. While Sherman was on his march through Georgia the Federal General Hatch was defeated at *Honey Hill*, on the line of the Charleston and Savannah Railroad, with the loss of seven hundred and fifty men.

battle of the campaign occur? Give an account of the battle of Nashville. How was the pursuit checked? When Hood recrossed the Tennessee, what had he lost?

32. Meanwhile, what was Sherman doing? When did he appear near Savannah? Relate the storming of Fort McAllister. When did Sherman occupy Savannah?

33. What happened at Honey Hill, South Carolina, while Sherman was on his march?

34. We will now see what had been done on the coast. In July, 1864, an expedition, consisting of a powerful fleet of twenty-eight ships under Admiral Farragut, and a land force under General Granger, was sent against *Mobile*. During the month of August this powerful force assailed the forts and four vessels which defended Mobile Bay, captured the Confederate iron-clad Tennessee on the 5th (on which day Fort Powell was blown up by its garrison), took possession of Fort Gaines on the 7th, and on the 23d captured Fort Morgan, with its garrison of fourteen hundred men. In all these forts one hundred and four cannon were taken. But Mobile still held out, though the Confederates could no longer use it as a port. *An expedition against Fort Fisher*, at the entrance of Cape Fear River, consisting of a land force under General Butler, and a fleet of seventy vessels under Commodore Porter, was repulsed on the 24th and 25th of December.

35. Meanwhile, a rigid blockade was kept up, and the Confederate cruisers on the ocean had met with disaster. After inflicting great damage on the commerce of the Northern States, the Alabama was sunk by the Kearsarge on the 19th of June, and the Florida was captured by the Wachusett on the 7th of October.

36. In the fall of 1864, Mr. Lincoln was re-elected President and Andrew Johnson, of Tennessee, Vice-President. Their opponents were General George B. McClellan, of the Federal army, for President, and Hon. George H. Pendleton, of Ohio, for Vice-President.

37. *Nevada*, the thirty-sixth State, was admitted to the Union

34. Turning now to the coast, what was sent against Mobile in July? Relate the operations of the fleet during the month of August. Was Mobile captured at this time? What was the result of an expedition against Fort Fisher towards the last of December?

35. What is said of the blockade? What became of the Confederate steamers Alabama and Florida?

36. What happened in the fall of 1864? Who were their opponents?

37. When was Nevada admitted to the Union? What more can you say of Nevada?



SEAL OF NEVADA.

on the 31st of October, 1864. The name is Spanish, and signifies "Snowy Range." It was carved out of the territory acquired by the Mexican War.

CHAPTER VI.

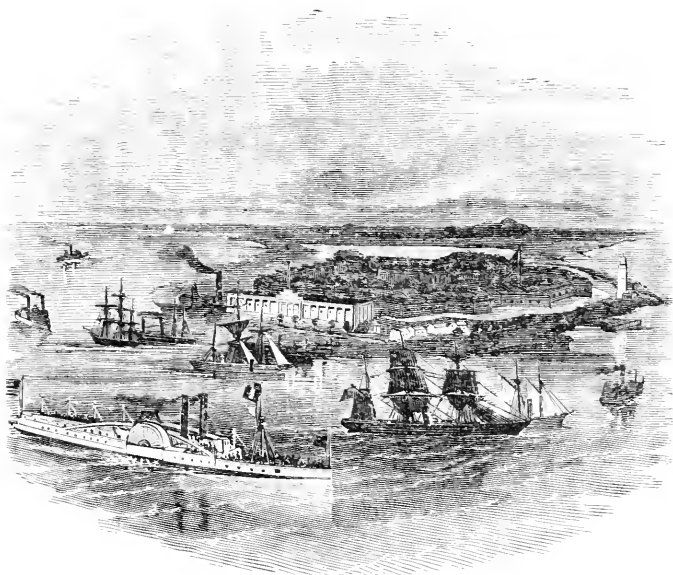
END OF THE WAR.—CLOSE OF LINCOLN'S ADMINISTRATION.

1. AT the beginning of 1865 the Federal forces numbered more than one million men, and the Confederates barely one hundred and fifty thousand.

2. A *second attack on Fort Fisher* by the fleet under Commodore Porter, and a land force under General Terry, was successful, taking the fort, with the garrison of two thousand men and one hundred and sixty-nine heavy guns (January 15).

3. Early in February, Alexander H. Stephens, the Confederate Vice-President, John A. Campbell, and R. M. T. Hunter went to Fortress Monroe as commissioners to meet President Lincoln and make an attempt to end the war by negotiation. But nothing came of the *Peace Commission*, and the war went on.

-
1. What was the size of the armies at the beginning of 1865?
 2. What was the result of a second attack on Fort Fisher?
 3. Give an account of the Peace Commission.



FORTRESS MONROE.

4. On the 6th of February, Grant received a bloody check at *Hatcher's Run* while attempting to turn Lee's right.

5. In the first part of the same month Sherman commenced his *march through the Carolinas* with sixty thousand men. On his march through South Carolina he sent a cavalry force under Kilpatrick against Augusta, but Kilpatrick was defeated at *Aiken*, on the 11th of February, by General Wheeler, and Augusta was saved. On the 17th of February, Sherman occupied *Columbia*. The small force under Beauregard was obliged to retreat. During the stay of the Federals in Columbia the greater part of the

4. What happened at Hatcher's Run on the 6th of February?

5. When did Sherman begin his march through the Carolinas? What did he send against Augusta? With what result? What happened at Columbia during the stay of the Federals? What did Hardee do when Columbia was

city was burned to the ground. In consequence of the capture of Columbia, General Hardee evacuated *Charleston* and marched to join his forces to those of General Beauregard. In this last extremity General Joseph E. Johnston was ordered to take command of the forces in front of Sherman and make one more effort to restore the falling fortunes of the Confederacy. The remnant of the Army of Tennessee was ordered from the West to join Johnston in Carolina. The forces of General Bragg, which had been withdrawn from Wilmington, were also ordered to report to him. On the 8th of March, General Bragg gained a victory at *Kinston*, North Carolina. On the 16th, General Hardee fought a bloody but indecisive battle against a part of Sherman's army at *Averysboro'*, and on the 19th and 20th the whole Confederate force of fifteen thousand men gained a partial success at *Bentonville*, but they were unable to check the advance of Sherman's large army.

6. On the 25th of March, General John B. Gordon, commanding a corps of Lee's army, attacked Grant's lines and captured *Fort Steadman*, with many prisoners and guns, but not being properly supported, was forced to retreat with heavy loss. Lee, with only thirty-three thousand muskets to man his trenches extending a distance of thirty-five miles, was closely pressed by a vast host of more than one hundred and fifty thousand men. On the 31st of March, Sheridan, who had come down from the valley and joined Grant, was defeated at *Dimwiddie Court-House*, but on the next day, with an overwhelming force, he defeated Pickett's division at *Five Forks*. On the 2d of April, Grant succeeded in making a breach in Lee's lines at Petersburg, and forcing the

captured? Who was now called to command the Confederate army in the Carolinas? What was the remnant of the Army of Tennessee ordered to do? What of Bragg's forces? Where did Bragg gain a victory? What happened at Averysboro'? What at Bentonville?

6. What happened near Petersburg on the 25th of March? What was now Lee's condition? What happened at Dinwiddie Court-House on the 31st of March? What at Five Forks the next day? What did Grant do on the 2d of April? Describe the defence of Fort Gregg. What did Lee do on the

Confederates into their inner lines close to the city. On this occasion, when the Confederates were driven from their outer line, the obstinate defence of *Fort Gregg* enabled them to rally in their last line of works. This fort was defended by two hundred and fifty men, who repulsed three assaults made by Gibbon's division, and when at last the fort was captured all but thirty of its brave defenders were killed or wounded, while five hundred Federals lay stretched upon the ground. That night, the 2d of April, Lee, with only twenty-five thousand men of all arms, began his retreat from the lines of Petersburg and Richmond, which he had held so long and skilfully. On the 3d the Federals occupied Richmond, which they found in flames, and it was with difficulty that the fire was subdued.

7. Grant pressed his pursuit after Lee, and on the 9th of April succeeded in surrounding the gallant remnant of the Army of Northern Virginia at *Appomattox Court-House*. Of that proud army, which had dealt the Union forces so many staggering blows, but a mere wreck remained. Their sufferings had been so great that only eight thousand infantry were able to stand up in line of battle, and Lee's whole effective force was less than ten thousand men, and these were shut in on every side by the mighty hosts of Grant and Sheridan. Lee saw that nothing now remained but surrender. The terms given him were liberal and generous, and reflected great honor upon Grant, the victorious general. After stacking their arms and colors, the officers and men, having given an obligation not to bear arms until exchanged, were permitted to return to their homes safe from any molestation by the Federal authorities, the officers being allowed to retain their side-arms, and officers and men to retain such horses as were their own private property.

night of the 2d of April? When did the Federals occupy Richmond? In what condition did they find the city?

7. Where did Grant succeed in surrounding Lee's army? What was the condition of the Confederates? What did Lee see? What is said of the terms accorded by Grant? What were the terms?

8. A further prosecution of the war was now hopeless. President Davis, his Cabinet, and other officials left Richmond on the same night that Lee began his retreat. After an interview with Generals Johnston and Beauregard at Greensboro', North Carolina, Davis authorized General Johnston to make whatever terms he could for the termination of the war. On the 18th of April, Johnston and Sherman met at the house of a Mr. Bennett, near *Durham's Station*, in North Carolina. The terms then agreed upon were, that "the troops were to march to their respective States and deposit their arms in the State arsenals, each officer and man pledging himself to cease from acts of war and abide the action of State and Federal authority; the President of the United States to recognize the several State governments on their officers and Legislatures taking the oath of allegiance to the United States, and all persons to be secured in person, property, and political rights." This agreement was designed to immediately restore the Union and end the war. Sherman thought that these terms agreed with the views expressed by Mr. Lincoln.

9. But *Lincoln had been assassinated* at Ford's Theatre, in Washington City, on the night of the 14th of April. This terrible crime was perpetrated by John Wilkes Booth, an actor of considerable note. Booth was pursued for several days, finally overtaken, and shot.

10. Andrew Johnson now became President, and he refused to ratify the treaty between Sherman and Johnston.

11. On the 26th of April, Sherman and Johnston had a second meeting, when *terms of capitulation* were agreed upon simi-

8. When did President Davis and his Cabinet leave Richmond? What did Davis authorize Johnston to do? Where did Johnston and Sherman meet? What were the terms agreed upon? What was this agreement designed to do? What did Sherman think?

9. What terrible thing had happened on the 14th of April? By whom was this crime perpetrated? What became of Booth?

10. Who now became President? What did he do?

11. When were terms of capitulation agreed upon between Sherman and Johnston? What was each separate body of troops permitted to do?

lar to those granted to Lee. Each brigade or separate body of troops was permitted to retain a number of arms equal to one-seventh of its effective strength, which, when the troops reached the capitals of their respective States, were to be disposed of as the general commanding the department might direct.

12. Between the surrender of Lee and the final capitulation of Johnston, *Mobile* yielded to a combined attack by land and water, and General Wilson, with a cavalry expedition from Nashville, captured the cities of Selma, Montgomery, Columbus, and Macon. When Wilson heard the news of Johnston's capitulation, he marched his command back to Tennessee.

13. The surrender of Johnston was followed by that of *all the Confederate armies*. The last surrender was that of General E. Kirby Smith, in Texas, on the 26th of May.

14. The last actual collision of hostile forces occurred at *Palmetto Rancho*, on the Rio Grande, in Texas, on the 13th of May. In this affair a Federal cavalry force under Colonel Barrett was defeated by some Confederate cavalry led by General J. E. Slaughter and chased for fifteen miles.

15. Some of the civil officers of the Confederacy left the country. Mr. Davis, the President, was captured and imprisoned in Fortress Monroe; and Mr. Stephens, the Vice-President, was imprisoned in Fort Warren. Mr. Stephens was soon released, but Mr. Davis remained a prisoner for nearly two years, and was then released without a trial.

12. Mention events that occurred between the surrender of Lee and the capitulation of Johnston.

13. By what was the surrender of Johnston followed?

14. What can you say of the last hostile collision?

15. What did some of the civil officers of the Confederacy do? What of Mr. Davis and Mr. Stephens?

CHAPTER VII.

ADMINISTRATION OF ANDREW JOHNSON.

1. ANDREW JOHNSON, the seventeenth President of the United States, was inaugurated on the day of Mr. Lincoln's death, April 15, 1865. As we have already seen, the war of secession came to an end early in Johnson's administration. On the 29th of May, President Johnson issued an *amnesty proclamation* to all who had been engaged in the late war on the Southern side, except certain specified classes.

2. The question of greatest importance was the *reconstruction* of the Southern States, or the settlement of the terms on which the seceded States should be restored to their places in the Union. The President appointed "provisional governors" for these States, who were instructed to call *conventions* of the people in their several States for the purpose of re-establishing relations between them and the Federal government. These conventions were required to annul their ordinances of secession, renew their obligations to the Federal Union, make new State constitutions, and adopt the *thirteenth amendment* to the Constitution of the United States. This amendment provided for the prohibition of slavery forever in all the States of the Union.

3. The seceded States complied with the required terms, and elected Senators and Representatives to Congress. But when Congress assembled in December, the Radicals, or most violent

1. When was Andrew Johnson inaugurated? What did he do on the 29th of May?

2. What was the question of greatest importance? What did the President appoint? What were these provisional governors instructed to do? What were the conventions required to do?

3. Did the seceded States comply with these terms? What happened when Congress met?

wing of the Republican party, were in the ascendancy, and they refused to admit the seceded States to their former rights in the Union until they should ratify the *fourteenth amendment*, which made citizens of the negroes, and at the same time fixed political disabilities on every man in the Southern States who had ever before the war held any office of honor or trust, either State or Federal, and had afterwards sided with the Southern cause.

4. The opposition of the President to these measures of Congress led to a violent quarrel between him and the Congress.

5. When the seceded States refused to ratify the fourteenth amendment, the Republican majority in Congress declared that the States of Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, Georgia, Florida, Alabama, Mississippi, Arkansas, Louisiana, and Texas were in a state of rebellion, and divided them into five military districts, each governed by an officer of the Federal army. Tennessee was not included among these States, because that State had been reconstructed just before the close of the war.

6. When the President vetoed these measures of Congress they were passed over his veto. This was nearly two years after the close of the war.

7. President Johnson had a quarrel with Mr. Stanton, the Secretary of War, who continued to hold his office in defiance of the order of the President dismissing him therefrom. This led to the impeachment of the President by the House on the 22d of February, 1868. The President was tried by the Senate, Chief-Justice Chase presiding, and was acquitted on the 26th of May by one vote.

8. Under the reconstruction measures of Congress new conven-

4. To what did the opposition of the President lead?

5. When the seceded States refused to ratify the fourteenth amendment, what did Congress declare? Why was not Tennessee included among these States?

6. When the President vetoed these measures, what happened?

7. To what did a quarrel between the President and Mr. Stanton lead? What was the result of the impeachment trial?

8. What was done under the reconstruction measures of Congress? What

tions were called in the ten Southern States. The worst feature of these measures was the disfranchisement of thousands of the white race in each of the ten Southern States, and the conferring of unlimited suffrage on the negro race. The State governments established under these measures adopted the fourteenth amendment, and in this way was obtained the consent of the requisite number of States to make that amendment a part of the Federal Constitution. Arkansas, Alabama, Florida, Georgia, Louisiana, North and South Carolina were admitted to representation June 24, 1868. Georgia's representatives were soon after excluded until that State should ratify the fifteenth amendment.

9. In the fall of 1868, Ulysses S. Grant, of Illinois, and Schuyler Colfax, of Indiana, the candidates of the Republicans for President and Vice-President, were triumphantly elected over their Democratic competitors, Horatio Seymour, of New York, and General Francis P. Blair, of Missouri.

10. Other important events of Johnson's administration were the admission of Nebraska as a State, the purchase of Alaska from Russia, and a treaty with Denmark for the purchase of the islands of St. Thomas and St. John.

11. Nebraska, the thirty-seventh State, was admitted to the Union on the 1st of March, 1867. The name signifies "Water Valley." Nebraska was the eighth State carved out of the Louisiana purchase.

12. Alaska, or Russian America, was purchased during the summer of the same year.

was the worst feature of these measures? What did the State governments thus established do? What States were admitted to representation June 24, 1868? What of Georgia's representatives soon after?

9. What was the result of the Presidential election of 1868?

10. What other important events of Johnson's administration are mentioned?

11. When was Nebraska admitted to the Union? What else is said of Nebraska?

12. When was Alaska purchased?



SEAL OF NEBRASKA.

13. The treaty with Denmark for the purchase of the islands of St. Thomas and St. John was rejected by the Senate.

14. While the United States were engaged in the civil war Napoleon III., Emperor of France, seized the opportunity to secure a foothold in America. By the aid of French troops he made Maximilian, Archduke of Austria, Emperor of Mexico. When the war between the States was ended the United States government demanded the recall of the French troops. Maximilian being deprived of foreign aid was defeated by the Mexican liberals, and shot on the 19th of June, 1867.

15. The Atlantic cable, which was laid in 1858, soon became useless, and everybody except Mr. Field, the originator of the project, thought it a failure. Mr. Field persevered in his efforts, and in 1866 his perseverance was rewarded with triumphant success.

16. On the 1st of June, 1868, ex-President Buchanan died at his home in Lancaster County, Pennsylvania.

17. *On Christmas-day, 1868, President Johnson issued a proclamation extending unconditional pardon to all who had sided with the Confederacy during the war of secession.*

13. What is said of the treaty with Denmark?

14. What did Napoleon III. do while the United States were engaged in the civil war? At the end of the war what did the United States government do?

15. What of the Atlantic cable of 1858? When was it made a success?

16. What distinguished man died on the 1st of June, 1868?

17. What did President Johnson do on Christmas-day of 1868?

CHAPTER VIII.

ADMINISTRATION OF ULYSSES S. GRANT.

1. ULYSSES S. GRANT, the eighteenth President of the United States, was inaugurated on the 4th of March, 1869.



ULYSSES S. GRANT.

2. The beginning of his administration was signalized by the completion of the Pacific Railroad, connecting St. Louis, in Missouri, with San Francisco, in California.

3. Reconstruction was completed in 1870 by the full restoration of all the seceded States to the Union. The last thus fully restored was Georgia. The Southern people immediately after the war went to work with great energy to restore

their wasted fortunes. Those States in which the white population largely predominated were the first to recover their prosperity, because their State governments remained in the hands of the same people who had ruled them before the war. This was the case with Virginia, Tennessee, Georgia, Texas, and North Carolina.

4. One of the most important measures of Grant's administration was the adoption of the fifteenth amendment to the Con-

-
1. When was President Grant inaugurated?
 2. By what was the beginning of his administration signalized?
 3. When was reconstruction completed? Which was the last State fully restored? Which States first recovered their prosperity? Why?
 4. What was one of the most important measures of Grant's administration? How was it carried through?

stitution, declaring that the right of citizens of the United States to vote shall not be denied or abridged by the United States, or any State, on account of race, color, or previous condition of servitude. This amendment was carried through in the same manner as the fourteenth.

5. On the 12th of October, 1870, occurred the death of General Robert E. Lee, the illustrious commander of the Southern Army of Virginia during the great Secession War. This event spread great sorrow throughout the South. Appropriate honors were paid to his memory in every part of the country, even in many places in the Northern States. At the time of his death he resided at Lexington, Virginia, and was President of the Washington College, which has since been named the Washington-Lee University. Lee was one of the noblest men of this or any age, and is by many considered the ablest general that America ever produced.

6. *The Alabama Claims*, which grew out of the injuries to the commerce of the United States inflicted during the war by Confederate armed vessels that had been fitted out in British waters, at one time threatened war with Great Britain, but this question was settled by arbitration in 1871, as was also a dispute about the Northwest boundary. The Geneva tribunal, to which the Alabama claims were referred, adjudged that fifteen million five hundred thousand dollars should be paid to the United States. The Emperor of Germany acted as arbitrator on the Northwest boundary question, and it was settled agreeably to the views of the United States.

7. In 1871 occurred the great *Chicago fire*, by which a large portion of that great city was destroyed. A similar disaster befell Boston in 1872.

5. What great man died on the 12th of October, 1870? Tell what is said of him. Where was Lee living at this time? What else is said of him?

6. What were the Alabama Claims? How were they settled? Who acted as arbitrator on the Northwestern boundary question?

7. What great fire occurred in 1871? What one in 1872?

8. In the fall of 1872 there was another Presidential election. General Grant was nominated for a second term by the Republican party, and Henry Wilson, of Massachusetts, was their candidate for Vice-President. Horace Greeley, a prominent New York journalist, was the nominee of the combined Democrats and Liberal Republicans for President, and B. Gratz Brown, of Missouri, for Vice-President. Grant and Wilson were overwhelmingly elected. Soon after the election Mr. Greeley died.

9. *The Credit Mobilier*, a stock-company which had a great deal to do with the Pacific Railroad, was the subject of investigation by Congress during the session of 1872-73. The House of Representatives censured two of its members for corrupt practices, and one of the United States Senators barely escaped expulsion.

10. Early in Grant's second term broke out the *Modoc War*. The Modocs, who lived near the southern boundary of Oregon, refused to stand by an old treaty which they had made consenting to surrender their lands and go on a reservation. Fleeing to inaccessible "lava-beds," they defied the government. Peace commissioners sent to treat with them in April, 1873, were treacherously fired upon by the Indians, and two of them slain. One of the slain was General Canby. An active campaign was carried on against the Modocs until the whole of the hostile band were captured. The assassins of the commissioners were put to death, and the rest removed to the reservation.

11. In 1873 two *returning boards in Louisiana*, each claiming to be the legal one, reported two different governors as elected,—one Republican, the other a Democrat. The Republican governor, Kellogg, was recognized by the administration as the right-

8. Who were the candidates of the respective parties in the Presidential election of 1872? What was the result? Who died soon after?

9. Tell what is said of the *Credit Mobilier*.

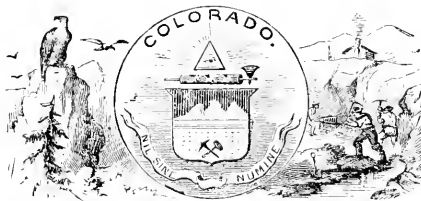
10. Give an account of the *Modoc War*.

11. What happened in Louisiana in 1873? What in 1874? What occurred the following January? How was the question settled?

ful incumbent, but the Democratic party of Louisiana never regarded him as anything else than a usurper. In the fall of 1874 there was an uprising of the citizens at New Orleans, twenty-six persons lost their lives in a street encounter, and Governor Kellogg had to flee for safety to the custom-house, under the protection of the Federal flag. The President again interposed in Kellogg's favor. The following January another outbreak occurred, on account of efforts of the returning board to deprive Democratic members of the seats to which they were entitled in the Legislature. A committee of the House of Representatives, in which the Republicans had a majority, went to New Orleans and settled the question in favor of the Democratic members.

12. *The Congressional elections* of 1874 resulted in a great Democratic triumph, which was hailed with intense joy throughout the South.

13. Great *financial distress* came upon the country in 1873, and prostrated the industries of the people for several succeeding years.



SEAL OF COLORADO.

14. Colorado, the thirty-eighth State, was admitted to the Union March 3, 1875. A large part of this State was embraced in the Louisiana purchase, and a considerable part in the territory acquired from Mexico.

12. How did the Congressional elections of 1874 result?

13. What is said of financial distress?

14. When was Colorado admitted? What else is said of Colorado?

15. The deaths of several prominent men occurred during Grant's administration, viz.: William H. Seward, Secretary of State during Lincoln's administration (1872); Professor Morse, the inventor of the magnetic telegraph, in the same year; Chief-Justice Chase, in 1873; Charles Sumner, United States Senator from Massachusetts, in 1874; and Vice-President Wilson, in 1875.



MEMORIAL HALL, CENTENNIAL EXHIBITION, PHILADELPHIA.

16. *The Centennial of American Independence*, occurring on the 4th of July, 1876, was appropriately celebrated in every part of the Union, especially in Philadelphia. In the great *Centennial buildings* at Philadelphia was held the greatest world's fair ever

15. What prominent men died during Grant's administration?

16. What is said of the Centennial of American Independence? What was held in Philadelphia? Mention one notable feature of the celebration in Philadelphia.

seen. One notable feature of the celebration in that city was the parade of the Centennial Legion, consisting of military organizations from each of the original thirteen States, in which the soldiers of the North and the South, who had fought each other so valiantly, now marched side by side under distinguished Union and Confederate officers.

17. In 1876 a war broke out with the *Siou*x (soo) Indians in Dakota, Montana, and Wyoming. In June, General Custer with part of his regiment came upon the hostile camp, numbering twenty-five hundred warriors, under "Sitting Bull," near the Little Big Horn River, and, without waiting for support, charged upon them. The result was a terrible defeat, Custer himself being slain after performing prodigies of valor. The United States soldiers, reinforced afterwards, pursued the Indians and compelled many of them to surrender, though Sitting Bull with many of his warriors escaped into the British provinces.

18. *The Presidential election* of 1876 was one of the most exciting on record. The candidates of the Republicans were Rutherford B. Hayes, of Ohio, for President, and William A. Wheeler, of New York, for Vice-President. The Democrats nominated Samuel J. Tilden, of New York, for President, and Thomas A. Hendricks, of Indiana, for Vice-President. The Democratic candidates received a large majority of the popular vote, and but for the action of the returning boards of Louisiana and Florida would have received the majority of the electoral vote. The returning boards of those two States, being entirely in the hands of the Republicans, on the plea of intimidation threw out enough Democratic ballots to give the electoral vote of their States to Hayes and Wheeler. The Democrats protested against this action, and

17. What war broke out in 1876? Give an account of Custer's battle. What did the United States soldiers afterwards do?

18. What of the Presidential election of 1876? Who were the candidates of the Republicans? Who of the Democrats? What did the Democratic candidates receive? What prevented their receiving the majority of the electoral vote? Relate what happened in Louisiana and Florida. What hap-

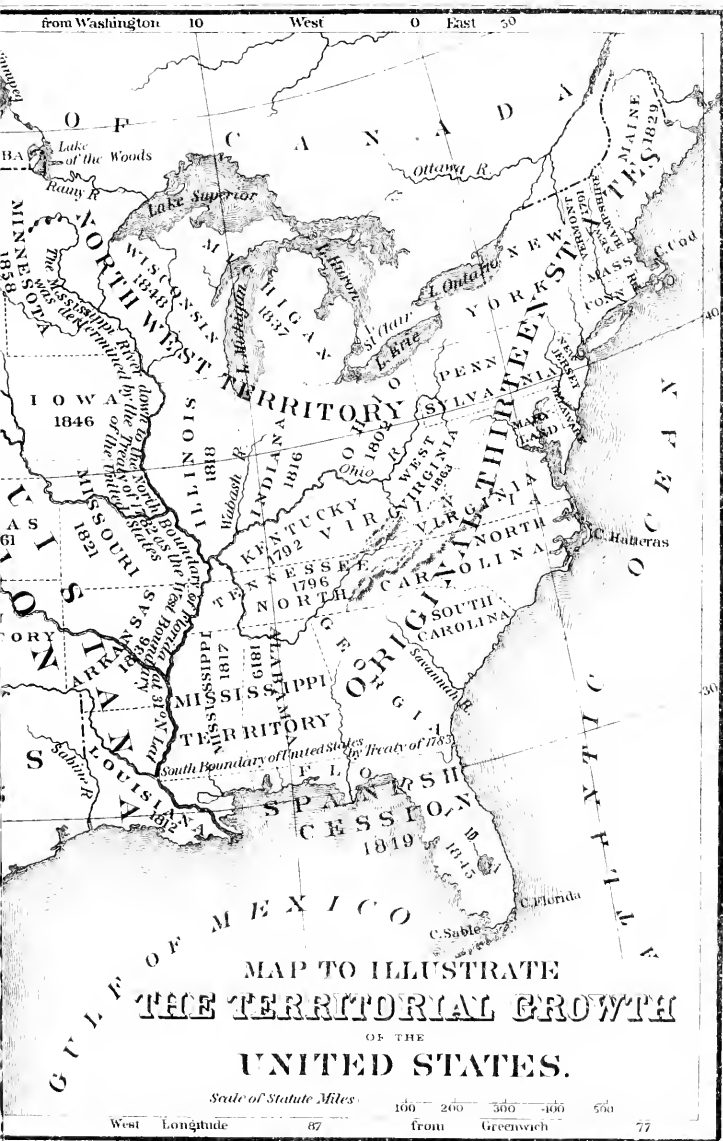
claimed that the electoral votes of those States should be counted for Tilden and Hendricks. In Oregon the Democratic authorities, by a mere technicality, gave one of the electoral votes of that State to their party candidates, although the State had gone Republican. Both parties also claimed South Carolina. The real issue of the contest hung on the votes of Louisiana and Florida. Congress to settle the dispute passed an act that all disputed electoral certificates should be referred to an *Electoral Commission*, consisting of five Senators, five Representatives, and five Judges of the Supreme Court. On this commission the Republicans had a majority, and on the plea that they could not go behind the official returns from a State they declared that Hayes and Wheeler were elected by one majority of the electoral vote. The Democrats, though considering the decision unjust, acquiesced in it, and the Presidential contest was ended.

19. In Louisiana the returning board again decided in favor of the Republican candidate for governor, although the Democratic candidate had been clearly elected. In South Carolina a similar state of affairs existed. United States troops were stationed at the capitals of these States, under the plea of keeping the peace. Such was the condition of affairs at the close of Grant's administration.

opened in Oregon? What of South Carolina? On what did the real issue of the contest hang? What did Congress do to settle the question? What was the decision of the Electoral Commission? What of the Democrats?

19. What happened in Louisiana? What in South Carolina? On what plea were United States troops stationed at the capitals of these States?





CHAPTER IX.

ADMINISTRATIONS OF RUTHERFORD B. HAYES AND JAMES A. GARFIELD.

1. RUTHERFORD B. HAYES, of Ohio, the nineteenth President of the United States, was inaugurated March 5, 1877. He adopted a *conciliatory policy*, and withdrew the troops from the capitals of Louisiana and South Carolina, whereupon the Democratic State governments were peacefully established in both those States. These were the last of the Southern States to be restored to the control of the more intelligent class of the population. There now began to prevail a *better feeling* between the people of the North and those of the South.

2. In the summer of 1877 a *Railroad Strike* was inaugurated by workmen on the Baltimore and Ohio Railroad, on account of the reduction of wages by the railroad managers. The strike extended to most of the principal railroads in the Northern States. *Riots* occurred in Baltimore, Pittsburg, Reading, Chicago, Louisville, and other places, which at last, after the loss of many lives, were quelled by the regular troops, assisted by the militia.

3. In 1873, during Grant's administration, Congress had demonetized silver, making gold the sole standard of our currency. But in 1878 the passage of the *Bland Silver Bill* restored silver as a legal tender in payment of debts.

4. A commission, which met at Halifax, Nova Scotia (1878), for the settlement of difficulties which had arisen between the United States and Great Britain concerning the *fisheries* of

1. What can you say of the policy of Mr. Hayes? What followed the withdrawal of the troops? What now began to prevail?

2. Give an account of the railroad strike and the riots of 1877.

3. What can you say of the Bland Silver Bill?

4. What was done by the Commission appointed to settle the fishery dispute?

the *Northeastern Coast*, awarded to Great Britain the sum of \$5,500,000.

5. In 1879 the Ute Indians at the *White River Agency*, provoked by the aggressions of miners and the failure of the government to fulfil certain promises, massacred the white men in the agency. Major Thornburgh, who was marching with a small force to subdue the revolt, was defeated and slain. Troops were hurried forward and the Indians were soon forced to yield. The white women and children of the agency had not been massacred, having been saved through the influence of a friendly chief.

6. At the Presidential election of 1880, the candidates of the Republicans for the offices of President and Vice-President were James A. Garfield, of Ohio, and Chester A. Arthur, of New York. The Democratic candidates were General Winfield S. Hancock, of Pennsylvania, for President, and William H. English, of Indiana, for Vice President. The Republican candidates were successful.

7. General James A. Garfield, of Ohio, the twentieth President, was inaugurated on the 4th of March, 1881, in the presence of a large concourse of people from all parts of the Union. At the close of the inaugural ceremonies the President turned aside from the brilliant retinue that surrounded him to kiss his aged mother, thus in the presence of the vast assembly doing honor to her who with tender solicitude had watched his steps from infancy up to the exalted station which he had reached. He then greeted in like manner his devoted wife, who had shared his lot in evil fortune and in good. None who witnessed that scene dreamed that in a few months the joy of that mother and wife would be quenched in unutterable grief.

8. On the 2d of July, as the President, in company with Mr.

5. Give an account of the trouble at the White River Agency.

6. What was the result of the Presidential election of 1880?

7. When was General Garfield inaugurated?

8. Give an account of the attempt to assassinate President Garfield. How was the news received? What of the sympathy of the Southern people? When did the President die? What is said of Mr. Arthur?

Blaine, the Secretary of State, was about to take the cars for Baltimore, he was shot by a desperado named Charles Guiteau. The assassin was seized and carried to prison, while the wounded President was borne to the White House. The news of this terrible crime was everywhere received with mingled feelings of grief and horror. Messages of condolence were sent to Mrs. Garfield from every part of the Union and from every quarter of the civilized world. Nowhere was more earnest sympathy exhibited than among the people of the Southern States. The President died on the night of the 19th of September at Long Branch, where he had been carried in the vain hope of improving his chances for recovery. The members of the Cabinet who were present immediately telegraphed to Vice-President Arthur, in New York, notifying him of the sad event, and at two o'clock on the morning of the 20th, Chester A. Arthur, in the presence of Judges Brady and Donohue, took the oath of office as the twenty-first President of the United States. On the 22d the oath of office was again administered to him in the Capitol at Washington by Chief Justice Waite, in the presence of the Cabinet, the Justices of the Supreme Court, and a few members of the Senate and House of Representatives. General Garfield's body was embalmed and carried to Washington, where it lay in state for several days. On the 26th of September the murdered President was buried near Cleveland, Ohio, amid the universal sorrow of all the people, North and South.

Concluding Remarks.

9. We have now followed the history of the United States from their first settlement to the present time. When, on the 4th of July, 1776, the delegates from the original thirteen colonies put forth to the world the Declaration of Independence, the *population* numbered barely *three millions*. Within the bounds

9. State the population of the United States in 1776. In 1880. Area in 1783. At the present time.

of the Great Republic there are *now* about *fifty millions*. The *area* of the United States, which in 1783 was about 800,000 square miles, embraces now more than three millions of square miles.

10. The *material progress* of our country for the past hundred years is without a parallel. In agriculture, manufactures, and commerce the United States rank among the leading nations of the world. In minerals no other country is so rich. God has indeed given us a goodly heritage.

11. The *inventive genius* of Americans is seen in the cotton-gin, the steamboat, the electro-magnetic telegraph, the laying of the submarine *Atlantic* cable, the telephone, the sewing-machine, the reaper, the steam plough, etc., etc.

12. Although railroads are an English invention. Americans have been the leaders in their construction. There are at this time nearly fifty thousand miles of railroad in the United States. In six days one can travel from New York to San Francisco, a distance of three thousand six hundred miles.

13. Universities, colleges, academies, and public schools supply the people with the means of *intellectual culture*; many thousands of churches minister to the people in spiritual things; benevolent institutions of every kind are scattered throughout the length and breadth of the land. The annals of our country are enriched with the names of distinguished historians, novelists, and poets, of illustrious statesmen, of talented and devoted ministers of the gospel.

14. The bitter feelings engendered by the long sectional quarrel which led to the *War of Secession*, and which were not allayed

10. What of the material progress of the United States?

11. In what is the inventive genius of Americans seen?

12. What is said of railroads?

13. What of universities, colleges, etc? What of churches? With what are the annals of our country enriched?

14. What is said of bitter feelings? What of the development of the South? What give promise of complete reconciliation?

by the dark days of reconstruction, are dying out. The South has during the last decade exhibited a development which has astonished friends and foes. The magnificent gifts to the cause of Southern education by such men as Peabody, of Massachusetts; the Vanderbilts and George I. Seney, of New York; the overflowing generosity of the Northern people towards the *Yellow Fever Sufferers* during the great scourge of 1878; the heartfelt sympathy exhibited by the Southern people for the wounded and dying President, and the earnest prayers in his behalf that ascended from Southern pulpits and family altars, all give promise of complete reconciliation. May we not believe that the day is now at hand when all the bitter memories of the past shall be swallowed up in love for one common country?

Topical Review of Part Fourth.

1. *Events of Buchanan's Administration.*—James Buchanan, of Pennsylvania, the fifteenth President of the United States, was inaugurated on the 4th of March, 1857. The Vice-President with him was John C. Breckinridge, of Kentucky. The trouble with the Mormons was settled without bloodshed. The troubles in Kansas also came to an end in 1857. The Presidential election of 1860 resulted in the choice of Lincoln and Hamlin, the Republican candidates. South Carolina seceded December 20, 1860; Mississippi, January 9, 1861; Florida, January 10; Alabama, January 11; Georgia, January 19; Louisiana, January 26; and Texas, February 1, 1861. On the 4th of February, 1861, the Confederate Congress met at Montgomery, Alabama, organized the government of the Confederate States, and elected Jefferson Davis, of Mississippi, for President, and Alexander H. Stephens, of Georgia, for Vice-President. Confederate commissioners went to Washington, but were not received in their official capacity. Virginia's effort to preserve peace by the "Peace Congress" failed.

2. *Administration of Abraham Lincoln.*—Abraham Lincoln, of Illinois, the sixteenth President of the United States, was inaugurated March 4, 1861. Hannibal Hamlin, of Maine, was Vice-President with him. Their election was a triumph of the Republicans. The leading event of Lincoln's administration was the *war between the States*, or the war of *secession*.

*Events of 1861.**

Bombardment of *Fort Sumter* begins, April 12. Fort surrenders to Confederates, April 13. Virginia passed an ordinance of secession, April 17; Arkansas, May 6; North Carolina, May 20; and Tennessee on the 8th of June. These now joined the

* Important battles are in *Italic*.

Confederacy. In Delaware, Maryland, Kentucky, and Missouri secession was so strongly opposed that those States remained in the Union. July 4 the United States Congress met in extra session and provided for raising a large army and navy. On the 24th of May, Colonel Ellsworth was killed at Alexandria, in Virginia.

The Confederate victories in 1861 were as follows: In Virginia: Big Bethel, June 10, Scary Creek, July 17, *Manassas*, or Bull Run, July 21, Cross Lanes, August 26, Greenbrier River, October 3, *Ball's Bluff*, near Leesburg, October 21. In Missouri: Carthage, July 5, Oak Hill, or *Wilson's Creek*, August 10, *Lexington*, September 20, *Belmont*, November 7.

The Federal victories in 1861 were as follows: In Virginia: Grafton, May 29, Philippi, June 3, *Rich Mountain*, July 11, Carrick's Ford, July 14, Dranesville, December 20. On the coast: Capture of forts at Hatteras Inlet, August 29; capture of Port Royal and Hilton Head, August 11.

The indecisive battle was Carnifax Ferry, September 10. Towards the close of the year occurred the Trent affair, which came near involving the United States in a war with Great Britain.

Events of 1862.

Federal Victories.—In the West: *Fishing Creek*, or Mill Spring, January 19, Fort Henry, February 6, *Fort Donelson*, February 16, Elk Horn, or *Pea Ridge*, March 7 and 8, Island No. 10, April 8, *New Orleans*, April 28, Fort Pillow, June 4, Memphis, June 6, *Iuka*, September 19, *Corinth*, October 4.

In the East: *Naval fight* between the Monitor and the Virginia, March 9; occupation of Norfolk, May 11, Kernstown, March 23; battle of *South Mountain*, September 14.

On the coast: *Roanoke Island*, February 8, Fort Pulaski, April 11, and Fort Macon, April 26.

Confederate Victories.—In the West: Valverde, New Mexico, March 21; in the summer and fall, successful cavalry raids of

Morgan and Forrest; *Richmond*, Kentucky, August 30, *Mumfordsville*, Kentucky, September 17, Holly Springs, December 19, *Chickasaw Bayou*, December 29.

In the East: *Naval battle in Hampton Roads*, March 8, *Drewry's Bluff*, May 15, *McDowell*, May 8, *Front Royal*, May 23, *Winchester*, May 25, *Cross Keys*, June 8, *Port Republic*, June 9, *Seven Days' Battles*, including skirmishes, from June 25 to July 2, *Battle of Cedar Run*, August 9, *Second Manassas*, August 29 and 30, *Chantilly, or Ox Hill*, September 1, *Harper's Ferry*, September 15, *Shepherdstown*, September 20, Stuart's raid around McClellan's army, in October, *Fredericksburg*, December 13.

On the coast: *Battle of Secessionville*, June 16, and *Pocotaligo*, October 22. In the first part of the year the Federals drove the Confederates out of Missouri and Kentucky, and overran Western and Middle Tennessee and a part of East Tennessee. In the summer and fall the Confederates recovered East Tennessee and a large part of Middle and West Tennessee.

Indecisive battles of the year: *Shiloh*, April 6 and 7, *Williamsburg*, May 5, *Seven Pines, or Fair Oaks*, May 31, *Antietam, or Sharpsburg*, September 17, *Perryville*, October 8, *Murfreesboro'*, or *Stone River*, December 31 to January 2, 1863.

Events of 1863.

Emancipation Proclamation issued by President Lincoln, January 1.

Confederate Victories.—On the coast: Capture of *Galveston*, Texas, January 1; capture of the *Hatteras*, January 11; of a gunboat and schooner, near *Sabine Pass*, January 21; *naval victory* in *Charleston harbor*, January 31, *Fort McAllister*, March 3; repulse of Federals at *Fort Sumter*, April 6; battle of *Fort Wagner*, South Carolina, July 18; battle of *Sabine Pass*, Texas, September 8.

In the West: Failure of Grant's attempts on *Vicksburg* in

February and March; assaults on Vicksburg, May 19 and 22, Port Hudson, May 27, and June 10 and 14, Brashear City, June 22, Spring Hill, Tennessee, March 5; capture of Colonel Streight's command, May 8; *Chickamauga*, September 19 and 20, Philadelphia Station, October 20, Campbell's Station, November 6, Ringgold, November 26.

In the East: *Chancellorsville*, May 2 and 4; cavalry battle at Fleetwood, or Brandy Station, June 9; battles of *Winchester* and *Martinsburg*, June 14, Williamsport, July 6; Lee's flank march around Meade in October.

Federal Victories.—On the coast: Destruction of steamer Nashville, February 27.

In the West: Capture of *Arkansas Post*, January 11; battle at *Raymond*, May 12, at *Baker's Creek*, May 16, at the *Big Black*, May 17; capture of *Vicksburg*, July 4, and *Port Hudson*, July 9; Morgan's raid in July; occupation of Chattanooga, September 8; capture of Lookout Mountain, November 24; battle of *Missionary Ridge*, November 25; Confederate assault on Knoxville, November 30.

In the East: Battle of *Gettysburg*, July 1, 2, and 3 (in which victory inclined to the Confederates the first two days, but declared decisively for the Federals on the 3d), *Rappahannock* Station in November. During this year the Federals obtained entire control of the Mississippi River, overran all Tennessee, the greater part of Arkansas, and portions of Louisiana, Mississippi, and Florida.

Events of 1864.

Confederate Victories.—In the East: At *Olostee*, or Ocean Pond, Florida, February 20; defeat of Federal cavalry raid near Richmond in March; battle of the *Wilderness*, May 5 and 6, *Spottsylvania* Court-House, May 12, *Cold Harbor*, June 3, *Drewry's Bluff*, or Bermuda Hundreds, May 16, *New Market*, May 15; Grant's assaults on *Petersburg*, June 17 and 18; cavalry battle of Trevillian's Station, June 12; defeat of raiding

party to Lee's rear in June; battle of *Monocacy Bridge*, July 9; defeat of Federals at Martinsburg in July; capture of Chambersburg, Pennsylvania, July 30; *Mine Explosion* at Petersburg, July 30; battle at *Ream's Station*, August 25; Grant twice repulsed at Petersburg in October.

In the West: At Okalona, in Mississippi, February 22; *defeat of Banks's Red River Expedition* at Sabine Cross-Roads and Pleasant Hill, May 8 and 9, *Tishamingo Creek*, June 10, *Kenesaw Mountain*, June 27; defeat of *Stoneman's* and *McCook's* raids in Georgia, in July; Federal repulse at Utoy Creek, near Atlanta, August 5.

On the coast: Capture of *Plymouth*, North Carolina, April 20; battle at Honey Hill, South Carolina, in December; repulse of all attacks on Charleston; Federal repulse at Fort Fisher, December 24 and 25.

Federal Victories.—In the East: Yellow Tavern, May 11, Winchester, September 19, *Fisher's Hill*, September 22, *Cedar Creek*, October 19.

In the West: *Peach Tree Creek*, near Atlanta, July 20; Hood's assault repulsed, July 28; battles at *Jonesborough*, August 31 and September 1; *capture of Atlanta*, September 2; Price's defeat in Missouri, at the Big Blue, October 23; Hood's repulse at *Allatoona*, October 5; Sherman's march through Georgia, November and December; Hood's defeat at *Nashville*, December 15 and 16.

On the coast: Capture of forts in *Mobile harbor*, August 5 and 23; capture of Fort McAllister, December 13; occupation of Savannah, December 20.

On the sea: Destruction of *Confederate steamer Alabama*, June 19, and of *Confederate steamer Florida*, October 7.

Indecisive Battles.—*Resaca*, May 14 and 15, *New Hope Church*, May 25, 27, and 28, *Fair Grounds*, near Atlanta, July 22, *Franklin*, Tennessee, December 1.

Results of the Year's Fighting.—The Federals had almost annihilated the Confederate power in the West. Lee still held the

mighty hosts of Grant at bay before Richmond and Petersburg, but was hard pressed by overwhelming numbers. In the fall of 1864, Mr. Lincoln was re-elected President, and Andrew Johnson, of Tennessee, Vice-President.

Close of the War, 1865.

An attempt at peace negotiations, in February, failed, and the war went on.

Confederate Successes in 1865.—Grant's repulse at Hatcher's Run, February 6; defeat of Federal cavalry at Aiken, February 11; battle of Kinston, North Carolina, March 8; Federal repulse at Dinwiddie Court-House, March 31; cavalry fight at Palmetto Rancho, in Texas, May 13.

The indecisive battles were *Averysboro'*, March 16, and *Bentonville*, March 19 and 20.

Federal Victories.—Capture of *Fort Fisher*, January 15; capture of Columbia, South Carolina, February 17, of Charleston, February 18; battle of *Fort Steadman*, March 25; *Five Forks*, April 1; assault at *Petersburg*, April 2, followed by occupation of Richmond and Petersburg; surrender of Lee at *Appomattox Court-House*, April 9; capture of *Mobile*, April 12; Wilson's cavalry raid in March and April. Lee's surrender was followed by the surrender of Johnston at Durham's Station, North Carolina, April 26; surrender of all the Confederate armies east of the Mississippi, May 4; surrender of the trans-Mississippi army, May 26.

The *last fight* of the war was the Confederate cavalry victory at Palmetto Rancho, in Texas, May 13.

The assassination of President Lincoln occurred April 14.

3. *Administration of Andrew Johnson.*—Andrew Johnson, of Tennessee, the seventeenth President of the United States, was inaugurated April 15, 1865. The principal event of his administration was the quarrel between him and Congress about the reconstruction of the Southern States. The States were finally

reconstructed on the Congressional plan. The thirteenth and fourteenth amendments to the Constitution were adopted during his administration. Alaska was purchased during this administration.

4. *Administration of Ulysses S. Grant.*—Ulysses S. Grant, the eighteenth President of the United States, was inaugurated on the 4th of March, 1869. He served two terms. During his first term Schuyler Colfax, of Indiana, was Vice-President, and during his second term Henry Wilson, of Massachusetts, who died in 1875, and was succeeded by Senator Ferry, of Michigan. Grant's election was a triumph of the Republicans. The principal events of his administration were the completion of the Pacific Railroad, in 1869, the full restoration to the Union of all the seceding States, in 1870, the adoption of the fifteenth amendment, the settlement of the Alabama Claims, in 1871, the Modoc War, in 1873, the Centennial celebration of American Independence, July 4, 1876, and a war with the Sioux Indians, in 1876.

5. Rutherford B. Hayes, of Ohio, the nineteenth President of the United States, was inaugurated March 5, 1877. William A. Wheeler, of New York, became at the same time Vice-President.

States Admitted during the Fourth Period.

During Buchanan's administration, Minnesota, admitted May 11, 1858; Kansas, January 29, 1861.

During Lincoln's administration, West Virginia, June 20, 1863; Nevada, October 31, 1864.

During Johnson's administration, Nebraska, March 1, 1867.

During Grant's administration, Colorado, March 3, 1875.

DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE

OF

THE UNITED STATES.

PASSED JULY 4, 1776.

WHEN, in the course of human events, it becomes necessary for one people to dissolve the political bands which have connected them with another, and to assume, among the powers of the earth, the separate and equal station to which the laws of nature and of nature's God entitle them, a decent respect to the opinions of mankind requires that they should declare the causes which impel them to the separation.

We hold these truths to be self-evident, that all men are created equal; that they are endowed by their Creator with certain inalienable rights; that among these, are life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness. That, to secure these rights, governments are instituted among men, deriving their just powers from the consent of the governed; that, whenever any form of government becomes destructive of these ends, it is the right of the people to alter or to abolish it, and to institute a new government, laying its foundation on such principles, and organizing its powers in such form, as to them shall seem most likely to effect their safety and happiness. Prudence, indeed, will dictate that governments long established, should not be changed for light and transient causes; and accordingly, all experience hath shown, that mankind are more disposed to suffer, while evils are sufferable, than to right themselves by abolishing the forms to which they are accustomed. But, when a long train of abuses and usurpations, pursuing invariably the same object, evinces a design to reduce them under absolute despotism, it is their right, it is their duty, to

throw off such government, and to provide new guards for their future security. Such has been the patient sufferance of these colonies, and such is now the necessity which constrains them to alter their former systems of government. The history of the present king of Great Britain is a history of repeated injuries and usurpations, all having, in direct object, the establishment of an absolute tyranny over these States. To prove this, let facts be submitted to a candid world:

He has refused his assent to laws the most wholesome and necessary for the public good.

He has forbidden his governors to pass laws of immediate and pressing importance, unless suspended in their operation till his assent should be obtained; and when so suspended, he has utterly neglected to attend to them.

He has refused to pass other laws for the accommodation of large districts of people, unless those people would relinquish the right of representation in the legislature; a right inestimable to them, and formidable to tyrants only.

He has called together legislative bodies at places unusual, uncomfortable, and distant from the depository of their public records, for the sole purpose of fatiguing them into compliance with his measures.

He has dissolved representative houses repeatedly, for opposing, with manly firmness, his invasions on the rights of the people.

He has refused, for a long time after such dissolutions, to cause others to be elected; whereby the legislative powers, incapable of annihilation, have returned to the people at large for their exercise; the State remaining, in the mean time, exposed to all the danger of invasion from without, and convulsions within.

He has endeavored to prevent the population of these States; for that purpose, obstructing the laws for naturalization of foreigners; refusing to pass others to encourage their migration hither, and raising the conditions of new appropriations of lands.

He has obstructed the administration of justice, by refusing his assent to laws for establishing judiciary powers.

He has made judges dependent on his will alone, for the tenure of their offices, and the amount and payment of their salaries.

He has erected a multitude of new offices, and sent hither swarms of officers to harass our people, and eat out their substance.

He has kept among us, in times of peace, standing armies, without the consent of our legislature.

He has affected to render the military independent of, and superior to, the civil power.

He has combined, with others, to subject us to a jurisdiction foreign to our constitution, and unacknowledged by our laws; giving his assent to their acts of pretended legislation:

For quartering large bodies of armed troops among us:

For protecting them, by a mock trial, from punishment, for any murders which they should commit on the inhabitants of these States:

For cutting off our trade with all parts of the world:

For imposing taxes on us without our consent:

For depriving us, in many cases, of the benefits of trial by jury:

For transporting us beyond seas to be tried for pretended offences:

For abolishing the free system of English laws in a neighboring province, establishing therein an arbitrary government, and enlarging its boundaries, so as to render it at once an example and fit instrument for introducing the same absolute rule into these colonies:

For taking away our charters, abolishing our most valuable laws, and altering, fundamentally, the powers of our governments:

For suspending our own legislatures, and declaring themselves invested with power to legislate for us in all cases whatsoever.

He has abdicated government here, by declaring us out of his protection, and waging war against us.

He has plundered our seas, ravaged our coast, burnt our towns, and destroyed the lives of our people.

He is at this time transporting large armies of foreign mercenaries to complete the works of death, desolation, and tyranny, already begun, with circumstances of cruelty and perfidy scarcely paralleled in the most barbarous ages, and totally unworthy the head of a civilized nation.

He has constrained our fellow-citizens, taken captive on the high seas, to bear arms against their country, to become the executioners of their friends and brethren, or to fall themselves by their hands.

He has excited domestic insurrections among us, and has endeavored to bring on the inhabitants of our frontiers the merciless Indian savages, whose known rule of warfare is an undistinguished destruction of all ages, sexes, and conditions.

In every stage of these oppressions, we have petitioned for redress, in the most humble terms; our repeated petitions have been answered only by repeated injury. A prince, whose character is thus marked by every act which may define a tyrant, is unfit to be the ruler of a free people.

Nor have we been wanting in attention to our British brethren. We have warned them, from time to time, of attempts made by their legislature to extend an unwarrantable jurisdiction over us. We have reminded them of the circumstances of our emigration and settlement here. We have appealed to their native justice and magnanimity, and we have conjured them, by the ties of our common kindred, to disavow these usurpations, which would inevitably interrupt our connections and correspondence. They, too, have been deaf to the voice of justice and consanguinity. We must, therefore, acquiesce in the necessity, which denounces our separation, and hold them, as we hold the rest of mankind, enemies in war, in peace, friends.

We, therefore, the representatives of the UNITED STATES OF AMERICA, in GENERAL CONGRESS assembled, appealing to the Supreme Judge of the World for the rectitude of our intentions, do, in the name, and by the authority of the good people of these colonies, solemnly publish and declare, That these United Colonies are, and of right ought to be, FREE AND INDEPENDENT STATES; that they are absolved from all allegiance to the British crown, and that all political connection between them and the State of Great Britain, is, and ought to be, totally dissolved; and that, as *FREE AND INDEPENDENT STATES*, they have full power to levy war, conclude peace, contract alliances, establish commerce, and do all other acts and things which INDEPENDENT STATES may of right do. And, for the support of this declaration, with a firm reliance on the protection of DIVINE PROVIDENCE, we mutually pledge to each other, our lives, our fortunes, and our sacred honor.

CONSTITUTION

OF THE

UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.

WE, the people of the United States, in order to form a more perfect union, establish justice, insure domestic tranquillity, provide for the common defence, promote the general welfare, and secure the blessings of liberty to ourselves and our posterity, do ordain and establish this Constitution for the United States of America.

ARTICLE I.

SECTION I. All legislative powers herein granted, shall be vested in a Congress of the United States, which shall consist of a Senate and House of Representatives.

SECTION II. The House of Representatives shall be composed of members chosen every second year by the people of the several States; and the electors in each State shall have the qualifications requisite for electors of the most numerous branch of the State Legislature.

No person shall be a Representative who shall not have attained the age of twenty-five years, and have been seven years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that State in which he shall have been elected.

Representatives and direct taxes shall be apportioned among the several States, which may be included within this Union, according to the respective numbers, which shall be determined by adding to the whole number of free persons, including those bound to service for a term of years, and excluding Indians not taxed, three-fifths of all other persons. The actual enumeration shall be made within three years after the first meeting of the Congress of the United States, and

within every subsequent term of ten years, in such manner as they shall by law direct. The number of Representatives shall not exceed one for every thirty thousand, but each State shall have at least one Representative; and until such enumeration shall be made, the State of New Hampshire shall be entitled to choose three, Massachusetts eight, Rhode Island and Providence Plantations one, Connecticut five, New York six, New Jersey four, Pennsylvania eight, Delaware one, Maryland six, Virginia ten, North Carolina five, South Carolina five, and Georgia three.

When vacancies happen in the representation from any State, the executive authority thereof shall issue writs of election to fill such vacancies.

The House of Representatives shall choose their Speaker, and other officers, and shall have the sole power of impeachment.

SECTION III. The Senate of the United States shall be composed of two Senators from each State, chosen by the Legislature thereof, for six years, and each Senator shall have one vote.

Immediately after they shall be assembled, in consequence of the first election, they shall be divided as equally as may be into three classes. The seats of the Senators of the first class shall be vacated at the expiration of the second year; of the second class, at the expiration of the fourth year; and of the third class, at the expiration of the sixth year, so that one-third may be chosen every second year. And if vacancies happen by resignation, or otherwise, during the recess of the Legislature of any State, the executive thereof may make temporary appointments until the next meeting of the Legislature, which shall then fill such vacancies.

No person shall be a Senator who shall not have attained the age of thirty years, and been nine years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that State for which he shall be chosen.

The Vice-President of the United States shall be President of the Senate, but shall have no vote unless they be equally divided.

The Senate shall choose their other officers, and also a President *pro tempore*, in the absence of the Vice-President, or when he shall exercise the office of President of the United States.

The Senate shall have the sole power to try all impeachments. When sitting for that purpose they shall be on oath or affirmation. When the President of the United States is tried, the Chief Justice shall preside. And no person shall be convicted without the concurrence of two-thirds of the members present.

Judgment, in case of impeachment, shall not extend further than to removal from office, and disqualification to hold and enjoy any office of honor, trust, or profit under the United States; but the party convicted shall, nevertheless, be liable and subject to indictment, trial, judgment, and punishment, according to law.

SECTION IV. The times, places, and manner of holding elections for Senators and Representatives shall be prescribed by each State, by the Legislature thereof; but the Congress may, at any time, by law, make or alter such regulations, except as to the place of choosing Senators.

Congress shall assemble at least once in every year; and such meeting shall be on the first Monday in December, unless they shall by law appoint a different day.

SECTION V. Each House shall be the judge of the elections, returns, and qualifications of its own members; and a majority of each shall constitute a quorum to do business; but a smaller number may adjourn from day to day, and may be authorized to compel the attendance of the absent members, in such manner and under such penalties as each House may provide.

Each House may determine the rules of its proceedings, punish its members for disorderly behavior, and, with the concurrence of two-thirds, expel a member.

Each House shall keep a journal of its proceedings, and from time to time publish the same, excepting such parts as may, in their judgment, require secrecy; and the yeas and nays of members of either House, on any question, shall, at the desire of one-fifth of those present, be entered on the journal.

Neither House, during the session of Congress, shall, without the consent of the other, adjourn for more than three days, nor to any other place than to that in which the two Houses shall be sitting.

SECTION VI. The Senators and Representatives shall receive a compensation for their services, to be ascertained by law, and paid out of the Treasury of the United States. They shall, in all cases, except treason, felony, and breach of the peace, be privileged from arrest during their attendance at the session of their respective Houses, and in going to and returning from the same; and for any speech or debate in either House, they shall not be questioned in any other place.

No Senator or Representative shall, during the time for which he was elected, be appointed to any civil office under the authority of

the United States, which shall have been created, or the emoluments whereof shall have been increased, during such time; and no person holding any office under the United States shall be a member of either House during his continuance in office.

SECTION VII. All bills for raising revenue shall originate in the House of Representatives; but the Senate may propose or concur with amendments, as on other bills.

Every bill which shall have passed the House of Representatives and the Senate, shall, before it become a law, be presented to the President of the United States; if he approve, he shall sign it; but if not, he shall return it, with his objections, to the House in which it shall have originated, who shall enter the objections at large on their journal, and proceed to reconsider it. If, after such reconsideration, two-thirds of that House shall agree to pass the bill, it shall be sent, together with the objections, to the other House, by which it shall likewise be reconsidered, and if approved by two-thirds of that House, it shall become a law. But in all cases the votes of both Houses shall be determined by yeas and nays, and the names of the persons voting for and against the bill shall be entered on the journal of each House respectively. If any bill shall not be returned by the President within ten days (Sundays excepted) after it shall have been presented to him, the same shall be a law, in like manner as if he had signed it, unless Congress by their adjournment prevent its return, in which case it shall not be a law.

Every order, resolution, or vote, to which the concurrence of the Senate and House of Representatives may be necessary (except on the question of adjournment), shall be presented to the President of the United States, and before the same shall take effect, shall be approved by him, or, being disapproved by him, shall be repassed by two-thirds of the Senate and House of Representatives, according to the rules and limitations prescribed in the case of bills.

SECTION VIII. Congress shall have power:

To lay and collect taxes, duties, imposts, and excises, to pay the debts and provide for the common defence and general welfare of the United States; but all duties, imposts, and excises shall be uniform throughout the United States;

To borrow money on the credit of the United States;

To regulate commerce with foreign nations, and among the several States, and with the Indian tribes;

To establish a uniform rule of naturalization, and uniform laws on the subject of bankruptcies, throughout the United States;

To coin money, regulate the value thereof, and of foreign coins, and fix the standard of weights and measures ;

To provide for the punishment of counterfeiting the securities and current coin of the United States ;

To establish post-offices and post-roads ;

To promote the progress of science and useful arts, by securing, for limited times, to authors and inventors, the exclusive right to their respective writings and discoveries ;

To constitute tribunals inferior to the Supreme Court ;

To define and punish piracies and felonies committed on the high seas, and offences against the law of nations ;

To declare war, grant letters of marque and reprisal, and make rules concerning captures on land and water ;

To raise and support armies ; but no appropriation of money to that use shall be for a longer period than two years ;

To provide and maintain a navy ;

To make rules for the government and regulation of the land and naval forces ;

To provide for calling forth the militia to execute the laws of the Union, suppress insurrection and repel invasion ;

To provide for organizing, arming, and disciplining the militia, and for governing such part of them as may be employed in the service of the United States, reserving to the States, respectively, the appointment of officers, and the authority of training the militia according to the discipline prescribed by Congress ;

To exercise exclusive legislation, in all cases whatsoever, over such district (not exceeding ten miles square) as may, by cession of particular States, and the acceptance of Congress, become the seat of government of the United States ; and to exercise like authority over all places purchased by the authority of the Legislature of the State in which the same shall be, for the erection of forts, magazines, arsenals, dock-yards, and other needful buildings ; and

To make all laws which shall be necessary and proper for carrying into execution the foregoing powers, and all other powers vested by this Constitution in the government of the United States, or in any department or officer thereof.

SECTION IX. The migration or importation of such persons as any of the States now existing shall think proper to admit, shall not be prohibited by Congress, prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight ; but a tax or duty may be imposed on such importation, not exceeding ten dollars for each person.

The privileges of the writ of *habeas corpus* shall not be suspended, unless, when in case of rebellion or invasion, the public safety may require it.

No bill of attainder, or *ex post facto* law, shall be passed.

No capitation or other direct tax shall be laid, unless in proportion to the census enumeration hereinbefore directed to be taken.

No tax or duty shall be laid on articles exported from any State. No preference shall be given, by any regulation of commerce or revenue, to the ports of one State over those of another; nor shall vessels bound to or from one State, be obliged to enter, clear, or pay duties in another.

No money shall be drawn from the treasury, but in consequence of appropriations made by law; and a regular statement and account of the receipts and expenditures of all public money shall be published from time to time.

No title of nobility shall be granted by the United States; and no person holding any office of profit or trust under them shall, without the consent of Congress, accept of any present, emolument, office, or title of any kind whatever, from any king, prince, or foreign State.

SECTION X. No State shall enter into any treaty, alliance, or confederation; grant letters of marque and reprisal; coin money; emit bills of credit; make anything but gold and silver coin a tender in payment of debts; pass any bill of attainder, *ex post facto* law, or law impairing the obligation of contracts; or grant any title of nobility.

No State shall, without the consent of Congress, lay any imposts or duties on imports or exports, except what may be absolutely necessary for executing its inspection laws; and the net produce of all duties and imposts laid by any State on imports or exports shall be for the use of the Treasury of the United States; and all such laws shall be subject to the revision and control of Congress. No State shall, without the consent of Congress, lay any duty on tonnage, keep troops or ships of war in time of peace, enter into any agreement or compact with another State, or with a foreign power, or engage in war, unless actually invaded, or in such imminent danger as will not admit of delay.

ARTICLE II.

SECTION I. The Executive power shall be vested in a President of the United States of America. He shall hold his office during the term of four years, and together with the Vice-President, chosen for the same term, be elected as follows:

Each State shall appoint, in such manner as the Legislature thereof

may direct, a number of electors equal to the whole number of Senators and Representatives to which the State may be entitled in Congress ; but no Senator or Representative, or person holding an office of trust or profit under the United States, shall be appointed an elector.

The electors shall meet in their respective States, and vote by ballot, for two persons, of whom one, at least, shall not be an inhabitant of the same State with themselves. And they shall make a list of all the persons voted for, and of the number of votes for each ; which list they shall sign and certify, and transmit, sealed, to the seat of government of the United States, directed to the President of the Senate. The President of the Senate shall, in the presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted. The person having the greatest number of votes shall be the President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed ; and if there be more than one who have such majority, and have an equal number of votes, then the House of Representatives shall immediately choose by ballot one of them for President ; and if no person have a majority, then, from the five highest on the list, the said House shall in like manner choose the President. But in choosing the President, the votes shall be taken by States, the representation from each State having one vote ; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the States ; and a majority of all the States shall be necessary to a choice. In every case, after the choice of the President, the person having the greatest number of the votes of the electors shall be the Vice-President. But if there should remain two or more who have equal votes, the Senate shall choose from them, by ballot, the Vice-President.

Congress may determine the time of choosing the electors, and the day on which they shall give their votes, which day shall be the same throughout the United States.

No person, except a natural born citizen, or a citizen of the United States at the time of the adoption of this Constitution, shall be eligible to the office of President ; neither shall any person be eligible to that office who shall not have attained to the age of thirty-five years and been fourteen years a resident within the United States.

In case of the removal of the President from office, or of his death, resignation, or inability to discharge the powers and duties of the said office, the same shall devolve on the Vice-President ; and Congress may, by law, provide for the case of removal, death, resignation, or inability, both of the President and Vice-President, declaring what

officer shall then act as President, and such officer shall act accordingly, until the disability be removed, or a President shall be elected.

The President shall, at stated times, receive for his services a compensation, which shall neither be increased nor diminished during the period for which he shall have been elected ; and he shall not receive, within that period, any other emolument from the United States or any of them.

Before he enter on the execution of his office, he shall take the following oath or affirmation :

“ I do solemnly swear (or affirm) that I will faithfully execute the office of President of the United States, and will, to the best of my ability, preserve, protect, and defend the Constitution of the United States.”

SECTION II. The President shall be commander-in-chief of the army and navy of the United States, and of the militia of the several States, when called into the actual service of the United States ; he may require the opinion, in writing, of the principal officer in each of the executive departments, upon any subject relating to the duties of their respective offices, and he shall have power to grant reprieves and pardons, for offences against the United States, except in cases of impeachment.

He shall have power, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, to make treaties, provided two-thirds of the Senate present concur ; and he shall nominate, and by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, shall appoint ambassadors, other public ministers, and consuls, Judges of the Supreme Court, and all other officers of the United States, whose appointments are not herein otherwise provided for, and which shall be established by law. But Congress may, by law, vest the appointment of such inferior officers as they think proper in the President alone, in the courts of law, or in the heads of departments.

The President shall have power to fill up all vacancies that may happen during the recess of the Senate, by granting commissions which shall expire at the end of their next session.

SECTION III. He shall, from time to time, give to Congress information of the state of the Union, and recommend to their consideration such measures as he shall judge necessary and expedient ; he may, on extraordinary occasions, convene both Houses, or either of them ; and in case of disagreement between them, with respect to the time of adjournment, he may adjourn them to such time as he shall think proper ; he shall receive ambassadors and other public ministers ; he

shall take care that the laws be faithfully executed, and shall commission all the officers of the United States.

SECTION IV. The President, Vice-President, and all civil officers of the United States, shall be removed from office on impeachment for, and conviction of, treason, bribery, or other high crimes and misdemeanors.

ARTICLE III.

SECTION I. The judicial power of the United States shall be vested in one Supreme Court, and in such inferior courts as Congress may, from time to time, ordain and establish. The judges, both of the Supreme and inferior courts, shall hold their offices during good behavior, and shall, at stated times, receive for their services a compensation, which shall not be diminished during their continuance in office.

SECTION II. The judicial power shall extend to all cases in law and equity arising under this Constitution, the laws of the United States, and treaties made, or which shall be made, under their authority ; to all cases affecting ambassadors, or other public ministers and consuls ; to all cases of admiralty and maritime jurisdiction ; to controversies to which the United States shall be a party ; to controversies between two or more States ; between a State and citizens of another State ; between citizens of different States ; between citizens of the same State, claiming lands under grants of different States, and between a State, or the citizens thereof, and foreign States, citizens, or subjects.

In all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls, and those in which a State shall be a party, the Supreme Court shall have original jurisdiction. In all other cases before mentioned, the Supreme Court shall have appellate jurisdiction, both as to law and fact, with such exceptions, and under such regulations, as Congress shall make.

The trial of all crimes, except in cases of impeachment, shall be by jury ; and such trial shall be held in the State where the said crime shall have been committed ; but when not committed within any State, the trial shall be at such place or places as Congress may by law have directed.

SECTION III. Treason against the United States shall consist only in levying war against them, or in adhering to their enemies, giving them aid and comfort. No person shall be convicted of treason unless on the testimony of two witnesses to the same overt act, or on confession in open court.

Congress shall have power to declare the punishment of treason,

but no attainder of treason shall work corruption of blood, or forfeiture, except during the life of the person attainted.

ARTICLE IV.

SECTION I. Full faith and credit shall be given, in each State, to the public acts, records, and judicial proceedings of every other State. And Congress may, by general laws, prescribe the manner in which such acts, records, and proceedings shall be proved, and the effect thereof.

SECTION II. The citizens of each State shall be entitled to all privileges and immunities of citizens in the several States.

A person charged in any State with treason, felony, or other crime, who shall flee from justice and be found in another State, shall, on demand of the executive authority of the State from which he fled, be delivered up, to be removed to the State having jurisdiction of the crime.

No person held to service or labor in one State, under the laws thereof, escaping into another, shall, in consequence of any law or regulation therein, be discharged from such service or labor, but shall be delivered up, on the claim of the party to whom such service or labor may be due.

SECTION III. New States may be admitted by Congress into this Union ; but no new State shall be formed or erected within the jurisdiction of any other State, nor any State be formed by the junction of two or more States or parts of States, without the consent of the Legislatures of the States concerned, as well as of Congress.

Congress shall have power to dispose of, and make all needful rules and regulations respecting the territory or other property belonging to the United States ; and nothing in this Constitution shall be so construed as to prejudice any claims of the United States, or any particular State.

SECTION IV. The United States shall guarantee to every State in this Union a republican form of government, and shall protect each of them against invasion ; and on application of the Legislature, or of the executive (when the Legislature cannot be convened), against domestic violence.

ARTICLE V.

Congress, whenever two-thirds of both Houses shall deem it necessary, shall propose amendments to this Constitution, or on the application of the Legislatures of two-thirds of the several States, shall

call a Convention for proposing amendments, which in either case shall be valid, to all intents and purposes, as part of this Constitution, when ratified by the Legislatures of three-fourths of the several States, or by Conventions in three-fourths thereof, as the one or the other mode of ratification may be proposed by Congress: *Provided*, That no amendment which may be made prior to the year eighteen hundred and eight, shall in any manner affect the first and fourth clauses in the ninth section of the first article; and that no State, without its consent, shall be deprived of its equal suffrage in the Senate.

ARTICLE VI.

All debts contracted, and engagements entered into, before the adoption of this Constitution, shall be as valid against the United States under this Constitution as under the Confederation.

This Constitution, and the laws of the United States which shall be made in pursuance thereof, and all treaties made, or which shall be made, under the authority of the United States, shall be the supreme law of the land; and the judges in every State shall be bound thereby, anything in the Constitution or laws of any State to the contrary notwithstanding.

The Senators and Representatives before mentioned, and the members of the several State Legislatures, and all executive and judicial officers, both of the United States and of the several States, shall be bound by oath or affirmation to support this Constitution; but no religious test shall ever be required as a qualification to any office of public trust under the United States.

ARTICLE VII.

The ratification of the Conventions of nine States shall be sufficient for the establishment of this Constitution, between the States so ratifying the same.

Done in the Convention, by the unanimous consent of the States present, the seventeenth day of September, in the year of our Lord one thousand seven hundred and eighty-seven, and of the Independence of the United States of America the twelfth.

In witness whereof, we have hereunto subscribed our names.

GEORGE WASHINGTON,

President, and Deputy from Virginia.

(Signed by Deputies from all the States except Rhode Island.)

The Constitution was adopted by the Convention, September 17, 1787, and was ratified by Conventions of the several States at the following dates, viz.:

Delaware,	December 7,	1787.	South Carolina,	May 23,	1788.
Pennsylvania,	December 12,	1787.	New Hampshire,	June 21,	1788.
New Jersey,	December 18,	1787.	Virginia,	June 26,	1788.
Georgia,	January 2,	1788.	New York,	July 26,	1788.
Connecticut,	January 9,	1788.	North Carolina,	Nov. 21,	1789.
Massachusetts,	February 6,	1788.	Rhode Island,	May 29,	1790.
Maryland,	April 28,	1788.			

A M E N D M E N T S.

The following articles proposed by Congress, in addition to and amendments of the Constitution of the United States, having been ratified by the Legislatures of three-fourths of the States, are become a part of the Constitution:

ARTICLE I. Congress shall make no law respecting the establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof; or abridging the freedom of speech, or of the press; or the right of the people peaceably to assemble, and to petition the government for a redress of grievances.

ARTICLE II. A well-regulated militia being necessary to the security of a free State, the right of the people to keep and bear arms shall not be infringed.

ARTICLE III. No soldier shall, in time of peace, be quartered in any house, without the consent of the owner; nor in time of war, but in the manner to be prescribed by law.

ARTICLE IV. The right of the people to be secure in their persons, houses, papers, and effects, against unreasonable searches and seizures, shall not be violated; and no warrant shall issue but upon probable cause, supported by oath or affirmation, and particularly describing the place to be searched, and the persons or things to be seized.

ARTICLE V. No person shall be held to answer for a capital, or otherwise infamous crime, unless on a presentment or indictment of a grand jury, except in cases arising in the land or naval forces, or in the militia, when in actual service in time of war or public danger; nor shall any person be subject, for the same offence, to be twice put in jeopardy of life or limb; nor shall be compelled in any criminal case to be a witness against himself; nor be deprived of life, liberty,

or property, without due process of law, nor shall private property be taken for public use without just compensation.

ARTICLE VI. In all criminal prosecutions, the accused shall enjoy the right to a speedy and public trial, by an impartial jury of the State and district wherein the crime shall have been committed, which district shall have been previously ascertained by law, and to be informed of the nature and cause of the accusation; to be confronted with the witnesses against him; to have compulsory process for obtaining witnesses in his favor, and to have the assistance of counsel for his defence.

ARTICLE VII. In suits at common law, where the value in controversy shall exceed twenty dollars, the right of trial by jury shall be preserved; and no fact tried by a jury shall be otherwise re-examined in any court of the United States than according to the rules of the common law.

ARTICLE VIII. Excessive bail shall not be required nor excessive fines imposed, nor cruel and unusual punishments inflicted.

ARTICLE IX. The enumeration in the Constitution, of certain rights, shall not be construed to deny or disparage others, retained by the people.

ARTICLE X. The powers not delegated to the United States by the Constitution, nor prohibited by it to the States, are reserved to the States respectively, or to the people.

ARTICLE XI. The judicial power of the United States shall not be construed to extend to any suit, in law or equity, commenced or prosecuted against one of the United States, by citizens of another State, or by citizens or subjects of any foreign State.

ARTICLE XII. The electors shall meet in their respective States, and vote by ballot for President and Vice-President, one of whom, at least, shall not be an inhabitant of the same State with themselves; they shall name, in their ballots, the person voted for as President, and in distinct ballots, the person voted for as Vice-President; and they shall make distinct lists of all persons voted for as President, and of all persons voted for as Vice-President, and of the number of votes for each; which lists they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed, to the seat of the government of the United States, directed to the President of the Senate; the President of the Senate shall, in the presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted; the person having the greatest number of votes for President shall be the President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed. And if no

person have such majority, then from the persons having the highest number, not exceeding three, on the list of those voted for as President, the House of Representatives shall choose immediately by ballot the President ; but in choosing the President, the votes shall be taken by States, the representation from each State having one vote ; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the States, and a majority of all the States shall be necessary to a choice ; and if the House of Representatives shall not choose a President whenever the right of a choice shall devolve upon them, before the fourth day of March next following, then the Vice-President shall act as President, as in the case of the death or other constitutional disability of the President. The person having the greatest number of votes as Vice-President shall be the Vice-President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed ; and if no person have a majority, then from the two highest numbers on the list the Senate shall choose the Vice-President ; a quorum for the purpose shall consist of two-thirds of the whole number of Senators, and a majority of the whole number shall be necessary to a choice. But no person constitutionally ineligible to the office of President, shall be eligible to that of Vice-President of the United States.

ARTICLE XIII. SECTION I. Neither slavery nor involuntary servitude, except as a punishment for crime, whereof the party shall have been duly convicted, shall exist within the United States, or any place subject to their jurisdiction.

SECTION II. Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

ARTICLE XIV. SECTION I. All persons born or naturalized in the United States, and subject to the jurisdiction thereof, are citizens of the United States, and of the State wherein they reside. No State shall make or enforce any law which shall abridge the privileges or immunities of citizens of the United States. Nor shall any State deprive any person of life, liberty, or property without due process of law, nor deny to any person within its jurisdiction the equal protection of the laws.

SECTION II. Representatives shall be apportioned among the several States according to their respective numbers, counting the whole number of persons in each State, excluding Indians not taxed ; but whenever the right to vote at any election for electors of President and Vice-President, or for United States Representatives in Congress, executive and judicial officers, or the members of the Legislature

thereof, is denied to any of the male inhabitants of such State, being twenty-one years of age, and citizens of the United States, or in any way abridged, except for participation in rebellion or other crime, the basis of representation therein shall be reduced in the proportion which the number of such male citizens shall bear to the whole number of male citizens twenty-one years of age in such State.

SECTION III. No person shall be a Senator or Representative in Congress, elector of President and Vice-President, or hold any office, civil or military, under the United States, or under any State, who, having previously taken an oath as a member of Congress, or as an officer of the United States, or as a member of any State Legislature, or as an executive or judicial officer of any State, to support the Constitution of the United States, shall have engaged in insurrection or rebellion against the same, or given aid or comfort to the enemies thereof; but Congress may, by a vote of two-thirds of each House, remove such disability.

SECTION IV. The validity of the public debt of the United States authorized by law, including debts incurred for the payment of pensions and bounties for service in suppressing insurrection or rebellion, shall not be questioned, but neither the United States nor any State shall assume or pay any debt or obligation incurred in aid of insurrection or rebellion against the United States, or claim for the loss or emancipation of any slave, but all such debts, obligations, and claims shall be held illegal and void.

SECTION V. The Congress shall have power to enforce, by appropriate legislation, the provisions of this article.

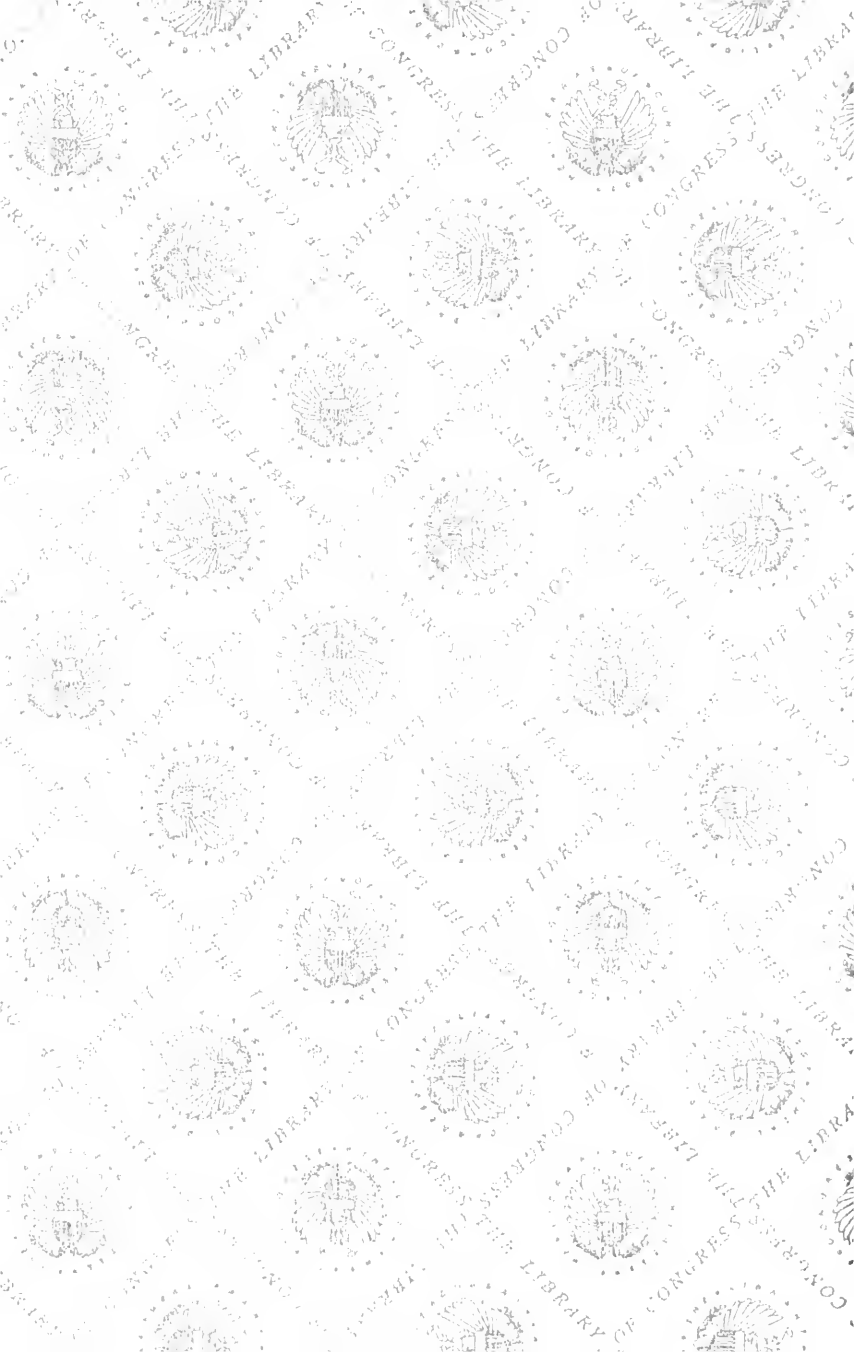
ARTICLE XV. SECTION I. The right of citizens of the United States to vote shall not be denied or abridged by the United States or by any State, on account of race, color, or previous condition of servitude.

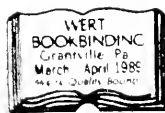
SECTION II. The Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

W 61

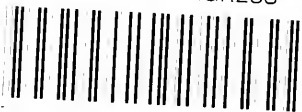


242





LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 011 448 190 7